

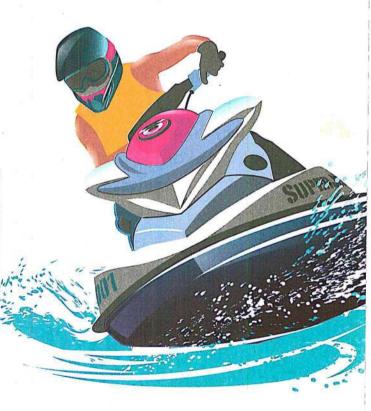
st SECOND TERM



GUIDE

New Hello! ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors







AL TALABA BOOKSTORE For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com 15014 www.elmoasserbooks.com

الصف الأول الإعدادي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣ - ٢٠٢٤

Specifications for First Year Preparatory (2nd Term) English Examination 2023 - 2024 مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية لمادة اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الإعدادى الفصل الدراسي الثاني للعام الدراسي ٢٠.٢٤ / ٢٠.٢

Marks: 24 2023 / 2024 Time: Two hours

A Listening (4 Marks)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(4 Marks)

Students listen to a text from (25 - 30) words. Topics should be from the Set Books. Students listen and answer FOUR (4) multiple choice questions with FOUR (4) options each.

(One mark each)

يستمع الطالب إلى نص استماع لا يزيد عن (٢٥ - ٣٠) كلمة ويجيب على أربعة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال.

B Language Functions (2.5 Marks)

Complete the following dialogue:

A dialogue of **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions (3 responses & 2 stimuli) is provided. The students are asked to complete the deletions completely without providing them with any guidance. The situation should be provided and clear. The first sentence is given in full.

(Half a mark each)

يكمل الطالب المحادثة بها خمس فراغات، (٣ إجابات وسؤالين) ويطلب من الطالب أن يملأ هذه الفراغات وتُعطى الجملة الأولى كاملة.

C Reading Comprehension (4.5 Marks)

Read the following, then answer the questions:

An unseen text of about **ONE HUNDRED** (100) words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, a timetable or a letter. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. The students are required to answer **THREE** (3) multiple-choice questions with **FOUR** (4) options each (Half a mark each) and **THREE** (3) open-ended questions (One mark each).

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- * Giving the main idea (1 question)
- * Extracting information (2 questions)
- * Understanding reference (1 question)
- * Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context (1 question)
- * Critical thinking skill (1 question)

عبارة عن قطعة فهم ويجيب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال وثلاث أسئلة بأداة استفهام : للبد أن تقيس الأسئلة مهارات قراءة قطعة الفهم التالية :

- فهم (المرجع / الإشارة الي).

- استخراج المعلومات.

- إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية.

- مهارة التفكير النقدي.

- تخمين معنى مفردة في النص.

D Vocabulary & Structures (7 Marks)

Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d:

(5 Marks)

TEN (10) multiple-choice questions (**7** vocabulary & **3** structures) based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(Half a mark each)

يختار الطالب اللجابة الصحيحة في ١٠ جمل (v جمل مفردات لغوية + ٣ جمل قواعد لغوية) بها أربع خيارات لكل جملة.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: (2 Marks)

FOUR (4) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs... etc. related to what students have studied.

(Half a mark each)

E Writing (6 Marks)

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(6 Marks)

The students are asked to write a paragraph from SEVENTY FIVE (75) to EIGHTY FIVE (85) words on a specific topic related to the Set Books. (One mark for organization – One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for choice of vocabulary – One mark for spelling – One mark for punctuation – One mark for grammar)

Or

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(6 Marks)

Students are asked to write an email from **SEVENTY FIVE (75) to EIGHTY FIVE (85)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books. Students must write who the email is to and from, as well as the subject of the email. Names and addresses are provided.

(One mark for organization – One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for choice of vocabulary – One mark for spelling – One mark for punctuation – One mark for grammar)

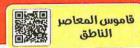
مطلوب من الطالب كتابة فقرة انشائية او رسالة بريد الكتروني من ٧٥ : ٨٥ كلمة عن موضوع محدد مرتبط بالكتب المدرسية. ملحوظة : يجب مراعاة اللّتي :

 (1 درجة على التنظيم - 1 درجة على ترابط الأفكار - 1 درجة على اختيار المفردات اللغوية - 1 درجة على التهجى بشكل صحيح - 1 درجة على علامات الترقيم - 1 درجة على القواعد اللغوية).

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الإعدادي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤/٢٠٢٣

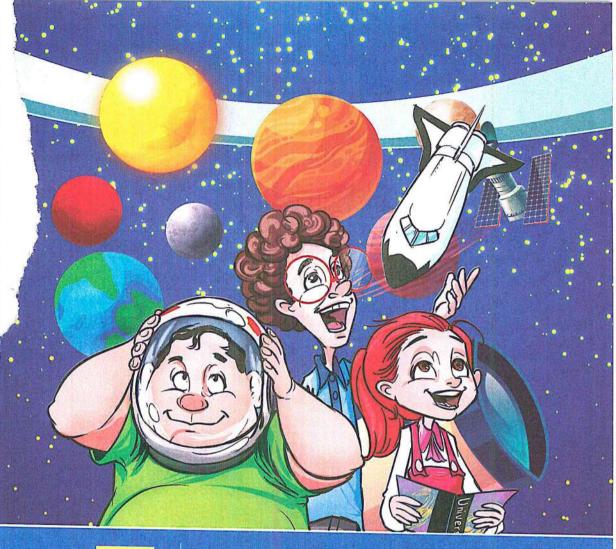
Months	onths New Hello! English for Preparatory Schools Year One (SB+			
February	Unit 7			
March	Unit 8 + Unit 9 + Review C + Unit 10			
April	Unit 10 Cont. + Unit 11 + Unit 12			
May	Review D + General Revision			

Contents



1		
Unit 7	How was your weekend?	9
Unit 8	The amazing world around us	61
Unit 9	Adventure!	110
Review C		160
Unit 10	Welcome to my home!	165
Unit 11	On land and sea	212
Unit 12	My future	260
Review D		309
Videoscript		
Answers of Topics		315
Listening Texts		319





Unit

Objectives:

Reading

A diary entry; Robinson Crusoe

Writing:

A diary entry giving your opinion about a fantastic day

· Listening:

An interview with a musician

How was your weekend?

SB pages 2:11 WB pages 70.76

Speaking:

Talking about your weekend; discussing types of music

• Language:

Past simple time expressions; questions review, responding to past events with although or because

· Life Skills:

Making decisions

Lessons -

1 & 2

SB pages 2 : 5 WB pages 70 & 71



Ī

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

aquarium (n) عف الأحياء المائية / حوض أسماك	nervous (adj)	متوتر / عصبی
sports centre (n) تزریاضی	The state of the s	حوت
funfair (n) بنة الملاهي	statue (n)	تمثال
planetarium(n) هالسماوية-مرصدفلكي	weekend (n) القب	عطلة نهاية الأسبو
football stadium (n) اد كرة القدم	exhibition (n)	معرض - عرض
	diary (n)	مفكرة (يوميات)
	school uniform (n)	الزى المدرسي
big wheel (n) [في مدينة الملاهي]	العج school canteen (n) العج	مطعم المدرسة (كا

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

aquarium - funfair - planetarium - diary

- 1. I saw some colourful fish in the
- 2. Children like to ride on the big wheel at the
- 3. You can see an interesting show about planets in the

Lesson 1

SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 70

closed (adj)	مغلق	arrive (d) (v)	يصل
football match (n)	مباراة كرة قدم	bowling (n)	البولينج [لعبة الكرات الخشبية]
dolphin (n)		shark (n)	سمكة القرش

Lesson 2

SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 71

move (d) (v)	ينتقل – ينقل	decision (n)	قرار
hope (d) (v)	يأمل - يتمنى	exciting (adj)	مثير
swimming pool (n)	The state of the s	dark (adj) , (n)	مظلم / الظلام



friendly (adj)	ودود	challenge (d) (v) , (n)	یتحدی/تحدی
fantastic (adj)	رائع	solution (n)	حل
quite (adv)	إلى حد ما - تمامًا	history (n)	تاريخ

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

المضارع Present		الماضى Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
know	يعرف	knew	known
mean	یعنی/یقصد	meant	meant
leave	يغادر/يرحل	left	left
teach	يُعلم/يُدَرس	taught	taught

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

		0,5-
aquarium	an indoor centre where you can look at sea anim fish living in water	nals and متحف الأحياء ال
bowling alley	a place where you can go bowling	صالة بولينج
canteen	a dining room in an office, building or school	کانتین (مطعم) ا
funfair	a park with fun rides and games	مدينة ملاهي
museum	a building to keep and display important things f the past	
planetarium	an indoor centre where you can learn about star planets	
sports centre	a place where you can do sports indoors	مرکز ریاضی
stadium	a place where you can play or watch sports matches	
nervous	worried or frightened about something	متوتر / عصبی

Collocations

have a h	a maths lesson لديه حصة رياضيات differen		يقوم بأشياء مختلفة different things	
	a haircut يحصل على قصة شعر	do	the same things قوم بنفس الأشياء	
	a fantastic weekend		homework يؤدى الواجب المنزلي	
	يقضى أجازة رائعة		a sport يمارس رياضة	

	swimming يذهب للسباحة	make	a decision	يتخذ قرار
	on the big wheel يركب العجلة الدوارة	Illake	things	يصنع أشياء
go	to bed early يذهب للفراش مبكرًا	listen	to music	يستمع للموسيقى
	يتسوق shopping	watch	a football ma	tch
meet	my best friend أقابل صديقى المفضل	watch		یشاهد مباراة کرة قدم

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms			ات يوليو ا	مترادفات ومتضاد
Word الكرادف Synonym		Antonym /Opp	المضاد osite	
correct	صحيح	right	incorrect/wrong	خطأ/غير صحيح
*	متوتر / عصب	worried	quiet/relaxed	ھادئ
heavy	ثقيل	weighty	light	خفيف
effective	فعال / مؤثر	efficient/useful	ineffective	غير فعال
delicious	لديد	tasty	terrible	سىء/فظيع
regular	منتظم	punctual	irregular	غير منتظم

قاطع بادئة وناهية المستخدمة المستخدمة المستخدمة المستخدمة Prefixes & Suffixes				
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Example	أمثلة ي	
-ing	تحول الفعل لاسم	swimming	السباحة	
-ive	تحول الاسم لصفة	effective	فعال .	
ir-	تعطى عكس الكلمة	irregular	غير منتظم	
-ness	تعطى الاسم من الصفة	darkness	الظلام	

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The synonym of the word "nervous" is ".....". c. regular d. wrong b. worried a. heavy 2. The opposite of the word "....." is "tasty". d. right c. correct b. regular a. terrible 3. The prefix "....." gives the opposite of the word "regular". d. disb, irc. ima. un-4. We can get the noun of the word "dark" by adding the suffix "....." c.-ment d.-ness b.-ily





General Notes on Reading & Listening

frightened of (inf. + ing) / noun

خائف من

- He is frightened of the dark.
 - She is frightened of crossing the road.

SB page 5

2

للحظ أن : جميع أسماء الرياضات لا تأخذ (a, an, the)

- I played tennis.
 - Do you like football?
 - أما إذا استخدمت تلك الألعاب الرياضية كصفات [يتبعها اسم] تستخدم (a, an , the) قبلها :
- I watched a football match yesterday.
 - The tennis match I played yesterday was exciting.

SB page 2

3 sport - sports

* sport (n)

تستخدم كاسم بمعنى رياضة

- My favourite sport is football.
- * sports (adj)

تستخدم كصفة بمعنى رياضي (متعلق بالانشطة الرياضية)

- Ali is at the sports centre.

SB page 5

A exhibition - exhibit

* exhibition (n)

عرض / معرض [للفنون أو التحف والتماثيل]

- I saw an exhibition of old statues.
- * exhibit (n)

شيء معروض (التحفة أو التمثال المعروض)

 - I saw a lot of exhibits in the Egyptian Museum such as coins and statues.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

	THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE PARTY OF THE PARTY.		صبيرات و حروب ،حر
Expressions		Prepositions	
take three hours	يستغرق ثلاث ساعات		ينتقل إلى
quite nervous	متوتر إلى حد ما	drive from to	يــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
like being outside	يحب أن يكون بالخارج	look at	ينظر إلى
come home		learn about	یتعلم عن پتعلم عن
on the other side of the town		solution for / to	حل لـ
	على الجانب الآخر من الم		فى نهاية
go bowling	يذهب ليلعب البولينج	decide to + (inf.)	يقرر أن
It was a lot of fun	کان ممتعًا جدًا	ride on the big wheel	يركب العجلة الدوارة
go shopping	يذهب إلي التسوق	eat out	يتناول الطعام بالخارج

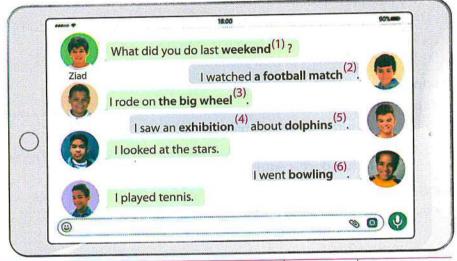
Skills

Reading and Listening



Pop Quiz ندرب على ۱۰ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

on Lesson 1 SB page 2



(1) عطلة نهاية الأسبوع (2) مبارة كرة قدم (3) العجلة الدوارة (لعبة في مدينة الملاهي) (4) عرض (5) الدلافين (6) لعبة البولينج

on Lesson 2 SB page 4

Read Adam's diary⁽¹⁾. What do you think the word nervous⁽²⁾ means and why does Adam feel this?

Sunday 8th May

Yesterday our family moved to (3) our new house in Alexandria. It took (4) three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.



Monday 9th May

This morning, Mum and I went shopping (5) to buy a new school uniform (6) for me. I hope students are friendly (7) in my new school!

(1) مفكرة / يوميات (2) متوتر / عصبي (3) انتقل إلى (4) استغرق (5) ذهب للتسوق (6) زي مدرسي (7) ودود



Tuesday 10th May

Today I went to my new school. I was quite nervous, but I sat next to a boy called Sami and he was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen⁽⁸⁾.



• (8) المطعم المدرسي (الكانتين)

on Lesson 2 SB page 4

Read another page from Adam's diary. What is great?

Monday 16th May

What a fantastic⁽¹⁾ weekend! I went to Sami's house on Saturday and we played football in the park. I don't usually like football, but all his brothers wanted to play. It was a lot of fun! On Sunday, Mum helped me with my homework. Then Dad and I went to the sports centre⁽²⁾. It is great, there is a really big swimming pool⁽³⁾.

ه (1) رائع (2) مرکز ریاضی (3) حمام سباحة

on Lesson 2 WB page 71

I had a fantastic weekend!
It was my friend Dalia's birthday⁽¹⁾ and her family took us to some exciting⁽²⁾ places.
In the morning, we went to the funfair⁽³⁾.
I didn't go on the big wheel but I enjoyed my time there. In the afternoon, we visited a museum⁽⁴⁾. We saw some very old statues⁽⁵⁾. I remembered all the things that



our teacher taught us in **history**⁽⁶⁾! In the evening, I ate at Dalia's house and I came home very late!

the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

(6) تاریخ

(1) عيد ميلاد

قفيش **- قدتمه** (2)

(3) مدينة ملامي

(5) تماثيل قديمة جدًا

on Lesson 2 WB page 71

Dad likes sports. He is very good at swimming. Mum loves cooking(1). Her salads are delicious (2)! Ismail likes being outside (3) and he doesn't like the city. Ismail's sister is five. She likes making things (4).

(1) الطبخ (2) لذيذ (3) بالخارج (4) صناعة الأشياء

Listening

on Lesson 1SB page 3







Dina: It was my birthday last Saturday so I went to the museum with my mum and sister, and we saw some old statues. We learned a lot. In the evening, I wanted to go to the funfair but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant(1). I love my brother so we went to the restaurant. We went there four months ago for his birthday too! And two days ago, on Sunday we went to the planetarium(2) but it was closed(3). So we took a bus to the aquarium(4) on the other side of (5) town. It was fantastic, I saw a shark (6)!

(1) مطعم (2) مبنى القبة السماوية (3) مغلق (4) متحف الأحياء المائية (5) الجانب الآخر من (6) سمكة قرش



Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- 1. When you are worried or frightened of something, you are
 - a. happy
- b. nervous

b. decision

- c. pleased
- d. friendly
- 2. I saw a/an of Islamic monuments in the Islamic Museum in Cairo. a. exhibition
- c. suggestion
- d. match



3. Let	t's go on the bi	g wheel at the	this weekend	
a.a	aquarium	b. stadium	c. planetarium	d. funfair
4. You	u can see many	ancient statues f	rom the past in th	e Egyptian
	5.0		c. Museum	d. School
SB, W	/B & Previous	Exams		
5. We	learnt a lot ab	out the Earth and t	the moon at the	********
a.s	stadium	b. aquarium	c. planetarium	d. funfair
			(E	L Balyana - Sohag 2022)
6. SB	🖪 I had a/an	two weeks ag	o. My hair was so	long.
	statue	b. suggestion		
7. SB	🕽 On Sunday, v	ve went to the pla	netarium, but it w	/as
	closed			d. arrived
			(El Tor	Sinai - South Sinai 2023)
8. Wri	ite what happe	ns to you in a/an		(Dokki - Giza 2023)
a. p	photo	b. dairy	c. diary	d. album
9. l'm	trying to find	a/an to this	problem.	(Abdeen - Cairo 2022)
a.a	alley	b. exhibit	c. solution	d. fair
El-Moa	asser Exercis	es		
10. We	earing a	is very important	for pupils in our s	chool.
	form	b. farm	c. frame	
11. At l	break, we have	lunch together in	n the school	
a. la	aboratory	b. music room	c. library	d. canteen
Definit	itions			
12. A/A	Anis a p	lace where you ca	an play or watch s	ports matches.
a.a	aquarium		c. planetarium	
13. A/A	An is an	indoor centre wh	ere vou look at fis	h living in water
a. p	olanetarium	b. aquarium	c. stadium	d. funfair
Langua	age Notes, E	xpressions & Pr	epositions	
a. o		b. for	and the state of t	d. at
15. lt	three ho	urs to reach Alexa		
	made	b. took	c. gave	d. went
13. A/A a. p Langua 14. The a. o 15. It	Anis an olanetarium lage Notes, E e children are for three ho	indoor centre who b. aquarium xpressions & Pro rightened	ere you look at fis c. stadium epositions the big wheel. c. to ndria. It's very far.	h living in wate d. funfair d. at

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▶ Talking about your weekend :

توجيه أسئلة عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع والرد عليها :

Stimulus (2)	Response
• When did you go to the funfair ? - متى ذهبت إلى مدينة الملاهى ؟	- I went to the funfair last Saturday at 8 o'clock. ذهبت إلى مدينة الملاهى السبت الماضى فى تمام الساعة الثامنة.
• Where did you go last Sunday morning ? - أين ذهبت صباح يوم الأحد الماضي ؟	- I went to the planetarium. ذهبت إلى مبنى القبة السماوية.
• Where did you have your dinner last Monday ? - أين تناولت العشاء يوم الاثنين الماضي ؟	- I had my dinner at a restaurant last Monday. تناولت العشاء يوم الاثنين الماضي في مطعم.



مهارة الكتابة

A visit you never forget

1. Last weekend, I went bowling.	ا. لعبت لعبة البولينج في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضي
2. I rode on the big wheel.	٢. ركبت لعبة عجلة الملاهى الدوارة.
3. I saw an exhibition about dolphins.	٣. رأيت عرض عن الدرافيل.
4. I had dinner in a restaurant.	٤. تناولت العشاء في مطعم.
5. I went shopping to buy a new school	ە. ذھبت للتسوق لشراء زى مدرسى جديد. uniform.

Which places do you like or dislike going to?

1. I really like going to the planetarium.	ا. أحب حقًا الذهاب إلى القبة السماوية.
2. It is a very interesting place where you وم والكواكب.	ı can learn about stars and planets. ٢. إنه مكان شبق جدًا حيث يمكنك التعلم عن النج
3. I last went there four days ago.	٣. لقد كانت أحدث زيارة لها منذ أربعة أيام.
4. I dislike going to the stadium.	٤. أنا لا أحب الذهاب إلى الاستاد الرياضي.
5. It is always noisy and busy.	

Speaking & Writing Corner

80 Dialogues **80** Paragraphs & Emails

Step 1 Vocabulary	Step 2 Speaking	Step 3 Writing
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللعويه	اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	احتبر مدى انقائك لمهاره الكتابة
Read and complete: 1. A. Where did you spend your	Complete the following dialogue: Ahmed and Alaa are talking about the weekend.	Write a paragraph on : "Your last weekend"
	Ahmed: How are you, Alaa? Alaa:(1)	
B. In the مُورِهُ	Ahme	
مادا کواکبB. I saw some	Ahmec Alaa Ahmec	
7	Alaa : (4) Almed: Did you enjoy there? Alaa : (5) (Benha - Qalyoubia 2023)	
1. A. Where did you go ? الملاهي	7,000	Write an email about : "A visit to the funfair"
2. A. What did you do there? R. Irode on the	Dina :(2) ? Salma :I went to the funfair.	
العجلة الدوارة		
	Dina : Did you enjoy yourself there?	
	(Bulak Al-Dakrur - Giza 2023)	

III Language

مراجعة على زمن الماضي البسيط Review on the Past Simple Tense

التكوين Formation



(A) Regular verbs :

(أ) الأفعال المنتظمة:

التصريف الثاني للفعل 🛧 الفاعل Subject

• لاحظ: يتم إضافة (d/ ed/ ied) للفعل المنتظم في زمن الماضى البسيط.

(P) الأفعال غير المنتظمة : : (ب) الأفعال غير المنتظمة

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة تحفظ مثل :

1	الفعل	الماضي	الفعل	الماضي
	cut	cut	put	put
	eat	ate	drink	drank

• لاحظ الآتي : يتم استخدام (verb to be) في زمن الماضي كالآتي.

I / He / She / It / [فاعل مفرد] → was / wasn't We / They / You / [فاعل جمع] → were / weren't

- ex. Mariam was frightened of the cave.
 - There weren't any cars on the beach.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية لاحظ: في حالة النفي نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

المصدر . Subject فاعل + didn't + inf

ex. - Rana didn't study her lessons yesterday.



(أ) السؤال ــ "هل" : ♦ في صيغة الاستفهام باستخدام «هل» نستخدم الصيغة التالية : 🥐 المصدر .inf 💠 فاعل Subject المصدر Interrogative ex. - Did you clean the car yesterday? صغــة * Yes, I did. * No, I didn't. الاستفهام (ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام : : (B) Wh-question أما في حالة الاستفهام باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

(A) Yes / No question:

Question word + did + subject + inf. ? كلمة الاستفهام فاعل المصدر

ex. - What did you study?

- Where did she go?

كلمات دالة Key words

• in the past في الماضي سنة ماضية to سنة ماضية + from • year السنة الماضية منذ ago + مدة مدددة • month الشهر الماضى When I was (young)/(little) last yesterday أمس week الأسبوع الماضي عندما كنت صغيرًا في السن (2000) سنة ماضية + in الثلاثاء الماضي Tuesday

ex. - Dr Magdy stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time ago.

Exercises on Language

. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

▶ SB , WB & Previous Exams 1. SB you go to the park? - Yes, I did. a. Have b. Did c. Do d. Were 2. SE Yesterday, our family to our new house in Alexandria. a. moved b. moving c. are moved d. moves 3. SB How did you when you started a new school? a feels b. felt c. feel d. feeling 4. Khalid went to the park ten minutes (Hawamdia - Giza 2023) a. since b. yet

c. ago

d. next

	5. SB We	lunch together i	n the school can	teen this morning.
	a. is having	120 120 12	c. had	d. has
	6. What	you do last Saturd	ay?	(East Zagazig - Sharkia 2023)
	a. did	b. do	c. does	d. was
	7. Eyad	his uncle three day		(East - Alexandria 2023)
	a. visits	b. visited	c. visit	d. is visiting
> E	I-Moasser Ex	ercises		
	8. Who did yo	ulast night?		
	a. sees	b. seen	c. saw	d. see
	9.1 my	uncle and cousins in		eks ago.
	a. visit	b. visits	c. visited	d. visiting
89	10. Today is Sur	nday, so it Sa		
	a. is	b. was	c. has	d. were
8		isit the museum las		J J: J/4
	a. hasn't	b. wasn't	c. doesn't	d. didn't
		happy at the café b	ecause it was no	oisy. d. will
	a. was	b. weren't	c. doesn't	
2.		e sentences with	the correct for	n of the word(s)
	in brackets:			
> 5	B & WB Exer			
		d you (did) la		
		(were) your la		
		(sit) next to a boy c		
	4. WB I didn't	(went) on the	e big wheel last	weekend.
		orning, mum and I		
	6. WB It's Wed	lnesday today, so it	was Tuesday	(today).
D I	i-Moasser Ex	rercises		
	7. Ayman	(was) lazy. He wa	as very active.	
	8. There	(aren't) any cars ir	ancient Egypt.	
	9. How long d	id it (took) to	complete the pa	lace?
	10. I went to A	lexandria three year	s (last).	
	11. What place	s (do) you vis	sit last weekend	?
		I (see) an exh		
				N.

General Exercises

a. wall

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

 Understand Apply Create 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب). 1. Dad likes a. sports b. salad c. cooking d. fishing 2. Dad is good at a. swimming b. football c. tennis d. basketball 3. Mum makes salads. a. spicy b. hot c. delicious d. sweet 4. My likes making things. a. dad b. mum c. sister d. brother Complete the following dialogue: Sama is telling Alice about her last weekend. : What did you do last weekend? Alice Sama : (1) : The funfair! Which ride did you love most? Alice Sama : (2) Alice : (3)? Sama: The big wheel ticket was 20 pounds. : That's fantastic! (4)? Alice Sama : My favourite snack is popcorn. : Popcorn is my favourite, too. Did you have a nice time there? Alice Sama : (5) (Giza - Omrania 2023) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. There are very old at the Egyptian Museum. a. matches b. dolphins c. statues d. centres 2. Sheshopping with her mother every week. (Meet Ghanr - Dakahlia 2023) a. goes b. has c. makes d. gives 3. SB I hope students are in my new school! a. nervous b. friendly c. frightened d. ugly 4. I like playing on the big at the funfair.

b. whale

c. wheel

(Warrak - Giza 2023)

d. hole

		• Understand	Appig	Cleate			
0	5. What di	d you fo	r lunch yester	day ?	(Damanh	or - Beheira 2023)	
	a. ate		eating	c. eats		d. eat	
-	6. A	is a place whe	re you can lea	rn about sta	rs and p	lanets.	
	a. funfa		stadium	c. sports ce	entre	d. planetarium	
0	7. A year a	go, my father	me with	him to visit	our farn	n.	
	a. takes		ook:	c. take		d. will take	
				(West A	lexandria -	Alexandria 2022)	
d	8. We	in the swimr	ning pool last	month.			
	a. swim			b. swam			
		wimming		d. are swin	nming		
-	9. Adults u	ısuallyg				3 30	
	a. delive		spend	c. make		d. do	
-	10. We buy	candies and ch		school	. •	S	
	a. box	b. 6	canteen	c. factory		d. library	
4	Complete	the sentences v	vith the correc	t form of the	e word(s) in brackets :	
(Are) you happy					
					norning.		
	2. I (have) a wonderful time at the zoo this morning. 3. WB What year (is) it four years ago?						
		bed the mount					
					CONT.	مجاب عنه في نهارية الكم	
k	Parameter Company	mail of about			COM		
-	To your fri	end Wael to tel	I him about y	our last wee	kend. Yo	ur name is	
		d your email ad			o.com. Y	our friend's	
	email add	ress in wael202	2@yahoo.con	n.			
	From	•					
	To	:					
		•				14	
		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •					
					93		1

Lessons -

3 & 4

SB pages 6 : 8 B pages 72 & 73



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

musician (n)	موسيقار	rocks (n) صخور	
island (n)	جزيرة	trumpet (n) آلة البوق	
sailor (n)	بحار	interview (ed) (v), (n)	
storm (n)	عاصفة		
coconut (n)	جوز الهند	opinion (n)	
cave (n)	The second secon	interviewer (n)	
jungle (n)		محاور (من يقوم بتوجيه الأسئلة في المقابلة الشخصية)	

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

rocks - coconut - sailor - storm

- 1. She couldn't open the as it has a hard shell.
- 2. He climbed the to reach the top of the mountain.
- 3. The ship sank because of a big

Types of music

أنواع الموسيقى

jazz	موسيقى الجاز	opera	الأوبرا (ألحان وحوار)
classical	الموسيقي الكلاسيكية	pop	موسيقي البوب
rock	موسيقى الروك (الصاخبة)	traditional music	الموسيقى التقليدية

Lesson 3 SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 72

type (n)	نوع	share (d) (v)	يشارك
sound (ed) (v), (n)	يبدو - صوت (شيء)	stress (ed) (v)	يشدد الحرف (على كلمة أو مقطع)
voice (n)	صوت (بشری)	band (n)	فرقة موسيقية

Lesson 4 SB page 8 WB page 73

adventure (n)	مغامرة	rain (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر/مطر
terrible (adj)		through (prep)	
		J., (b. cb)	خلال

alone (adj), (adv)	 وحید / بمفرده	nut (n)	حبة مكسرات - بندق
entry (n)	مدخل - تدوین	glass (n)	زجاج

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Pre	sent المضارع	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
rise	يرتفع / يعلو	rose	risen
fall	يسقط/ينخفض		fallen
sink	يغرق	sank	sunk
find	the state of the s	found	found

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

alone	without any other people		بمفرده
classical music	a type of serious music played by people like Moz	art and I نی کلاسیکیا	Bach موسية
coconut	a large hard nut that grows on a palm tree	ہند	جوز الو
jazz	a type of music first played by black Americans	ني الجاز	موسية
opera	a type of music where actors sing the words of a st	ory	الأوبرا
pop music	a type of popular music	ى البوب	موسية
rock music	a type of popular music usually played with electr	ic guitar بى الروك	'S موسيق
sailor	a person who sails or works on a boat or a ship		بحار
sink	go down into water	[الأشياء]	يغوص
terrible	very bad	/ فظيع	رهيب /
traditional	using ideas or ways that people first used a long tir	ne ago	تقليدى

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms	and Antor	nyms	more fill a director of	مترادفات ومتضادات
Word a	الكلم	المرادف Synonym	Antonym /O	المضاد pposite
rise	يعلو	go up	fall	يسقط/يقع
begin	يبدأ	start	end	ينتهى
sink	يغرق	go down	float	يطفو
nearby	قريب	close	far away	بعيد
dead	میت	departed / lifeless	alive	على قيد الحياة



Prefixes & Suffixe	es de la companya de	اهية	مقاطع بادئة ون
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples	أمثلة
–ian	تحول الاسم لوظيفة	musician	موسيقار
-er	تحول الفعل لاسم الوظيفة	interviewer	محاور
–al	تحول الاسم لصفة	classical traditional	کلاسیکی تقلیدی

–ian	م لوظيفة	تحول الاس تحول الاس	musician	امنیه دعام وسیقار
-er		تحول الفعل لا	interviewer	روسيدر بحاور
–al		تحول الاس	classical traditional	رر نلاسیکی قلیدی
Exercise	on Vocab	ulary Stu	dy	
Choose the corre	ct answer from	na,b,coi	d:	
1. The words " a. rise	" and "begin" b. float	have the sa		end
2. The doctor said	HARRIST SECTION OF THE		u.	
a. happy	b. dead	c. ill		e. sad
3. We can get an a				
ament	ber	cal		-ion
4. "Rise" is the opp	osite of			
a. feel	b. fall	c. fill	d. 1	fail
5. "" and "ne	earby" are the sa	me meanin	a.	
a. Traditional	b. Hard	c. Far a		Close
Genera	al Notes on	Readin	g &T Listen	nîmo
			B ex Discell	uuug
learn - teach				THE RESERVE
* learn (v) to + i				يتعلم
	to play the piar			
* teach (v)	nglish at school			
	(noun)			يْعلم - يُدرس
- He teaches	+ (<mark>noun</mark>) اسم maths at Cairo	Drop Cabas		
2. teach -) + مفعول (obj) +	to / how to	l. :c	
▶ - He teaches	me to play the	niano)) + INT.	
- He teaches	me how to play	the piano		CD.
2		The second second	سىقية ئسبق بـ the	SB page 6

- 33 He learned to play the piano when he was 8.

SB page 6

3 What kind ? = What type ?	ما نوع؟
- What type of music do you like?	SB page 6
4 alone – lonely	
* alone (adv)	بمفرده
- His wife died and he lived alone.	
* lonely (adj)	وحيد
- I feel lonely.	SB page 8

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
have different opinions لديه آراء مختلفة	write down پسجل ملاحظات
	share with يتشارك مع
	walk along بمحاذاة / بمحاذاة
	يبدأ بـ start with
	go down into يهبط إلى
	work on a boat يعمل على متن قارب
play in a band يعزف فى فرقة موسيقية	

Skills





on Lesson 3 SB page 6

Listen to an interview with the musician Marvin Allstar.

Interviewer: Marvin Allstar is a famous(1) musician(2). He writes songs and plays in a band⁽³⁾. Hello, Marvin, what type of music do you like?

Pop Quiz قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماء



(1) مشهور (2) موسيقار (3) فرقة موسيقية



Marvin

: Hello. Well, I like jazz music⁽⁴⁾ best. I play the trumpet⁽⁵⁾ in

a jazz band.

Interviewer: The trumpet? When did you learn to play the trumpet?

Marvin

: Oh. when I was about 12. I learned the piano first when I was four, and I moved onto (6) the trumpet at 12. I like the

sound(7) of the trumpet.

Interviewer: Amazing! Do you like pop music(8)?

Marvin

: No, I don't, and I don't like rock music (9). But I quite like

traditional(10) music.

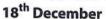
(10) تقلیدی

(4) موسيقي الجاز (5) ألة البوق (6) انتقل إلى (7) صوت (8) موسيقي البوب (9) موسيقي الروك



on Lesson 4 SB page 8

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure(1) story by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor(2). One day his ship sank(3) because there was a really terrible storm(4). Crusoe swam to a nearby(5) island, but there were no other people there. Crusoe wrote a diary(6) of what happened to him on the island.



I arrived on the island four days ago. Today I walked along the beach again, but I saw nobody and I think I am alone(7). This afternoon I found a dead(8) fish and ate it but it was not nice. Although I am hungry, I don't want to eat another dead fish!

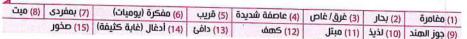
19th December

I found a coconut⁽⁹⁾ on the beach today. It was delicious(10). It rained last night and I was cold and wet(11), so today

I went to look for a cave(12). I want a warm(13) place to sleep. I walked through a jungle(14) and there were some rocks(15), but no caves.

20th December

I found a cave!!









• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

> K	(ey vocabulary			
	1. There was a rea	lly terriblea	nd Crusoe's ship	sank.
	a. farm	b. jungle	c. storm	d. work
	2. The lion is the k	ing of the		1 × 2 1
	a. island	b. jungle	c. cave	d. storm
	3. My uncle works	as a/an on a	a big ship.	
	a. sailor	b. farmer	c. architect	d. carpenter
> 5	B , WB & Previo	us Exams		
	4. WB I don't like t	this story. I thought	the writing was	
	a. exciting	b. terrible	c. amazing	d. funny
			(4	East Tanta - Gharbia 2022)
	5. What of	music do you like ?	- Jazz.	Sheikh Zayed - Giza 2023)
	a. type	b. age	c. subject	d. colour
	6. What's your	of your new sci	ence teacher?	33
	a. text		c. band	d. opinion
	7. WB When some	ething, it go	es down into wat	er.
	a. sinks	b. floats	c. swims	d. flies
>	El-Moasser Exerc	ises		
	8. Hadeer has a b	eautiful , she	e'll be a singer on	e day.
	a. sight	b. site	c. voice	d. sound
	9. He is a famous	in a big ban	d.	
	a. sailor		c. scientist	d. teacher
	10. In our new hou	ıse, I a room	with my brother.	
	a. divide		c. share	d. walk
>	Definitions		12	
	11. A/An is	the person who asl	ks questions duri	ng an interview.
	a. customer	b. interviewee		d. waiter
	12. "Terrible" mean	ns very "".		
	a. good	b. relaxed	c. bad	d. relaxing



13. "" mean	s without any othe	r people.	
a. Alive	b. Traditional	c. Terrible	d. Alone
► Language Note:	s, Expressions & I	Prepositions	
14. When the car	stopped, I walked	the jungle	for 3 hours.
a. through	b. over	c. during	d. forward
	pen, but I didn't fir	nd it.	
a. made	b. looked	c. took	d. put
2. Speaking			Walter State of State
- Speaking			مهارة التحدث

Asking about the type of music someone likes:

السؤال عن نوع الموسيقي التي يحبها شخص ما :





مهارة الكتابة

An adventure story

قصة مغامرة

 Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story. 	۱. روبنسون کروزو هی قصة مغامرات.
2. Crusoe was a sailor.	۲. کان کروزو بحارًا.
3. One day there was a really terrible storm ar حدًا وأغرقت سفينته.	عن كرورو بحرر nd his ship sank. ٣. فى أحد الأيام كانت هناك عاصفة شديدة
4. He was alone on the island.	۱. في احد الايام لحد عند عند عند عند عند عند العلى المرابع. ٤. كان وحيدًا على الجزيرة.
5. Crusoe wrote a diary of what happened to	him on the island.
6. He found a cave on the island.	o. كتب كروزو ما حدث له على الجزيرة في يوه T. وجد كهف على الجزيرة.

Speaking & Writing Corner

اللحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues قم يحل تدريبات هذه الصقحة باستمرار 80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & Emails

Step 1 Lági ^s	Vocabulary اختبر اتقائك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقائك لمهارة الكتابة
Read and comple 1. A. What you like? B. I like jazz.	omplete: of music	Complete the following dialogue: Ahmed and Samy are talking about music. Ahmed: Hello, Samy. Do you like music? Samy: Hi, Ahmed. (1) Ahmed: What kind of music do you like? Samy: (2)	Write a paragraph on : "Types of music"
The second secon	2. A. Why do you like jazz music ? B. Because it's nice and scale	ic? Samy: I like jazz music because it's nice and calm. Samy: (4) Ahmed: (5) Samy: (4) Samy: (4) Samy: (4) Ciza - Bulak Al Dakror 2023)	
A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH	1. A. What kind of books do you like reading ? Bstories. مغامرة	Samar and Ghada are talking about reading stories. Samar: What are you doing, Ghada? Ghada:(1) Samar: What kind of books do you like	Write an email about : "An adventure story"
An adventure sto B. Robins	on Crusoe.	fthe reading? Ghada:(2) Ghada: Adventure stories! 3 Ghada: It's "Robinson Crusoe". Samar: (4) Ghada: Robinson was a sailor. Samar: What do you think of this story? Ghada:(5)	



III Language

Interrogative sentences

There are two types of questions:

هناك نوعان من الأسئلة

_ |

Yes / No questions

الأسئلة التي يجُاب عليها بـ Yes أو No

▶ Yes / No questions start with an auxiliary verb (Do, Can, Have) or verb to be.

◄ تبدأ الأسئلة التي يجاب عنها بـ (Yes / No) بالفعل المساعد (Have , Do, Can) أو فعل [يكون].
 ◄ The voice usually rises at the end of the question.

◄ يرتفع صوت موجه السؤال عادة في نهاية السؤال.

- ▶ "V. to Be" [Am Is Are was Were]
- ▶ "V. to Have" [Have (got] Has (got] Had]
- ▶ "V. to Do" [Do Does Did]
- ▶ Will
- Can
- الخ etc. الخ

+ subject + verb الفعل + ...?

ويمكن أن يجاب عن هذا النوع من الأسئلة باستخدام الصيغة المختصرة وهي الضمير والفعل المساعد فقط.

> Remember: To answer with the same verb and the same tense.

◄ تذكر أن تجيب بنفس الفعل المساعد وبنفس الزمن.

ex. - Did you go to the park?

Yes, I did.

No, I didn't.

Have you got a phone?
 Yes, I have.

No, I haven't.

- Can you speak English?

Na 1 ---/-

Yes, I can.

No, I can't.

- Are you happy?

No, I am not.

Yes, I am.

ملحوظة : يمكن إستخدام "V. to Be" كفعل رئيسي في السؤال دون أن يتبعه فعل آخر.

ex. - Are you happy about the result نتيجة of the match ?
Yes, I am.
No, I'm not.

Whquestions

الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام:

▶ Wh-questions start with a question word.

The voice usually falls at the end of the question.

▶ السؤال بكلمات استفهام يبدأ بكلمة استفهام و ينخفض عادة صوت موجه السؤال في نهاية السؤال.

- ex. What type of music does he like? He likes pop music.
 - When did you go to the museum?
 I went to the museum four days ago.

* عند تكوين صيغة الاستفهام في جملة ليس بها فعل مساعد/ناقص نتبع الآتي :

إذا كان الفعل في المضارع البسيط بدون (s) أو (es) أو (ies) أو (ies) نستخدم does
إذا كان الفعل في الماضى البسيط مع كل الضمائر نستخدم did

البحملة والعكس.

I, We
you

my, our
your

We are / I am
are you

We were / I was

Total Lipschild

We were / I was



Question words

كلمات الاستفهام

Whose?	ملك من؟	How many?	كم للعدد؟
When?	متی؟	How high?	 كم للإرتفاع؟
What?	ما - ماذا؟	How deep?	كم للعمق؟
Who?	من (للفاعل العاقل)؟	How wide?	
Whom?	من (للمفعول العاقل)؟	How far?	؟ كم للبعد؟
Why?	لماذا؟	How tall?	 كم للطول؟
Where?	أين؟	How heavy?	کم للوزن؟
Which?	أيهما / أيهم؟	How long?	كم للمدة/للطول؟
How?	کیف؟	How old?	كم للعمر؟
How much?	كم للثمن / للكمية؟	How fast?	كم للسرعة؟
How often?	كم مرة؟	Who with ?	مع من؟ مع من؟

Examples:

- What is he doing now?
- Who will you go to the club with?
- When did you see Nadia?
- How does she go to school?
- Why do you go to the cinema?
- How much did you pay for the watch? * I paid 200 pounds for it.
- How often do they go to the circus?
- Whose book is it?

- * He is reading a story.
- * I will go to the club with Ali.
- * I saw Nadia last week.
- * She goes to school by bus.
- * I go to the cinema to see a film.
- * They go to the circus twice a month.
- * It is mine.

Exercises

on Language

. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. 🔢 Did you	to the park	?	(Sodfa - Assint 2022)
a. went	b. go	c. gone	d. going
2. What musi	c he like :	? - He likes pop music.	(Belbes - Sharkia 2023)
a. did	b. is	c. do	d. does
3. W you	go swimming y	esterday?	(Luxor 2023)
a. Do	b. Are	c. Did	d. Have

	4. 7 fruit d	lo you like ?		X
	a. Which	b. Who	c. Where	d. Why
	5. 33 Have you go	t a new jacket ? - N	No, I	
	a. don't	b. do	c. haven't	d. did
> E	l-Moasser Exerci	ses	2	
	6 there a ci	nema in your tow	n ?	W 85880/ID0
	a. Is	b. Are	c. Were	d. Did
	7. How do y			
	a. often	b. much	c. many	d. old
	8 subject d			1 VA/Initials
	a. Where	b. When	c. Who	d. Which
	9 your frier			d. Does
	a. Has	b. Have	c. Is	d. Does
	10 car is this		c. How much	d Whose
	a. Who	b. How		
2	Complete the se	ntences with the	e correct form of	tne word(s)
- 12	in brackets:	2		
	SB & WB Exercise		V-1-I-	
	1. WB (Does			
	2. 33 Are you hap			
	3. W A:(W	/here) do you com	e to school?	
	B : By bus.			×
	4. 33 A: Can she s			
	B : Yes,	1000		
	5. 📆 Do you	(liked) jazz?		
	6. WB Yes, I	(haven't) got two	sisters.	
D	El-Moasser Exerci	ises		
	7(Why) old	d are you ? - 12 ye	ars old.	
	8(Who) ca			
	9(What) b			
	10. How (ma			ty pounds.
	10.110W(IIIC	iii, i is the burger .		

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 3 & 4

Understand

Apply

• Create

1	Complete the f	ollowing dialo	gue:	
Ĭ	Hani and Sara are	talking about m	usic.	r
	Hani: Hi! Sara. V	Vhat type of mu	sic do you like?	b
	Sara: Hi! Hani. (1)	······· •	P. (1)
	Hani : Do you lik	e another type	of music ?	
	Sara : (2)	······••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••		
	Hani : (3)	?		
	Sara: Yes, I like I	istening to song	s. And you ?	
	Hani : (4)			
	Sara: The piano	! (5)	?	
	Hani: My dad ta	ught me to play	the piano.	
	Sara: That's fant	tastic!		(Nasser - Beni Suif 2023)
2	Choose the cor	rect answer fro	oma,b,cord:	
•	1 . I the ro	om with my bro	ther.	(Damanhour - Behira 2023)
	a. think	b. share	c. play	d. climb
	2. A/An is :	someone who pl	lays a musical insti	rument or writes music.
	a. engineer	b. farmer	c. sailor	d. musician
0		always	down the most im	portant points in
	the lesson.			(El Qantara - Ismailia 2022)
	a. give	b. write	c. eat	d. cut
	4. WB Coconuts a	155	•	
	a. glasses	b. pots	c. nuts	d. cells
			s beach. It is dang	erous to swim here.
	a. jungles	b. trees	c. rocks	d. forests
	6. 3 Jazz is a typ			
	a. music	b. subject	c. material	d. metal

	Understand	Apply	Create	
7. "Robinso	n Crusoe" is a/	an s	tory by Danie	el Defoe. It's exciting.
a. advent	ture b. com	ic	c. historical	d. horror
				(Benha 2023)
8 th	ere any banks i	in this stree	et?	(Maadi - Cairo 2022)
a. Was	b. Is		c. Are	d. Does
CHERCH INCOMENTS	ople are there	in the supe	rmarket ? - 1	3 people.
a. How m			c. Whose	d. What kind
		1 40		(Zefta - Gharbia 2023)
10. ard	e their future jo	obs ? - They	will be doct	ors.
a. Why	b. Who		c. What	d. When
May 12-time			TENT TO TAKE	
				he word(s) in brackets:
1. Has your	brother got a p	encil case ?	' - Yes, he	(does).
2. Did you .	(studied) hard yest	erday ?	
3. WB	(Do) you play	chess? - N	o, I can't.	
4. 🕦 He	(learn) to	play the pia	ano when he	was four.
				مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب
The second control of	mail of abou			
				read. Your name is
	-			l.com. Your friend's
email addr	ess is ghadana	gy@yahoo.	com.	
From	:			
To	•			
Subject	:			2 9

Lessons -

5 & 6

SB pages 9 & 10 WB pages 74 & 75



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

concert (n)	حفلة موسيقية	barbecue (n)	حفل شواء
olives (n)	زيتون	include (d) (v)	يشمل - يتضمن
theatre (n)	مسرح	emotion (n)	عاطفة / انفعال
peppers (n)	فلفل	kind (n), (adj)	نوع- عطوف
hope (d) (v), (n)	يأمل - أمل	thoughts (n)	أفكار

Pop (

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

concert - olives - kind - theatre - include

- 1. We use to make healthy oil.
- 2. Mona went to the to watch a play.
- 3. I played the trumpet in the school
- 4. What of person is Heba? She's friendly.

Lesson 5

SB page 9 WB page 74

person (n)	شخص	writer (n)	كاتب
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث .	really (adv)	حفًا

Lesson 6

SB page 10 WB page 75

interesting (adj)	رائع / شیق	journey (n)	رحلة طويلة
surprising (adj)	مدهش	try (ied) (v)	یحاول / یجرب بحاول / یجرب
doodles (n)	شخبطة [رسومات بسيطة]	tired (adj)	۔ روں رہا۔ رہا۔ متعب

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Prese	المضارع <mark>nt</mark>	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
break	یکسر	broke	broken
show	يبين / يوضح	showed	shown

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

windy

when the wind blows, the weather is windy

عاصف

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms				مترادفات ومتضادات
Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	Antonym /O	المضاد pposite
great	عظيم	fantastic	terrible	سیء / فظیع
loud	عال الصوت	noisy	quiet	ھادئ
beautiful	جميل	nice	ugly	قبيح
remember	يتذكر	recollect	forget	ينسى

Prefixes & Suffixes	اهية	مقاطع بادئة ونا	
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples	أمثلة
-у	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	windy	عاصف
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	writer	كاتب
-ing	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	surprising	مدهش

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. "" is the	opposite of "reme	ember".	
a. Remind	b. Forget	c. Collect	d. Recollect
2. "Nice" has the	e same meaning o	f	
a. dirty	b. ugly	c. happy	d. beautiful
3. The antonym	of the word "fant	astic" is "".	
a. terrible	b. great	c. sad	d. pretty
4. We can get the	e adjective from the	word "wind" by ad	ding the suffix "".
ament	bable	ction	dy
5. "Loud" is the	synonym of "	"•	
a. calm	b. quiet	c. noisy	d. ugly



(Qu

General Notes on Reading & Listening

remember - remind

* remember

يتذكر [من تلقاء نفسه]

- What do you remember about your weekend?
- * remind (v)

يُذكر (شخص آخر بشئ ما)

- My mom reminded me of my homework.

SB page 9

2 Although

بالرغم من / ومع ذلك (تستخدم للتعبير عن التناقض)

- Although I was very hungry, I didn't want to eat another dead fish!
 - The pizza was really good although it was cheap.

SB page 9

Ordinary & strong adjectives

الصفات العادية والصفات القوية

Ordinary adjectives صفات ذات معنی عادی

Strong adjectives صفات ذات معنی قوی

good	جيد	
old	قديم	
small	صغير الحجم	
tired	متعب	
bad	سيئ	

fantastic / wonderful	رائع	
ancient	عتيق / قديم جدًا	
tiny	ضئيل الحجم	
exhausted	منهك	
terrible	فظیع / سیئ جدًا	

للحظ أن الصفات القوية لا يمكن أن تسبق بـ (very) في حين أنها يمكن أن تسبق بـ (really). - It was really terrible. (√) SB page 9

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Ехр	ressions	Preposit	ions
take a selfie يلتقط صورة بالكاميرا الأمامية		The second secon	يتجول
do maths home	يؤدى واجب الرياضيات Vork	go on holiday	۔ رو پذهب فی أجازة
give a reason يعطى سبب/مبرر لـ			يخطط أن يخطط أن
stop working	يتوقف عن العمل	get in the car	۔ پرکپ السیارة
have a barbecue	يقيم حفل شواء 🙎	stay on the beach	يبقى على الشاطئ

Skills

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ١٠ من قطع الفهم

b

Reading and Listening

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 9

Listen to three people talking about their weekend. Match the person to the photos.

Narrator : One

: Hi, Lina. How was your weekend? Woman

: Oh, it was terrible. Lina

:Oh dear, what happened? Woman

: I watched a football match at the stadium(1). It was terrible Lina because my team (2) lost (3) 5 - 2. Then I took a selfie (4) but

I dropped my mobile phone and it broke.

Woman :Oh dear!

Narrator : Two

: Hi Hisham. How was your weekend? Man

: It was great because I went to Hisham

the bowling alley with my cousins. Then we went to a pizza restaurant. I had

a pizza with olives (5) and pepper (6). The pizza was really good,

although it was expensive.

Narrator : Three

Woman 2: Hi Judy. How was your weekend?

: It was OK on Saturday, although I had Judy lots of homework. But I went to the

theatre (7) in the evening.

(1) ستاد رياضي (2) فريق (3) خسر (4) التقط صورة باستخدام الكاميرا الأمامية للصاتف (5) زيتون (6) فلفل (7) مسرح



Lesson 5 WB page 74

Narrator 1

Judy : I went to my cousin's house last weekend. It was fantastic

because we played all my favourite games!

Narrator 2

Khaled I read a book by my favourite writer last week. It was OK.

although it was not her best book.

Narrator 3

: My father drove us to the park on Saturday. It took an hour to go Marwa

two kilometres! It was terrible because there were so many cars.

Narrator 4

Hany : We read an English book at school today. It was very good.

although I didn't understand every word!



on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Dalia's diary Sunday 13th August

Today was a terrible day(1)! My baby brother woke me up at 5 am! I am so tired(2) now. I went to the kitchen for breakfast but we had no milk or bread. So Mum asked me to go to the shop but it was closed(3) because it was only 6:30 am!

Then I tried(4) to do my maths homework but I lost all my work because my laptop stopped working(5). Although we planned to have a barbecue(6) in the afternoon, it was very windy(7). We could not have it!

I hope⁽⁸⁾ tomorrow is a better day!





Answer

the following questions:

Critical thinking questions.

مهارة التفكير النقدى

Learn 1. Do you think that Dalia finished her maths homework? Why?

- I don't think so, because her laptop stopped working.

Practise 2. Why do you think Dalia's day was terrible?

(1) يوم سيئ رد) مُتعب رة) مغلق (4) حاولت

(5) توقف عن العمل

(6) حفل شواء ർവ (7)

(8) يتمنى

on Lesson 6 WB page 75

Saturday 30th July

Today was a fantastic day. First, I got up at 5 am and had breakfast. Then I got in the car⁽¹⁾ with my family and we drove to Siwa. Although it was a very long journey.

I enjoyed reading my favourite book in the car. We arrived very late but it is a beautiful place. We planned to look around(2), but we stayed in (3) the hotel because we were all very tired. I think tomorrow will be very interesting.



(1) يركب السيارة (2) يتجول (3) مكث في



on Vocabulary

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1.is useful. We use it for its oil.

b. Bread a. Pepper

c. Olive

d. Jam

2. His head is full of good about life.

a. thoughts

b. stones

c. eyes

d. books

3. Last summer, we stayed in a nice in Hurghada.

a. funfair

b. hotel

c. theatre

d. concert

4. A famous band will make anext month.

a. market

b. concert

c match

d. hotel

SB, WB & Previous Exams

5. Theis the place where we can enjoy watching plays.

(East Alexandria 2023)

a. funfair

b. planetarium

c. theatre

d. hotel

b. leader

6. WBI read a book by my favourite last week.

(South Sinai 2023)

a. reader

c. writer

d. lighter

a. drove

7. My little brother me up at 5 a.m. b. gave

c. played

(El Sharabia - Cairo 2022) d. woke



8. 👀 What	of person was Robir	son Crusoe ?	- Clever.
a. kind	b. time	c. age	d. size
▶ El-Moasser Exe	rcises		
9. My favourite	won the match	yesterday.	
a. hope		c. concert	d. team
10. After a hard v	vorkday, he was	•	
a. relaxed	b. tired	c. excited	d. interested
· ·	a bed and a cup	board.	
a. includes	b. does	c. makes	d. takes
Definitions			
12. When the wir	nd blows, the weather	is	
a. funny	b. nice	c. windy	d. good
▶ Language Note	s, Expressions & Pre	positions	
13. I a self	ie with my friends on t	he beach.	
a. made	b. took	c. had	d. gave
	oa barbecue in	the afternoon	n
a. do b. have c.		c. work d. open	
	opped, so I lost	all my work.	
a. living		c. dying	d. trying
	his homework by hin		
a. took	b. did	c. made	d. had
2. Speaking			مهارة التحدث
Asking and resp	onding to past ever	nts: : ā	السؤال والرد على أحداث ماضيا
Questions (2)	Response		الرد
How was your weekend ?	It was great/fantastic انت رائعة ا		(really / very) interesting.
الأسبوع الخاصة بك؟	It was OK. انت على ما يرام.	lt was ▶	کانت [حقًا / جدًا] ممتعة. (really / very) good. کانت [حقًا / جدًا] جیدة.
What was the (food) like ? کیف کان الطعام ؟	اt was terrible! ان سینًا جدًا!	lt was ▶	(really) bad. کان (حقًا) سیٹا.

Ö

Pop Quiz

on Speaking

	op Quiz Chopcaming
• Com	plete the following dialogue :
Tarek a	sks Nabil about his weekend in Alexandria.
Tarek	: Good morning.
Nabil	:(1)
Tarek	: Where did you spend your weekend?
Nabil	: (2)
Tarek	: (3)?
Nabil	:The weather was fantastic.
Tarek	: What kind of food did you eat there ?
Nabil	: (4)
Tarek	: (5)?

3. Writing

Nabil

مهارة الكتابة

(10th of Ramadan - Sharkia 2023)

Punctuation marks:

: I swam in the sea.

علامات الترقيم :

- 1. You can end a sentence with an exclamation mark (!) to show strong emotion. ا. يمكنك أن تنهى الجملة بعلامة تعجب [!] لتبين أو توضح المشاعر القوية.
- Use an exclamation mark (!) after interesting or surprising information.
 ١٠ استخدم علامة التعجب (!) بعد معلومات تدعو للدهشة أو الإثارة.
- 3. A capital letter follows both a full stop (.) and an exclamation mark (!).
 ٣. بعد النقطة أو علامة التعجب، تبدأ الجملة بـ[حرف كبير].

Writing a diary:

كتابة مدونة يومية :

Use the past tense (most of the time).
 Use the 1st person (I or We).
 استخدم ضمائر المتكلم (أنا أو نحن).
 Write things in the order that they happened.
 المناعرب حدوثها.
 Talk about your feelings, hopes, thoughts and opinions.
 اعدث عن مشاعرك، آمالك، أفكارك وآرائك.
 Include pictures and doodles.
 المعضور و شخبطة (رسومات بسيطة).

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 5 & 6

	• Underst	and	Apply	Creat	e		
1	Listen a	nd cho	ose the c	orrect a	nswer from	a, b, c or d:	
Ì					سحيحة (نصوص الا	ك واختر الإجابة الص	ستمع إلى معلما
l		1150	to the par				
	a. My fa				c. My uncle		mother
	a. Mone				n c. Saturday		la.
		1.78700	to go		COM CONTRACTOR CONTRACTOR	d. Fric	lay
			b. two h			rs d. an l	nour
					here were so		
	a. great		b. fanta		c. terrible	d. qui	et
9	Comple	te the f	ollowing	dialog	ue:		
1			are talking				
	13/2/2004				hat about yo	u ?	
					na na managan na manana ng panana		
	Magy	: (2)		?			
	Merna	: I prefer	jazz musi	c.			
	Magy	: (3)		?			
	Merna	: Amal M	laher is m	y favour	ite singer.		
	Magy	: Do you	play any	musical	instrument?		
	Merna	: <mark>(4)</mark>		······•			
	Magy	: Great. [Do you pla	y the flu	ute in a band	?	
	Merna	: (5)				(West Zagazig	- Sharkia 2023)
3	Choose	the cor	rect answ	er fron	na, b, c or d	:	
C					yesterday.		Nasr City 2023
	a. take		b. took		c. taking	d. ta	THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF

c. will be

2. The last weekend really fantastic.

b. was

a. is

d. can be

Ī	- Cild	cisculia	supply - cleare	
	3. It was OK on St	unday	. I had lots of home	work.
	a. although	b. then	c. or	d. for
	4. Please, r	ne of the ne	xt meeting.	
	a. remember	b. remind	c. mind	d. mend
	5. 7 We in	the hotel b	ecause we were all v	ery tired .
	a. took	b. stayed	c. thought	d. wrote
	6. Yesterday, we h	ıad a/an	at school.	
	a. theatre	b. stadium	c. concert	d. aquarium
9	7. He is a n	10 May 10 Ma	7	V 100 - 100
	a. difficult	b. lazy	c. scary	d. kind
١			't stay on the beach	
	a. funny		c. holiday	d. nice
١	9 oil is us			4 8 4
	a. Olive	b. Lemon		d. Apple
ا	10. 🖼 l tom			
	a. hate	b. hope	c. enjoy	d. give
	Complete the ser	ntences with	the correct form of	the word(s) in brackets:
-	1. Sara went to A	lexandria	(next) week.	
I	2. I (go) to	the concert	in 2010.	
	3. 😘 How	. (is) your las	t weekend ?	
	4. WB Have you	(get) a	new school bag?	
	Write a paragrap	oh of about	EIGHTV (80) words	مجاد عند في لباية الكتاب
	write a paragrap			OII.
			antastic day"	
				······································
I				



on unit 7

قيم مستواك القوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

m filmiple lime expressions (السنة الماضية (المنافي الماضية ا	Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
السية الماضية بوء بحضر السية الماضية بوء الماضية الماضية الماضية به بالتلايا الماضية به بالتلايا الماضية به بالماضية به بالما	متحف الأحياء المائية aquarium		1. Talking about
illum fludicus		_	vour weekend
الشهور الماضي المسور المعاضي المسورية السماوية month in the past radium إلى المعاضي العبة السماوية السماوية الماضي المعاضي المعاضية ال	-	↑ year	الحديث عن عطلة نهاية
radium الاستاعة التن بجاب عنها العالا الماضي الماضي الماضي المعلا الماضي الماضية الماضي الماضية الماضي الم	القبة السماوية planetarium	(last) month	الأسبوع الخاصة بك.
المساعة الميوي (مندساعة البولينج (المعالم المالة البولينج (المعالم المالة البولينج (المعالم المالة البولينج (المعالم المالة البولينج (المعالم المعالم	ستادكرة قدم football stadium	انسب week الماصي week الماصي week	- When did you
منذ ساعة منذ الباعة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ا	صالة لعبة البولينج bowling alley	this morning sell libuty	go to the
الـ منذ نلائة أيام (وقة) المسملة المسلة التي يبدأ بكلمة استفهام (وَنَ شهر (اكتوبرا الكتوبرا الكتوبرات المسلة التي يبدأ بكلمة استفهام (وَنَ شهر (اكتوبرا الكتوبرات المسلة التي يبدأ بكلمة استفهام (وَنَ شهر (اكتوبرا الكتوبرات المسلة التي يبدأ بكلمة استفهام (وَنَ شهر (اكتوبرا الكتوبرات المستفهام (وَنَ شهر الكتوبرات الكتوبرات المستفهام (وَنَ شهر الكتوبرات الكتوبرات الكتوبرات الكتوبرات الكتوبرات الكتوبرات المستفهام (وَنَ شهر الكتوبرات ا	nervous व्यव्हार	in (1999) (an hour حب المارية) أن إنها	funfair?
ميذ اليوسيقات الدلالة على حدث وقع في الماضي وانتهي. 2- Yes/No questions الأسئلة التي يجاب عنها بـ المراك	بن	three days three days القنوبرا	- I went to the
ومنداريع سنوات كوفع في الماضي وانتهي. على حدث وقع في الماضي وانتهي. على حدث وقع في الماضي وانتهي. على حوسيقار اللدلالة على حدث وقع في الماضي وانتهي. على موسيقار اللالالة التي يجاب عنها بدعه المستقوام اللالالة التي يجاب عنها بدعه الماضية التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام الماسة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام الماسة الماسية التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام الماسة الماسية التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام الماسة الماسية الماسية الماضية الما			funfair last
وتستخدم هذه التعييرات للدلالة على حدث وقع في الماضي وانتهي. 2. Salma bought a new bag last year. 2. Yes/No questions 2. Yes/No questions 8. Did you go to the Zoo? - Yes, I did. - Yes, I did. - Yes, I did. - Yes, I was. - When did you do yesterday? - Salma bought a new bag last year. - Yes, I was. - Yes, I w			Sunday
الأسئلة التي يجاب عنها بـ No / Yes. I did. - Yes, I did. - Yes, I did. - Yes, I was. - Wh-questions - When did you do yesterday? - When did you go to the cinema?	ä	• تستخدم هذه التعبيرات للدلالة على حدث وقع في الماضي وانتهى.	od day.
الأسئللة التي يجاب عنها بـ No / Yes با الأسئللة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام No, I wasn't. ا - Yes, I was No, I wasn't No, I wasn't الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - No, I wasn't الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - No, I wasn't الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - No, I wasn't الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - No, I wasn't الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - الإسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - الإسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - المالة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - المالة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - المالة التي تبدأ بكلمة الستفهام - المالة التي تبدأ بكلمة الستفهام - المالة التي تبدأ بكلمة الستفهام - المالة التي تبدأ بكلمة التي تبدأ بكلمة المالة التي تبدأ بكلمة التي تبدأ بكلمة التي تبدأ بكلمة المالة التي تبدأ بكلمة التي تبدأ بك			2. Discussing
الأسئلة التي يجاب عنها بـ Sw / Yes ، Loid you go to the zoo ? - What did you go to the zoo ? - What did you go to the zoo ? - What did you go to the zoo ? - What did you go to the zoo ? - What did you go to the cinema ?			types of music:
ex. Did you go to the zoo ? - What typ - What typ - No, I didn't. - Yes, I did. - Yes, I did. - Yes, I did. - Yes, I was. - Yes, I was. - Yes, I was. - Yes, I was. - No, I wasn't. - Yes, I was. - No, I wasn't. - Yes, I was. - No, I wasn't. - Ilike jazz don't like when did you do yesterday? - What did you go to the cinema?			الحديث عن انواع
e (نتون عالم الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - No, I didn't. - Yes, I did Yes, I did Yes, I was No, I wasn't No, I wasn't No, I wasn't الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - No, I wasn't Wh-questions - No, I wasn't Wh-questions - No, I wasn't When did you do yesterday?	محاور		loguino
ex. Were you happy ? — Yes, I was. — When did you do yesterday? — When did you go to the cinema?			misic do voi:
- Yes, I was No, I wasn't No, I wasn't الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - A- Sawh-questions الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - Sawh-questions - الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام الإسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - حفل موسيقي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - حفل موسيقي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - حفل موسيقي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - حفل موسيقي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - حفل موسيقي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - المؤلم المؤلم - الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - المؤلم - المؤل	مغامرة	ex. Were you happy?	like?
حقل موسيقى - الأسئلة التى تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - S-Wh-questions - الأسئلة التى تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - A-Wh-questions - الأسئلة التى تبدأ بكلمة استفهام - حفل موسيقى التون التون التون التون - When did you go to the cinema?			
نيتون (يتون ex. What did you do yesterday ? When did you go to the cinema ?	حفل موسيقي		- I like jazz but I
هافل حفل شواء	زيتون		don't like opera.
حفل شماء	فلفل	ex. What did you do yesterday?	
	حفل شواء barbecue	When did you go to the cinema?	



Reading Comprehension

Giving the main idea

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية للنص].

♦ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the questions:

new mud on the building every year. If they don't, it will collapse when it rains. There are always enough people to do this because the people who help get respect for you dry it, it becomes very hard. The building is usually It's not made of bricks like most mosques. It is made of something called mud. This is the brown soil you often very strong, but there is a problem. People must put the most unusual is the Great Mosque in Mali, Africa. find at the bottom of a river. It's very soft in water. If There are many beautiful mosques, but perhaps their work.

- What is the main idea of the passage?
 - or) What does the passage talk about?
- or) Give a suitable title for the passage.

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها في الفقرة.

99

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية] أو [العنوان المناسب] للفقرة

Speaking

Your last weekend & Your favourite music

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) قدرتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

◄ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue:

Omar asks Ali about his weekend in Alexandria.

Omar : Good morning.

: Good morning.

Omar: Where did you spend your weekend?

: (I)

Omar: How was the weather like there?

Omar: Fantastic! (3)

Omar : (4)

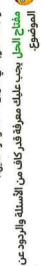
: I ate fresh fish.

: I swam in the sea.

Omar: Did you enjoy there?

. (Sahel Selim - Assuit 2023)

التحدي تريد السؤال عن [عطلة نهاية الأسبوع والموسيقي المفضلة لك] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين آسئلة والرد عليها







يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة مهاراتك في التعبير عن موضوع ما. "للمزيد من التدريب كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزل."

. 🥮 مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية و كيفية استخدامها في تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب. التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن [القصة المفضلة] و [عطلة نهاية الأسبوع] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها. "Your last weekend" "Your favourite story" Paragraph Write a paragraph on: Step 3 with my .. on an island. the match. in the sea. weekend. match. on the with some Sentences Robinson Crusoe is my Fill in using vocabulary: 1.1 likestories. beach and ate it. 2. I went to the ... He found a 6. It was a good 1. I spent a I watched a... He was a ... 4. His ship He was 4. My team 5. I took players. Step 2 story. father. Step 1 Review your vocabulary جوزالهند يغوص/يغرق مفضلة مغامرة र्जू. بمفرده لطيف كرة قدم عطلة نهاية الأسبوع صور بالكاميرا الأمامية الاستاد غز Write the meaning: Topic Your favourite story Your last weekend

Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختب	3. All pupils wear a blue with black shoes. a. form b. farm c. frame d. uniform (Nasser - Beni Suif 2023)	4.1 shopping yesterday morning. I bought a lot of things. (Santa - Gharbia 2023) a. had b. took c. went d. gave 5. How your weekend? (Al Salam - Cairo 2022) a. did b. does c. was d. do	6. Hassan a football match two days ago. a. watches b. watched c. watch (Al-Zayton - Cairo 2023)	7. My uncle his car in 2006 a. is buying b. buy c. bu 8. I will go to the to watch a. park b. stadium c. m 9. What of music do you a. game b. sport c. ty 10. In my Ali is a clever bo a. think b. opinion c. a
تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة	1. Complete the following dialogue: Mona and Dina are talking about music.	Mona : (3)		Mona: Thanks, Dina. Dina: (5) Cayed - Giza 2022) 2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. Salma is going to the She loves riding on the big wheel. a. funfair c. sports centre d. aquarium c. sports centre d. aquarium 2. I write what happens to me every day in a a. photo b. diary c. dairy d. search

Test

on unit 7

تنويه يمكنك حل الاختبار الكتونياً وتصوييه

Understand

O Apply

Create

A. Listening

قم بحل اختبار تراكمي في الملحق

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

	نماع في نهاية الكتاب].	الصحيحة (نصوص الاسن	ستمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة
1. Robinson Crus	oe is a/an	story.	سسع إلى تتعسب و راء
a. adventure	b. comic	c. scary	d. history
2. Robinson was	a/an	a -	
a. scientist	b. doctor	c. sailor	d. pilot
3. His ship sank b	ecause there wa	s a sto	orm
a. modern	b. weak	c. slow	d. terrible
4. He swam to a r	nearby	****	
a. village	b. island	c. city	d. house

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Heba and Hala are talking about music. Heba: I like music very much and you

Heba : I like music very much, and you?
Hala :(1).......
Heba :(2).....?

Hala: I prefer jazz.

Heba : (3)?

Hala: Hakim is my favourite singer.

Heba : Do you want to play music in a band?

Hala : (4)

Heba: I will help you.

Hala : Really ! (5)

(Damanhour - Beheira 2023)

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions: (Edfu - Aswan 2022)

Cinderella is a fantastic imaginary خيالية children's story. After her mother's death, her father soon married another woman with three daughters. When she married Cinderella's father, Cinderella had to live with them. The woman was so wicked شريرة and cruel. **She** made Cinderella work hard day and night and left her own daughters play. Her father was so weak and he couldn't **prevent** his new wife from being cruel to his sad daughter. Luckily the prince invited all girls to his palace to choose his future wife. All girls went in best clothes. Cinderella had nothing to fit يناسب the party. But with the help of a magician woman, she got the best dress, later on she married the prince.

a. Choose the correct answer fro	ma,b,cord:	130
1. All girls went to the prince's p	palace so he could	choose his
future a. daughter b. friend	c. wife	d. enemy
2. What do you think the word	"prevent" means ?	8 =
a. Stop b. Increase	c. Open	d. Choose
3. The underlined word "She" r	efers to	w •
a. Cinderella	b. Cinderella's	mother
c. the new wife	d. one of the	girls
b. Answer the following questio	ns:	
4. What is the main idea of the		
5. Do you think Cinderella lived Why? Why not?		
6. How did Cinderella get a be		
	ry & Structu	re
Choose the correct answer fr	om a, b, c or d:	
1. Wise people الحكماء make good a. shopping b. decisions	c. fun	d. equipment
The machine is making a loud a. voice	c. sound	d. interview

•	3. SB I	on the big whe	eel at the funfair v	esterday.			
	a. drove	b. read	c. climbed	d. rode			
o o	4. 😘	did you feel wh	en you started a r	new school ?			
	a. Which	b. Who	c. How	d. Where			
0	5. What	you do last Su	nday ? - I studied	geography			
	a. did	b. do	c. are	d. were			
Ó	6. B It was a te	rrible day	my team lost 5	- 2			
	a. although	b. because	C. SO	d however			
0	7. WB When you	put a stone in wat	ter, it	(Nasr City - Cairo 2023)			
	a. floats	b. thinks	c. sinks	d. thanks			
0	8. I always	selfies with	my mobile.	ai diama			
	a. take	b. buy	c. sell	d. read			
•	9. We had a/an	weeker	nd. I broke my left	arm			
	a. terrible	b. fantastic	c. interesting	d wonderful			
	10. "" r	neans using ideas	or ways that neo	ple first used a long			
	time ago.		and peo	pie mst used a long			
	a. Terrible	b. Traditional	c. Amazing	d. Popular			
5	Complete the ser	itences with the co	orract form of the	weed () to the			
9	Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 1. St Have you got a new jacket ? - No, I (don't).						
				n't).			
	2. Ghada (sweeps) the floor	yesterday.				
	3. SBI like jazz,	(and) I don't	like opera				
	4. What day	(is) vesterday ?	тис орега.				
	,	(13) yesterday :					
		E. Wri	ting				
6	Write a paragra	ph of about FIGE	ITV (90) would -	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب) • n			
		"A terrible was	iii (80) words o	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب			
١.	***************************************	A tellible wee	ekend you had"				
7.	••••••						
- 11			***************************************				

Stop here!

Mini-Test on unit 7 for Al-Azhar students	
Supply the missing parts in the following di	ialogue:
Tamer asks his friend Tarek about his favourite had a support to the support of t	aying ?
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d	:
1. What they do yesterday?	d. doing
You can see the planets and the stars at the a. aquarium b. planetarium c. library	d. hospital
3. They happy last week. They were sad. a didn't b. wasn't c. weren't	
4. My father an important decision yesterd a. made b. had c. put	U. VISICO
5. Crusoe wrote a of what happened to his a. dairy b. diary c. jungle	u. type
Reorder the words to make correct senten	ces:
1. saw - dolphins - I - an exhibition - about.	
2. Crusoe - adventure - story - an - Robinson - is	i .
3. park - us - father - My - drove - to - the.	
4. weekend - I - <u>Last week,</u> - spent - a really - nic	ce.
Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on : "Your last weekend	

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

'Ahmed is telling Omar about his visit to Al-Azhar Park".

Ahmed: Where did you go yesterday?

d. To the aquarium. b. To Al-Azhar Park. a. To the zoo.

c. To Alexandria.

b. Who did you go with? a. How did you go?

c. Where did you go? d. What did you do?

: I went with my family.

Ahmed : (3)

c. What did you see ? a. How did you see? b. Who did you see ?

Ahmed: Did you see any fountains? : We saw trees and flowers. d. Where did you see ?

b. Yes, I did. a. Yes, I'm. : (4) Omar

d. Yes, I have Ahmed: Did you enjoy your time there? c. Yes, I do.

b. Yes, I did. d. Yes, I am. c. Yes, I have. a. Yes, I do.

Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d: 6. Did you

(takes) the bus to the d. are taking b. take museum? c. taking a. took

(are) proud of their project last 7. They year.

(Does) you watch the football 8.A:

d. were

b. is

a. was

c. am

B: Yes, I will. match?

d. Have

b. Did

(Which) is the cave? 9. a. Who

b. Where

d. Whom

c. When

57

Monthly assessments

تقييمات شهرية

February Test

اختبار شهر فبراير

A. Listening

1	Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	. 1
•	يتمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).	ωl
	Bassant isyears old. a. ten	0
	a. car b. train c. plane d. bus	
	They saw in the museum. a. stairs	
	4. They went to the in the evening. a. museum b. home c. funfair d. aquarium	
	B. Language Functions	
6	Complete the following dialogue :	
	Hani and Sara are talking about music. Hani: Hi! Sara. What type of music do you like?	
	Sara: Hi! Hani. (1)	
	Sara: (2)	
	Sara: Yes, I can play the drums. And you? Hani: No. (4)	
	Sara: (5)? Hani: My dad taught me to play the piano.	
	Sara: That's fantastic!	
	C. Reading Comprehension	

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Doctors are important because they care about people. Doctors are the people who help others get **better** when they get sick. They find out what is wrong with people when they are sick. Doctors help sick people

Doctors are very You should be go	helpful. To be a do ood at science. You	octor, you have to u also should like l	spitals and clinics. go to university. helping others. You patient, people will
a. Choose the co	rrect answer from	a,b,cord	
	ed word "They" r		
a. doctors		c. nurses	d. universities
2. If you aren't	a kind doctor, peo		
a. love	b. hate	c. admire	
3. The opposite	of the underlined	word "better" is	arrespect
a. normal	b. serious	c. worse	d. well
b. Answer the fol	lowing questions		G. Well
	le title to the pass		
	you do to be a do		
6. Why do you t	hink doctors are v	ery important?	
	. Vocabulary		
			3
Choose the cor			
1. He is, h			
a. nervous	b. friendly	c. quiet	d. punctual
2. They sle	eep early so they o	ouldn't catch the	train.
a. won't		c. wasn't	d. didn't
3. The is hi		al instrument.	
a. trumpet	b. storm	c. puzzle	d. climbing
4. The ask	ed the famous mus	sician difficult ques	tion in the program.
a. statue	b. sailor	c. interviewer	d. solution





The amazing world around us

Objectives:

- A text about the Tahya Masr Bridge; the

twenty-first century; a fact file; a review of

Facts and figures; a quiz

- Speaking:
- Language;

Comparative and superlative adjectives

Lessons-

1 & 2

SB pages 12:15 WB pages 77 & 78



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

		1 1 1	ادولة
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	country (n)	
	تعداد السكان	bridge (n)	کوبری
population (n)	ەحدة قىلىن / قىلى	desert road (n)	طریق صحراوی
measurement (n)	وحده دیاس ر ویاس	tower (n)	برج
building (n)			غابة
tunnel (n)	نفق	forest (n)	



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

population - country - measurements - tunnel

- 1. The of Cairo is about 20 million people.
- 2. China is a big in Asia.
- 3. The underground goes through a long

Famous places

أماكن مشهورة

معبد الأقصر Luvor Temple	برج الحمراء [الكويت] Al Hamra Tower
Luxor rempre	[[] sl <:1.3:
14117	the Library of Alexandria مكتبة الأسكندرية
Cairo - Alexandria desert road طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوي	
Abraj Al-Bait (Clock Tower) راج البيت (برج الساعة) [في المملكة العربية السعودية]	the Gotthard Tunnel أ أ
the Pyramids of Giza هرامات الجيزة	
the Pyramid of El Castillo برم کاستیلو	
Brasillia (في البرازيل الله البرازيل الله البرازيل الله البرازيل الله البرازيل الله البرازيل الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال	
ورم الأحمر (في دهشور) the Red Pyramid	
the 6 th October Bridge وبرى ٦ أكتوبر	1.11 -5 <
the Cairo Tower ج القاهرة	برج بيزا المائل the Leaning Tower of Pisa برج بيزا المائل



Lesson 1 SB pages 12 & 13 WB page 77

ground (n)	أرض	research (ed) (v), (n)	پجری بحثًا / بحث
Nile banks (n)		fact file (n)	
link (ed) (v)		guess (ed) (v)	ملف حقائق
exact (adj)		daily (adj), (adv)	يخمن
	دفیق شعدد	daily (auj), (auv)	یومی / یومیّا

Lesson 2 SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 78

وسط	compare (d) (v)	. 15
		يقارن عبر/خلال
7 THE R. P. LEWIS CO., LANSING, S. LEWIS CO., LANSING, S. L.		
		قوانين / قواعد
The state of the s		سیاح
		المرور زوار
	يصف اختبار قصير عاصمة بطريقة صحيحة	compare (d) (v) dacross (adv) rules (n) tourists (n) traffic (n) visitors (n)

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

	ذه التعريفات	ادرس ھ
bridge	something used for people and cars to cross a road or rive	r .c.uo
city	a large town	وبری مدینة کبی
crowded	where there are many people	
depth	measuring water from the top to the bottom	مزدحم
empty	without any people or things in it	عمق
low	not far from the top to the bottom of	فارغ
modern	relating to the present; not old	منخفض
narrow	not far from one side of something to the other; not wide	حديث
noisy	making a lot of noise, not quiet	ضيق د
pyramid	a large building that is square at the bottom with four triangular sides forming a point at the top	صاخب
quiet	without making much noise; not noisy	هرم
tower	a tall, narrow building	ھادئ
wide	far from one side of something to the other; not narrow	برج
farther	at a bigger distance, the comparative of far	واسع
tall	more than usual height; not short	ابعد
	something and meight; not short	طويل
tunnel	something you can go through to travel under the sea or through a mountain	نفق

Vocabulary Study

Synonym	s and Antor	nyms	دات	مترادفات ومتضاه
Word	1	المرادف Synonym	Antonym /Oppo	المضاد osite
	واسع	broad	narrow	ضيق
wide		busy	empty	فارغ
crowded	مزدحم		old / ancient	قديم
modern	حديث	new		ا منخفض
high	عال / مرتفع	tall	low	
better	أفضل	finer / superior	worse	أسوأ

Prefixes & Suffixes	TO COLUMN THE WAY	وناهية	مقاطع بادئة
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples à	أمثل
-ed	تحول الاسم لصفة	crowded	مزدحم
-ment	تحول الفعل لاسم	measurement	قياس
-or	تحول الفعل لاسم	visitor	زائر

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The antonym of the word "wide" is ".....".
 - a. empty b. happy c. narrow d. low

 - 3. We can get the noun of the word "measure" by adding the suffix "......"
 - a. –tion b. –ment c. –sion d. –er
 - 4. The synonym of the word "better" is ".....".

 a. superior b. parrow c. crowded d. modern
 - a. superior b. narrow c. crowded d. modern 5. The opposite of "....." is "empty".
 - a. large b. crowded c. tall d. wide
 - General Notes on Reading & Listening
 - ? اسم + What =? صفة + 10w
 - 533 How wide is the Tahya Masr Bridge?
 - = What width is the Tahya Masr Bridge?



- SB How old are the Pyramids?
 - = What age are the Pyramids?

	الصفة			سم	الاد
How	deep long old high / tall much many wide	كم العمق كم الطول كم العمر كم الارتفاع /الطول كم الثمن / الكمية كم العدد كم العرض	What	depth length age height price / quantity number width	ما العمق ما الطول ما العمر ما الارتفاع

- لاحظ: استخدام صفة غير مضاف إليها أي إضافات بعد التعبيرات التي تدل على المقاييس.
 - SB It's 146 metres high.
 - It's about 25,000 metres long.

SB page 30

? طرف المقارنة الثاني or (2) وطرف المقارنة الأول (1) صفة مقارنة is + اسم + which (2)

للسؤال عن المقارنة بين شيئين نستخدم التركيب السابق.

- Which animal is faster, a horse or a donkey?
 - Which thing is heavier, a book or a pencil?
- عند عدم التأكد من العدد أو الكمية بشكل دقيق نستخدم بعض التعبيرات التالية مثل : عدم التأكد من العدد أو الكمية بشكل دقيق نستخدم بعض التعبيرات التالية مثل : عدم التأكد من more than حوالي ... about / أقل من
 - Mr Ayman may be more than 40 years old.
 - Mr Ashraf has got about 50 students in his class.

SB page 13

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions	
make it noiser or quieter	under the ground	تحت الأرض
يجعلها أكثر ضوضاءً أو هدوءً	go over the Nile	يمر من فوق النيل
	go under the sea	يمر من تحت البحر
has worse traffic بها ازدحام مروری أسوء	go down that road	يسير في ذلك الطريق بسير في ذلك الطريق
أبعد أكثر	better for	افضل لـ أفضل لـ
give an exact number يعطى رقم دقيق	easy for	سهل لـ
do a quiz يؤدى اختبار قصير	crowded with	مزدحم بـ





Reading and Listening





on Lesson 1SB page 13



- a: The Pyramid of El Castillo in Chichen Itza is 30 metres high.
- b: The Tahya Masr Bridge is about 540 metres long.
- c: More than 37,500,000 people live in Tokyo, Japan.
- d: The Leaning Tower of Pisa is just under 850 years old.
- e: The Gotthard Tunnel in Switzerland is 2,3 kilometres under the ground.



Narrator : 1

- A: How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?
- B: It's 220 kilometres long.

Narrator : 2

- A: How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia?
- B: It's 1,642 metres deep.

Narrator: 3

- A: How high is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia?
- B: It's 601 metres high.

Narrator : 4

- A: How old is the Luxor Temple?
- B: It's just under 3,500 years old.

Narrator :5

- A: How many people live in Cairo?
- B: More than 20 million people.



Lesson 2 SB page 15

How much do you know about pyramids? Let's compare two pyramids in Egypt. **The Great Pyramid**⁽¹⁾ of Giza is 146 metres tall. It's taller than **the Red Pyramid**⁽²⁾, which is 105 metres tall.

But the Red Pyramid is **further away**⁽³⁾ from the **centre**⁽⁴⁾ of Cairo, so it's **less crowded**⁽⁵⁾ with visitors. Because it's less crowded, it's also quieter.

Now let's **compare**⁽⁶⁾ two very tall buildings. **The Shanghai Tower**⁽⁷⁾ in China is 632 metres tall. The tower first opened in 2015. The Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait is 412.6 metres tall. The building first opened in 2011. So the Shanghai Tower is taller and more modern than the Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait.

Finally, we're going to compare two capital (8) cities. Bangkok became the capital of Thailand about 600 years ago, so it's much older than Brasilia. Brasilia is a modern city.

The Brazilians built it in 1960. More people live in Bangkok than Brasilia. The **population** ⁽⁹⁾ of Bangkok is more than 10 million. The population of Brasilia is about four and a half million.

So, how did you do? Did you get the answers correct?















on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary			
1. Theis a la a. bridge	arge area of land b. tower	covered with tree c. forest	s and plants. d. temple
2 Fount has a	of about 102	million people.	8
a nonulation	b. pollution	c. weather	d. transport
3. Bangkok is a ve	rytity. The	ere are too many p	eople there.
a. empty	b. quiet	c. crowded	d. calm
4. Egypt is a great	in the Mic	ldle East.	4 (4)
a. town	b. capital	c. city	d. country
SB , WB & Previou	us Exams		
5. SB The Great P	yramid was built	thousands of yea	rs ago, so it's a/an
building		(South	Port Sala - Port Sala 2022)
a. ancient	b. modern		d. crowded
6. SB Bangkok is	the of Tha	iland. (Multidiscipli	inary - Al Waili - Cairo 2021)
a island	b. river	c. country	u. Capitai
7. WB We need to	buy some more	water. This bottle	is
a empty	b. crowded	c. noisy	d. large
8. The Tahya Ması	goes ove	r the Nile in Cairo.	(Helwan - Cairo 2023)
a. Pyramid	b. Tunnel	c. Tower	d. Bridge
▶ El-Moasser Exerc			
9. The Suez Cana	I the Medi	terranean Sea to t	he Red Sea.
a. describes	b. lifts	c. links	d. builds
10. Can you	life in the city wi	th life in the coun	tryside ?
a. prepare	b. compare	c. repeat	d. rewrite
11. About 500.000		ypt last April.	
a. tourists	b. towers	c. tools	d. tours
▶ Definitions			
12. Something you	ı can go through	to travel under th	e sea or through
a mountain is	called a		
a, bridge	b. pyramid	c. tower	d. tunnel
13 is meas	uring water from	the top to the bot	ttom.
a Size	b. Depth	c. Width	d. Weight



Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- 14. English is easier me to study than maths.
 - a. from
- c. of
- d. to

- 15. What is the Great Pyramid?
 - a. high
- b. higher
- c. highest
- d. height



مهارة التحدث

▶ Talking about measurements :

الحديث عن القياسات:

Questions



Answers



- How long is the Cairo Alexandria Desert Road? كم يبلغ طول طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوي؟
- · How old is Luxor Temple? كم عمر معبد الأقصر؟
- · How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia? كم يبلغ عمق بحيرة بيكال في روسياً ؟
- How high is Abraj Al-Bait (Clock Tower) in Saudi Arabia? كم يبلغ ارتفاع أبراج البيت [برج ساعة] في المملكة العربية السعودية ؟
- · How many people live in Cairo? كم عدد الناس الذين يعيشُون بألقًاهرة؟



- It's just under 3500 years old. أقل من ٣٥٠٠ عامًا.
- It's 1,642 m deep under the water. يبلغ عمقها ١,٦٤٢ متر تحت الماء.
- It's about 601 metres long. بيلغ ارتفاعها ما يقرب من ٦٠١ متر.
- More than 20 million people live in Cairo.

أكثر من ٢٠ مليون إنسان يعيش بالقاهرة.



مهارة الكتابة

Exciting places in Egypt :

أماكن شيقة في مصر:

1. We live in an amazing world.

- ا. نحن نعيش في عالم مدهش.
- There are many exciting places to visit in Egypt.
 - ٢. هناك الكثير من الأماكن الممتعة لتزورها في مصر.
- 3. In Egypt, there are many pyramids.
- ٣. هناك العديد من الأهرامات في مصر.
- The Great Pyramid is more crowded than the Red Pyramid.
 - ع. الهرم الأكبر أكثر ازدحامًا من الهرم الأحمر.
- The Great Pyramid is taller than the Red Pyramid. ٥. الهرم الأكبر أطول من الهرم الأحمر.

Speaking & Writing Corner

اللحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues في استوراء

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & Emails

Step 1 Vocabulary غوية اختبر إتقانك للمفردات النغوية احتبر إتقانك للمفردات النغوية المعطاطة	Speaking اختبر مدى إتقائك لمهارة مالمالمهارة المالم المال	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى إتقائك لمهارة الكتابة Write a paragraph on : "The Great Pyramid"
1.A. is the Red Pyramid ? B. It is 146 metres tall. 2. A. Where is the Red Pyramid ? B. It is in مرة منابلا المرم الأكبر منابلا المرم ا	Hany: (5) (Abo El-Nomros – Giza 2023) Shahd and Ranim are talking about the Red Pyramid. Shahd: What did you do yesterday? Ranim: (1)	Write an email about : "The Red Pyramid"



Language

المقارنة بين اثنين في صفة Comparative adjectives

1) What's an adjective?

ما هي الصفة ؟

An adjective is a word that describes a noun and precedes it or it follows verb to be.

♦ الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم وتسبقه أو تأتي بعد (verb to be).

ex. - He is a tall man.

- This mobile is expensive.

1. Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

ex. fast / big / happy ... etc.

2. Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

ex. beautiful / interesting / fantastic ... etc.

2) Comparative of adjectives

We use comparative adjectives to compare two things, people or places.

نستخدم صفات المقارنة عند المقارنة بين شيئين، شخصين أو اثنين من الأماكن.

Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

adj. صفة 💠 er 💠 than

• تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة المقارنة بإضافة (Qr) للصفة وتأتى بعدها (than):

- الحظأن:

▶ fast → faster / old → older

ex. - Omar is stronger than his brother.

اً. يُضاف [٢] فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ [@] :

▶ large → larger / close → closer

لنهاية الصفة القصيرة:
 يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة:

big → bigger / thin → thinner / hot → hotter / fit → fitter

٣- الصفات المنتهية بحرف (٣) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن تتحول (٣) إلى (ier) :

easy → easier / happy → happier.

ع. يمكن استخدام (the) قبل صفات المقارنة إذا كان بعدها (of) وكانت تشير إلى طرفين :

ex. - Hadeer is the taller of the two sisters.

2 Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

more فضفة / less أقل adj. أكثر † than

• لاحظ أن:

◄ تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالى :

more/less beautiful than

أكثر/ أقل جمالًا من

ex.- Reading is more interesting than video games.

♦ هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة [تحفظ كما هي] عند المقارنة بين اثنين :

Adjective	الصفة	Comparative is	الصفة عند المقارنة بين اثن
bad	سيب	worse	أسوأ .
far	بعبد	further / farther	أبعد
good	- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	better	أفضل
late	متأخر	later	في وقت لاحق - اخير
little	قليل الكمية	less	أقل من
			أكثر
many much	کثیر الکمیة	more	أكثر

✔ ليس بالضرورة استخدام (**than)** بعد صفة المقارنة عندما يكون الطرف الثاني للمقارنة مفهوم من سياق الكلام :

ex. - Malak is tall, but Mariam is taller. (Not: taller than)

- This car is expensive. I want a less expensive one. (Not: less expensive than)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. Playing sports is than playing video games. (Warrag - Giza 2023) d. more c. better b. good a. best (Mit Ghamr - Dakahlia 2023) 2. Cairo is bigger Tanta. d. more c. as b. then a. than (El Bagour - Monufia 2022) 3. The old car is than the new car. d. noisiest c. noisier b. as noisy a. noisy



4. WB The museur	n is usually	on Saturday than	on Sunday.	
a. crowded c. more crowded		b. most crowded		
		d. the most crowded		
5. 3 Mount Ever	est is than I	Mount Kilimanjaro).	
a. high	b. highest	c. the highest	d. higher	
	(Multidisciplinar)	Borg El Arab - Alexand	dria 2021 / Port Said 2022)	
6. B Which bridge	e is, the 6 th (October Bridge or t	he Qasr El Nil Bridge ?	
a. long	b. longest	c. longer	d. the longest	
		(West Tanta - Gharbia 2022)	
▶ El-Moasser Exerci				
7. Cairo in the past				
a. as quiet as	b. quieter than	c. quietest	d. the quietest	
8. Books are				
a. useful	b. more useful	c. useful as	d. the useful	
9. Gold is more exp				
a. thin	b. then	c. than	d. this	
10. The post office is	s to my hou			
a. near	b. nearest	c. as near	d. nearer	
11. Yesterday was w	arm, but today is .	*********		
a. warmer than		c. warmest	d. the warm	
2. Complete the sent	ences with the cor	rect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:	
SB & WB Exercises				
1. WB Adel is tall, bu	ut Rami is (t	tallest).		
2. The Pyramids	of Giza are	(easy) for tourists	to visit than the	
neu Fyramia.			to visit triair trie	
3. SB The Nile River	is (long) th	nan the Amazon.		
El-Moasser Exercis				
4. My house is		s house		
5. Sara is (mo	st) careful than M	one		
6. Osman is(
7. Which classroom	is (most) =	an.		
8. This car is very nic	o but that are !-	odern A or B?		
8. This car is very nic	tor (1)	(nicest).		
9. The library is quie	ter (then) ti	ne tunfair.		
10. Sara has (li	itie) water than M	ona.		

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

d. the worst

d. City

d, higher

c. worst

c. Tunnel

c. longer

Create Understand Apply Complete the following dialogue: Soha is talking to a tourist. Soha: Welcome to Egypt, your second country. Tourist: (1)! Soha: Where are you from? Tourist: (2) Soha : (3)? Tourist: I will stay for a month. Soha : (4)? Tourist: I'll visit Aswan and Luxor. Soha: What do you think of Egypt? (6th October - Giza 2023) Tourist: (5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. Mount Kilimanjaro is than Sinai Mountain. (Luxor 2023) d. as high c. highest b. higher a, high 2. How people live in Cairo ? - More than 20 million people. d. deep c. much b. many 3. The policeman asked the woman to the thief. d. describe b. deliver c. prove 4. The in Cairo is very busy. d. pollution c. drink b. food a. traffic 5. 5B The Great Pyramid of Giza is than the Red Pyramid. d, the tallest c. tallest b. taller a. tall 6. The traffic is in a city than in the countryside.

b. bad

b. Tower

8. Which is the Nile or the Amazon? - The Nile.

b. older

7."...." is a tall, narrow building.

a. worse

a. Pyramid

a. taller

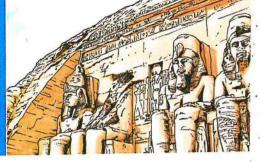
The amazing	world	around	us
-------------	-------	--------	----

There a	ro many			V
a. build	ders	visiting the b. engineers	c. tourists	d. animals
Thorous	voro a let e	Company of the Compan		
		f people in the n		ery
a. quiet		b. crowded	c. clean	d. bigger
			(Abi	u El Matamir - Beheira 20.
omplete	the senten	ces with the corr	ect form of the	word(s) in brackets
				e Great Pyramid ?
		ot) than Alexand		,
. WB The	cinema is	(empty) t	han the metro	
. The lion	IS (O	langerous) than	the dog.	
/rite an e	email of al	out EIGHTY (8	(1) words .	اب عنه في نهاية الكتاب
ame is M	larwan and	your email add	t the famous p	amir@yahoo.com.
our frien	larwan and d's email ad	l your email add ddress is davidal	t the famous p	amir@yahoo.com.
our frien	larwan and d's email ad	your email add	t the famous p	amir@yahoo.com.
our friend From	d's email ad	l your email add ddress is davidal	t the famous p	amir@yahoo.com.
our friend From	d's email ad	l your email add ddress is davidal	t the famous p	amir@yahoo.com.
rour friend From To Subject	d's email ad	l your email add ddress is davidal	t the famous p	amir@yahoo.com.
rour friend From To Subject	larwan and d's email ad	l your email add ddress is davidal	t the famous p	amir@yahoo.com.
From To Subject	larwan and d's email ad	l your email add ddress is davidal	t the famous p ress is marwan ex@gmail.com	amir@yahoo.com.
From To Subject	larwan and d's email ad	l your email add ddress is davidal	t the famous p ress is marwan ex@gmail.com	amir@yahoo.com.
From To Subject	larwan and d's email ad	l your email add ddress is davidal	t the famous p ress is marwan ex@gmail.com	amir@yahoo.com.
From To Subject	larwan and	l your email add ddress is davidal	t the famous p ress is marwan ex@gmail.com	amir@yahoo.com.
From To Subject	larwan and	l your email add	t the famous p ress is marwan ex@gmail.com	
From To Subject	larwan and	l your email add	t the famous p ress is marwan ex@gmail.com	amir@yahoo.com.

Lessons-

3 & 4

SB pages 16:18 WB pages 79 & 80



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

suspension bridge (n) وبرى معلق	منظر طبیعی / رؤیة view (n)
sunset (n) روب الشمس	ياضة تسلق الجبال (mountain climbing (n
ice skating (n)	emsect (n) مشرة
حلق على الجليد (باستخدام حذاء التزحلق)	achievements (n) نوازات
حلقعلى الجليد [باستخدام لوح التنحلق] (skiing(n	proud (adj) تو



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

skiing - insect - proud - sunset - view

- 1. The view of the Nile during is fantastic.
- 2. I am of my parents.
- 3. People can practisein very cold areas.
- 4. The "bee" is a very useful

Lesson 3

SB pages 16 & 17 WB page 79

finally (adv)		Nile's Warraq Island	
probably (adv)	من المحتمل	social studies (n) ماعية	مادة الدراسات الاجتم
protect (ed) (v)	يحمى	popular (adj)	مشهور
floor (n)	أرضية	the express train (n)	القطار السريع

Lesson 4

SB page 18 WB page 80

school subject (n)	مادة دراسية	price (n) سعر / ثمن
holiday places (n)		مدينة دهب السياحية (في جنوب سيناء) Dahab (n)
TV show (n)	عرض تليفزيوني	نادی ریاضی sports club (n)
travels (n)		Etruscan shrew (n)
right now (adv)	الآن	ذبابة الإتروسكان [حيوان يشبه الفأر]
politely (adv)	بطريقة مهذبة	opinion (n) رأى



Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

achievement	a result to be proud of	
		إنجاز
dangerous	able to cause harm; not safe	خطير
safe	not in a dangerous situation or position	آمن
sunset	the time when the sun disappears from the sky at the end of the day	غروب الشمس
suspension bridge	a long bridge that has thick metal wires to hold	
ugly	not nice to look at; not beautiful	توبری سی قبیح

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Anton	nyms	مترادفات ومتضادات	
الكلمة Word	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym /Opposite	
dangerous خطیر	serious	safe	
agree يوافق	accept	disagree / refuse	
شروق الشمس sunrise	morning	sunset غروب الشمس	
یحمی protect	save	endanger يعرض للخطر	

Prefixes & Suffixe	s	a.	مقاطع بادئة وناه
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Example	
dis-	تعطى عكس الكلمة	disagree	يرفض / لا يوافق
-ous	تعطى الصفة من الاسم	dangerous	یرسی ہ۔ یو ای خطیر
-ment	تعطى الاسم من الفعل	achievement	انحاز



Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The words "agree" and "....." have the same meaning.
 - a. accept
- b. expect
- c. save
- d. take
- 2. The antonym of the word "save" is ".....".
 - a. danger
- b. dangerous
- c. endanger
- d. protect

a. sunset 4. The suffix "-m a. verb 5. We can get the a. un-	ent" gives the b. adjective opposite of the wo b. dis-	c. achievement of the word "ach c. noun	ieve". d. adverb g the prefix "". d. mis-
1 It takes / too	k + (وقت) + to + in vears to build the	f.	يستغرق [وقت]
* across (adv)	rosses the Nile's W time to walk across		يعبر / يمر عبر عبر (<u>SB page 16)</u>
	nf. + ing) / (noun)	PA25	فخوري
- They are p * proud to + ir	d of his uncle. roud of being Egy of. Id to be Egyptian.	ptian teachers.	(SB page 16)
- He is prou	iu to be Egyptian.	2 22 3 10	توسات ما ت

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Preposit	ions
the best time to أفضل وقت لـ	live on	یعیش علی
النهم أن It's important to	disagree with	لا يتفق مع شخص
•	in my opinion	فی رأی
the same size as نفس الحجم مثل	show on TV	عرض في التليفزيون
	I'm not sure about	غير متأكد من ذلك



Skills







on Lesson 3 SB page 16

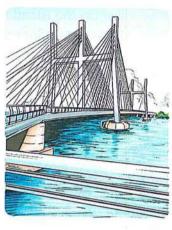
The Tahya Masr Bridge

The world's widest⁽¹⁾ suspension bridge⁽²⁾ opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long.

More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months. The bridge crosses⁽³⁾ the Nile's Warraq Island⁽⁴⁾. More than 100,000 people live on the island.

Many people enjoy walking across⁽⁵⁾ the bridge. It has a glass floor⁽⁶⁾, so you can see

the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at $sunset^{(7)}$, for a beautiful $view^{(8)}$ of the city.



choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Extracting information.

O Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Learn 1. The Tahya Masr Bridge was finished in

aboutb. four years

c. two years d. three years

2. The best time to cross the bridge is at

a. sunrise b. morning
c. evening d. sunset

(4) جزیرة(5) تمشیة عبر(6) أرضیة زجاجیة(7) غروب الشمس

(1) الأكثر اتساعًا

(2) كوبرى معلق

ر3) يعبر

(8) منظر طبیعی



on Lesson 3 SB page 16



Voice: In front of us, you can see the world's widest suspension bridge!

It opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide and 540 metres long. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016 and they finally finished it 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city.



- The express train⁽¹⁾ to Aswan is the fastest one.
- 2. Cairo streets are the busiest in Egypt.
- 3. Do you think that Tahya Masr Bridge will be the most popular place in Cairo in the future?
- Some people believe⁽²⁾ that buses inside Cairo are the least expensive means of transport⁽³⁾.
- This red smartphone⁽⁴⁾ is the most expensive one.
- 6. I think Mohamed Salah is the best player in Egypt.

(4) الماتف الذكي

(3) وسيلة مواصلات

(2) يعتقد / يؤمن

1) القطار السرىع

Lesson 4 SB page 18



Girl 1 : Which subject do you think is more difficult, English or science ?

Girl 2: In my opinion⁽¹⁾, science is the most difficult of all.

Boy 1: I think Dahab has the most beautiful beach in Egypt. Do you?

Boy 2: I agree (2). It's also the least crowded.

(1) في رأيي (2) أوافقك الرأي



Girl 3: What's your opinion of ice skating? Do you agree that it's more dangerous than mountain climbing?

Girl 4: I'm afraid⁽³⁾ I don't agree.

Boy 3: What do you think about the new TV show(4)?

Boy 4: I think it's the funniest show on TV right now.

(3) أخشى أن (4) عرض تليفزيوني



Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabular	ry	ry	ar	ula	bι	ca	VO	еу	K	D
---------------	----	----	----	-----	----	----	----	----	---	---

	(ey vocabulary			
	1. Mountain	is the most dange	rous sport at all.	
	a. watching	b. climbing	c. swimming	d. painting
	2. There is a beautif	ul of the cit	y from the Cairo T	ower.
	a. review	b. revision	c. view	d. preview
	3. Egypt has made	great in edu	ucation. We are pr	oud of that.
	a. achievements	b. islands	c. pairs	d. mistakes
> !	SB , WB & Previous	s Exams		
	4. Football is a	sport, many pe	ople love it around	d the world.
	a. dangerous	b. popular	c. polite	d. boring
				(Fayid - Ismailia 2022,
	5. The Tahya Masr B	Bridge is the world	's widest bı	ridge.
	a. information	b. suspension	c. evaporation	d. condensation
			(El Marg /	New Cairo - Cairo 2022,
	6. 🔢 Remember tha	at it is important to	be when yo	u give your opinion
	a. cross	b. impolite	c. safe	d. polite
D	El-Moasser Exercis	es		
	7. The bridge	the Nile's Warrac	ı island.	
	a. saves	b. crosses	c. takes	d. makes
	8. The bridge is 67.	36 metres		
	a. wide	b. width	c. heavy	d. old
	9. A honey bee is a	/an that pro	oduces honey.	
	a. system	b. plant	c. insect	d. planet

a. Beautiful 11. Theis th a. sunrise 12. WB mear a. Dangerous	b. sunset	c. Wide	d. Long
a. Beautiful 11. Theis th a. sunrise 12. WB mear a. Dangerous	b. Ugly se time when the su b. sunset	c. Wide un disappears at t	
a. sunrise 12. 7 mear a. Dangerous	b. sunset		
a. sunrise 12. 7 mear a. Dangerous	b. sunset		the end of the day.
a. Dangerous	ns able to cause ha		d. sunshine
		rm.	
l anguage Notes	b. Cheap	c. Polite	d. Safe
Enlighted incres	Expressions & P	repositions	
13. The train is an ir	mportant of	transport.	
a. mean	b. means	c. main	d. mine
14. I'm proud	my father. He doe	es his best to mak	e us happy.
a. off	b. from	c. to	d. of
15. I disagree	you. English is the	e most important	subject.
a. of	b. at	c. to	d. with
Asking for opinions:	سؤال عن الرأى oms	Giving opin	طاء الآراء بالموافقة وعدم ال إعطاء الأراء nions
	سؤال عن الرأى oms	Giving opin	طاء الآراء بالموافقة وعدم ال إعطاء الأراء nions
Asking for opinion What is your opinion What do you think	سؤال عن الرأى on of / about رأيك في؟	Giving opin	طاء الآراء بالموافقة وعدم ال إعطاء الأراء n, في رأيي

I think so.	أعتقد ذلك.	- I don't have the same opinion. لیس لدی نفس الرأی. - I don't feel the same as you about that. لا أشعر مثلك تمامًا بشأن ذلك
That's what I think.	هذا ما أعتقد.	- I'm not sure about that. لست متأكدًا بشأن ذلك. أنت مخطئ! You are wrong! أنت مخطئ! ماذا؟ هذا مستحيل!! What ? No way!

▶ 2. Discussing your country's achievements :

٢. مناقشة إنجازات بلدك:

• How do you feel about your country's achievements ? کیف تشعر تجاه إنجازات بلدك ؟	- I feel very proud. أشعر بالفخر الشديد. - It makes me happy. تجعلنى أشعر بالسعادة.
• Do you want people from other countries to like and respect your country ? هل تريد أن الأشخاص من الدول الأخرى تحب وتحترم بلدك	- Of course / Yes, I do. نعم، بالطبع/ نعم، أريد ذلك.
• What other Egyptian achievements are you proud of ? ما هى الإنجازات المصرية الأخرى التى تفتخر بها؟	- I think the new Administrative Capital and > Galala City projects. أعتقد مشروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة ومشروعات مدينة الجلالة.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

▶The Tahya Masr suspension Bridge:

كوبرى تحيا مصر المعلق:

ا. هو أكبر كوبرى معلق فى العالم.
 ا. الا's the world's widest suspension bridge.
 ا. هو أكبر كوبرى معلق فى العالم.
 ا. الا opened in Cairo in May 2019.
 ا. تم افتتاحه فى القاهرة فى مايو ١٩٠٩.
 ا. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island.
 ا. يمر الكوبرى فوق جزيرة الوراق النيلية.
 ا. You can see a beautiful view of the city over the bridge.
 ا. يمكنك أن ترى منظر جذاب للمدينة من أعلى الكوبرى.
 ا. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.
 ا. فضل وقت لعبور الكوبرى عند غروب الشمس.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues الدرجات في أسئلة الـ Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues قم يحل تدريبات هذه الصقحة باستمرار.

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & Emails

احتبر إنفاتك للمفردات النعوية	اختبر مدى إثقائك لمهارة التحدث	اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
Kead and complete: 1. A. What is this called ? 8. It's called the Tahya Masr Bridge.	Amal and Mona are talking about Tahya Masr Bridge in Cairo. Amal : Where will you go next week? Mona : (1)	Write a paragraph on : "The Tahya Masr Bridge"
2. A. Where is Tahya Masr کویری ? گویری B. It's in Cairo.	Amal Mona Amal	
3. A. What is the floor made of ? B. It's made of	Mona : (3) It is new. Amal : (4) ? Mona : Its floor is made of glass. ? Amal : (5) ? Mona : It opened in 2019. (Kerdasa – Giza 2023)	
A. What do you think of the ?	1. A. What do you think of the about the new capital. B. I think it's a great project. the new capital? Ashraf : (1)	Write an email about : "The New Administrative Capital"
2. A. Do you feel	Ayman: (2) Ashraf: I feel very proud. Ayman: Do you want people to come to see this achievement? Ashraf: (3) Ayman: (4) Ashraf: I'm also proud of the Galala city projects. Ayman: Does it take a long time to finish these projects?	



III Language

صفات التفضيل [المقارنة بين أكثر من انبين]: The Superlative of adjectives

We use superlative adjectives to compare more than two things.

التفضيل عند المقارنة بين أكثر من أثنين.

Short

adjectives

Trace | the + adj. من أثنين.

(the + adj. من + est)

الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالى : ex. - fast → the fastest

ا. نُضاف [st] بعد الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ [e] :

ex. - large → the largest /- close → the closest

يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (the adj. + est):

ex. - big → the biggest / - thin → the thinnest

٣. الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن تتحول (y) إلى (iest) :

ex. - easy → the easiest / - happy → the happiest

Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

صفة .ddj + الأقل the least الأكثر the least

تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالى:

ex. - the most / the least beautiful

الأكثر / الأقل جمالًا

ex. - The most useful thing in the kitchen is the fridge.

- Which item is the least expensive?

صبغ المقارنة والتفضيل غير المنتظمة: : Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms

- • لاحظ أن :

، هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هي) عند المقارنة بين اثنين أو المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين :

1 A	djective
bad	سیئ
far	بعيد
good	جيد
late	متأخر
little	قليل [الكمية]
many much	كثير (العدد) كثير (الكمية)

worse than	أسوأ من
farther than further than	أبعد من أبعد من
better than	أفضل من
later than	لاحق - تالي
less than	أقل من
more than	أكثر من

the worst	الأسوأ
the farthest	الأبعد
the furthest	الأبعد
the best	الأفضل
the latest	الأحدث
the last	الأخير
the least	الأقل
the most	الأكثر

ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

ه لاحظ: ا. استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (the) بعد الأعداد الترتيبية (first/second/third/fourth ... etc.) ex. - Cairo is the first largest city in Africa. ٢. لا تستخدم (the) قبل التفضيل عندما يسبقها ('s') الملكية أو صفة ملكية: - my - his - her - your - our - their - its - 's ex. - Naguib Mahfouz is Egypt's best novelist روائي. - Is Ahmed your youngest brother? ٣. لاحظ استخدام حروف الجر (in - of) بعد صفات التفضيل: (أ) تستخدم (in) غالبًا قبل (المكان): ex. - He is the best player in the team. - Everest is the highest mountain in the world. [ب] تستخدم (of) غالبًا قبل (الأشخاص): ex. - Sama is the cleverest of her sisters. (جـ) يُفضل استخدام (of) قبل السنوات: ex. - The death of my uncle is the worst event of 2016. (SB page 17)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

house in the city

SB , WB & Previous Exams

1 We hought

i. The bought	House in the	City. (Estimated	
a. more expe	nsive	 b. more expe 	nsive than
c. as expensiv	ve	d. the most e	xpensive
2. The world	's suspensi	on bridge opened	l in Cairo.
a. widest	b. wide	c. wider	d. the widest
3. WB Whales ar	eanimals ir	n the world.	
a. big as	b. bigger	c. the biggest	d. biggest
4. Some peo	ple think that mat	ths is subject	ct of all.
a. difficult		b. more diffic	ult
c. most diffic	ult	d. the most d	ifficult
5. Tennis is less	popular foo	otball. (A)	Sayeda Zainab - Cairo 2022)
a. this	b. than	c. then	d. that

(El Khalifa & El Mokattam - Cairo 2022)

6. Which is	, Cairo or Londo	n ?	(Belbis - Sharkia 2023)
a. hot	b. hotter	c. hottest	d. hotter than
El-Moasser Exe	rcises		
7. I have the	family in the w	orld.	
a. better	b. best	c. good	d. well
8. Which city do	you think is	in the world?	
a. exciting		b. more exciti	ng
c. most excit	ing	d. the most ex	xciting
9. This is	animal I've ever se	en.	
a. dangerous	3	b. as dangero	ous
c. more dang	gerous	d. the most da	angerous
10. No one is tal	ler than Ali. Ali is th	ie boy in th	e class.
a. taller	b. tallest	c. tall	d. tall as
2. Complete the	sentences with	the correct form	of the word(s)
in brackets:			
▶ SB & WB Exerc	ises		
1. WB Insects ar	e the (more) dangerous anim	als in the world.
2. 33 Tennis is	(least) dang	erous than footba	II.
3. WB What is th	ne (better) p	lace to play tennis	near here ?
4. 3 The Tahya	Masr Bridge is the	world's (wi	de) suspension bridge.
▶ El-Moasser Exc	waters		
	(fast) than a tr		
	(short) girl in t		
	(heavier) one		
8. No one is old	der than her. She is	(old) one.	
9. The blue car	is (most) ex	pensive car here.	
10. The Red Pyra	amid is the(further) monume	nt in my city.

General **Exercises**

on LESSONS 3 & 4

	Understand	O Apply O Creat	e intolid	toif in
1	Listen and c	hoose the correct ar	swer from a , b	, c or d :
1		لاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].	ة الصحيحة (نصوص اا	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجاب
	1. The Tahya M	Masr Bridge is the wor	ld's suspe	nsion bridge.
	a. highest	b. longest	c. widest	d. biggest
	2. It opened in	n 2019.		
	a. May	b. January	c. March	d. April
	3. It's 67.36 m	etres		
	a. high	b. tall	c. wide	d. long
	4. The bridge	crosses the Nile's War	raq	
	a. City	b. Oasis	c. Island	d. Lake
2	Complete th	e following dialogu	ie:	
	Rana and Han	a are talking about sch	ool subjects.	
	Rana: Good	morning, Hana. What	subjects do we l	have today ?
	Hana: Good	morning, Rana (1)		
	Rana : (2)	?		
	Hana: My fav	ourite subject is scier	nce. What about	you?
	Rana: (3)			
1	Hana: (4)	?		
	Rana: I think	maths is the most dif	ficult subject.	
	Hana : In my	opinion, all subject ar	e easy when you	study them well.
	Rana: (5)		uld study hard al	l subjects.
3	Choose the	correct answer from	a, b, c or d:	32
0	1. Learning to	swim is a great	. I made this yea	r.
	a. view	Secretaria de la companya del companya de la companya del companya de la companya del la companya de la company	c. bridge	d. show
0	2. Many peop	le enjoy walking on th	ne glass of	Tahya Masr Bridge.
			and the second s	(Farshout - Qena 2022)
	a. flower	b. flour	c. floor	d. fire

¢	3. Are you proud	l be E	gyptian	?	
	a. of	b. at		c. to	d. with
	and die.		ne most		t. Many people may fall
	a. beautiful	b. safe	4	c. cheap	d. dangerous
Î	5. 🖭 It's importa		ite whe		
	a. make	b. take		c. give	d. ask
0	6. Ahmed is	intelligen	t than S	Samy.	(El Rahmaniya - Beheira 2022)
	a. as	b. most	*	c. more	d. least
0	7.1 with y	you, you're c	omplete	ely right.	
	a. describe	b. agree		c. cross	d. disagree
Ö	8. This is the	company	in the	world.	(Meet Ghamr - Dakahlia 2023)
	a. more big	b. biggest		c. bigger	d. big
0	9. We must		nment.	•	
	a. fail	b. lose		c. protect	d. damage
0	10. W What's you	ır of d	oing a	sport every v	week?
	a. dream	b. though	t	c. opinion	d. subject
4	Complete the se	entences with	n the co	rrect form of	f the word(s) in brackets:
0	1. Marwa is the	(beau	tiful) gi	rl of all.	
	2. He is (g	good) at Eng	lish tha	n me.	
	3. W What's the	:(mor	e) diffic	ult subject a	it school ?
	4. 53 How	(much) ped	ople hel	lped to build	I the bridge ?
5	Write a paragra	aph of abou	it EIGH	TY (80) wor	ds on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب
9				asr Bridge"	
			1		St
		***************************************	***************************************		

		***************************************			······································

-1		**********************	***********		<u> </u>

Lessons -

5 & 6

SB pages 19 & 20 WB pages 81 & 82



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

valuable (adj)	غالي / ذو قيمة	fountain (n)	نافورة
competition (n)		hieroglyphics (n)	اللغة الهيروغليفية
public (adj)	عام	treasure (n)	كنز
guidebook (n)	کتاب ارشادی	display (ed) (v), (n)	يعرض - معرض
collection (n)	مجموعة	entrance (n)	مدخل
column (n)	عمود	motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
design (ed) (v), (n)	يصمم/تصميم	century (n)	قرن [۱۰۰ عام]



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

competition - entrance - valuable - fountain - columns

- 1. The of my house are strong. They carry the roof.
- 2. Gold is an expensive material because it's
- 3. She won the school for the best project.
- 4. I searched for the to get in the museum.

Lesson 5 si

SB page 19 WB page 81

statue (n)	تمثال	city centre (n)	وسط المدينة
square (n)	مربع [الشكل]	objects (n)	أشياء
article (n)	مقال	move (d) (v)	ينقل / ينتقل
space (n)	مساحة / فراغ	plan (ned) (v), (n)	يخطط / خطة
welcome (d) (v)	يرحب	glass room (n)	غرفة زجاجية

Famous places and monuments

أماكن وآثار مشهورة

the Grand Egyptian M	useum (n)	The Valley of the Kings (n)	
ثبير	المتحف المصري الك		وادى الملوك
Karnak Temple (n)	معبد الكرنك	Rosetta Stone (n)	حجر رشيد



Habu Temple (n)	_ معبد حابو	Ramses II Statue	تمثال رمسيس الثاني
The Great Court (n)	الساحة الكبرى	the British Museum	المتحف البريطاني
Hypostyle Hall (n)	قاعة هيبوستيل	Al Azhar Park (n)	حديقة الأزهر

Lesson 6 SB page 20 WB page 82

website review (n)		writer (n)	کاتب
ترونی	مقال نقدى على موقع ألك	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
stone (adj), (n)	حجری - حجر	café (n)	مقهى
parks (n)	حدائق (عامة)	lake (n)	بحيرة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	المضارع	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث P.P.
write	يكتب	wrote	written
put	يضع	put	put
spend ,	يقضى	spent	spent
choose	يختار	chose	chosen

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

column	a tall structure that holds up part of a building	عمود
competition	an event, often followed by a prize, in which pe the best at something	eople try to be مسابقة / منافسة
entrance	the way into a building, such as a door or gate	مدخل
museum	a building to keep and display important objects	s from the past متحف
treasure	a quantity of valuable metals, jewels, etc.	کنز

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms	and Antor	nyms	ت	مترادفات ومتضادا
Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	Antonym /Opp	المضاد oosite
similar	متشابة	alike	different	مختلف
famous	مشهور	well-known	unknown	غير معروف
top	قمة	summit	bottom	قاع
far	بعيد	distant / remote	near / close	قریب 🔐
strong	قوى	powerful	weak	ضعیف

Prefixes & Suffixes	de uses Barrises H &	مية ١١	مقاطع بادئة وناه
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples	
-tion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	competition	مسابقة
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	collection	مجموعة
un-	تعطى عكس الكلمة	unknown	غير معروف

-		
	Exercise	on Vocabulary Study

	Exercise	on Vocabulo	ary Study	
C	hoose the correct	t answer from a	,b,cord:	
	1. The synonym of			
	a. famous	b. crazy	c. smart	d. happy
. :	2. The words "far" a	nd "" have	the same mear	ning.
	a. alike	b. bottom	c. remote	d. different
-	3. We can get the o prefix "".	pposite of the wo	ord "known" by	adding the
	a. dis-	b. un-	c. ir-	d. mis-
4	4. We can change t suffix "" .	he verb "compete	e" into a noun b	99
	ament	btion	cness	d. –ly
1	Genera similar to / the		Reading &	Listening
H.	* similar to - Salma is simila	ar to her mother.	ختلاف البسيط)	مشابه لـ [لكن يوجد بعض الا
	* the same (as)	+	بق]	نفسه / متشابه (لدرجة التطا
	They are twinsHoda is the sa	s. They are the sa ame as Nouran.		ng on Lesson 6 SB page 20)
2	reason			
14.	* reason (for) + [- What's the rea	inf. + ing] / nou son for coming l		سبب
	* reason why +	AND THE RESERVE THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF		سبب ل
	- Tell me the re	<mark>ason why</mark> you ha	ive come late.	(SB page 20)



Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions	
get busier زداد ازدحامًا	space for	مساحة لـ
ثناء اليوم /النهار	a collection of	مجموعة من
5,000 - square - metre room	allow to	يسمح لـ
عجرة مساحتها ۵۰۰۰م ^۲	part of	جزء من
الدرعلى be) able to	for longer	لفترة أطول
have a wonderful holiday قضى إجازة رائعة	at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
show opinion عرض رأى	in the twenty-first century	فى القرن الواحد والعشرين
on display معروض	for the first time	لأول مرة
الا's expected to ن المتوقع أن	refer to	يشير إلى
	special about	مميزفي



Reading and Listening



Pop Quiz قطع الفهم

on Lesson 5 SB page 19

The Grand Egyptian Museum

1. The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable(1) treasures(2) on display(3). However, the museum did not have space (4) for 100,000 other objects(5). In 2002, there was a competition (6) to design (7) a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries.



(1) ذو قيمة (2) كنوز (3) عرض (4) فراغ / مساحة (5) القطع الثرية (6) مسابقة (7) يحمم

- 2. The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed⁽⁸⁾ its first visitors⁽⁹⁾ in 2019. It is farther from the city centre⁽¹⁰⁾ than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects, more people can see them and it is able to look after⁽¹¹⁾ the objects really well.
- 3. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the **entrance**⁽¹²⁾, with its big **plants**⁽¹³⁾ and **statues**⁽¹⁴⁾. The biggest statue is that of Ramses II, which is 12-metres high.
- Moving these objects from the old museum in Tahrir to the Grand Egyptian Museum is not easy. It is expected to take many years of hard work.

1-21-7 (7.4)	-JSI-1 (12)	làna (12)	4 iin /11)	(10) وسط المدينة	initi (9)	LD1 (8)	3
ا (14) نماتيل	(13) ښانات	(12) מבבע	(۱۱) یعننی ب	(۱۵) وسط اهدیته	(ه) راترین	(ه) رحب	

on Lesson 6 SB page 20

- We had a wonderful holiday⁽¹⁾ in Egypt.
 These are my opinions about three of the most interesting places.
- The Valley of the Kings⁽²⁾ in Luxor is one of the most popular places⁽³⁾ for tourists⁽⁴⁾ to visit. We went early because that is the quietest time. My brother said, "This is fantastic⁽⁵⁾!" I am sure it gets busier⁽⁶⁾ later on during⁽⁷⁾ the day.
- The biggest place we went to was the Karnak Temple⁽⁸⁾. My favourite part was the Hypostyle Hall⁽⁹⁾, a 5,000-square- metre "room" with 134 stone columns⁽¹⁰⁾. I think it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings.
- In my opinion, the best and quietest place we visited was Habu Temple⁽¹¹⁾. It has columns similar to⁽¹²⁾ those at Karnak, but because it is less crowded, you can study them for longer.







(6) يزداد ازدحامًا	(5) رائع	(4) سیاح	(3) أماكن مشمورة	(2) وادى الملوك	(1) قضينا إجازة رائعة
(12) مشابه لـ	(11) معبد حابو	(10) أعمدة حجرية	(9) قاعة / بهو	(8) معبد الكرنك	(7) أثناء / خلال



on Lesson 5 WB page 81

The British Museum

- The **British Museum**⁽¹⁾ in London is the oldest **public**⁽²⁾ museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year.
- The museum has the biggest **collection**⁽³⁾ of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its most important objects is the **Rosetta Stone**⁽⁴⁾. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This **allowed**⁽⁵⁾ people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics⁽⁶⁾ for the first time.
- In my opinion, the most beautiful part of the museum is the Great Court⁽⁷⁾. Its big glass room makes it the largest covered square in Europe. It opened in 2000 so it is also the most modern part of the museum.

المتحف البريطاني	(1)
عام	(2)
مجموعة	(3)
حجر رشيد	(4)
50ш	(5)
اللغة الهيروغليفية	(6)
الساحة الكبيرة	(7)

Answer the following questions:

- Critical thinking skill.

مهارة التفكير النقدى.

Learn 1. Why do you think the Rosetta stone was very important?

- Because it allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics for the first time.

Practise 2. Why do you think the British Museum in London is a popular place?

on Lesson 6 WB page 82

Al Azhar Park⁽¹⁾ is the largest and most beautiful park in Cairo. It is much larger than the small park near my house. That park has a few trees and plants and I enjoy going there after school. You can spend an hour or two in that park, but you can spend a lot of time at Al Azhar Park. The trees there are taller and it has



more plants. It also has **fountains**⁽²⁾, a lake and **cafés**⁽³⁾, too. I like going there because there is **space**⁽⁴⁾ for all our family to have a big **picnic**⁽⁵⁾ at the weekends! My sister always says, "I love it here".



Choose the con	icci answer non	14,6,000.		
Key vocabulary				
1. My father bought me a great		of short stories from the bookshop		
	b. collection		d. reviews	
2. Museums help us to our h		storical objects fo	r other people.	
a. play	b. apply		d. pay	
3. Al Azhar Park is	a/an place			
a. unknown	b. private	c. stone	d. public	
4. There are valual	ble in the E	gyptian Museum.		
a. centuries	b. plans	c. treasures	d. picnics	
SB , WB & Previou	us Exams			
5. 3 The old mus	eum didn't have	for 100,000	ancient objects.	
a. spice	b. space	c. time	d. treasure	
		5.0	(El Tor - South Sinai 2022)	
6. The Grand Eg	gyptian Museum	its first visito		
a. came	b. left	c. hit	d. welcomed	
			(Al Haram - Giza 2022)	
7. 3 Ramses II is	the biggest stone	in the mus	eum.	
a. entrance	b. space	c. article	d. statue	
6			(Alexandria - West 2023)	
El-Moasser Exerc	ises			
8. The is a l		on about a place to		
a. notebook	5	c. newspaper		
9. I read good		film on the intern		
a. viewers		c. reviews		
10. The kind woma clean water.	n made aii	n her garden to let	the birds drink	
a. gate	b. fence	c. fountain	d. entrance	

a. gate



Definitions

- 11. The is a building to keep and display important objects from the past.
 - a. park
- b. museum
- c. hospital
- d. garden
- 12. A/Anis the way into a building, such as a door or gate.
 - a. display
- b. column
- c. entrance
- d. century

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- 13. The teacher allowed us have our breakfast.
 - a. to
- b. from
- c. in
- d. at
- 14. Tell me the reasonyou were absent yesterday.
 - a. why
- b. where
- c. when
- d. how
- 15. What is the for your coming late?
 - a. season
- b. reason
- c. cause
- d. expression



ممارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about museums :

السؤال عن المتاحف والإجابة عليها :

Questions	Answers
• Why do we have museums ? لماذا لدينا متاحف؟	- We have museums to protect > historical objects. لدينا متاحف لكى نحمى القطع الأثرية التاريخية.
• Who is your favourite historical character ? من هي شخصيتك التاريخية المفضلة ؟	 My favourite historical character is Ramses II. شخصیتی التاریخیة المفضلة هو رمسیس الثانی.
• What do you think about the Karnak Temple ? ما رأيك في معبد الكرنك؟	- I think it is fantastic but more > crowded than the Valley of the Kings. أعتقد أنه رائع ولكنه أكثر إزدحامًا من وادى الملوك.

Pop

Pop Ouiz on Speaking

Complete the following dialogue :	
Farida meets an English tourist in Cairo.	
Farida: Welcome to Egypt. Where are you from?	
Tourist : (1)	•
Farida : (2)	?
Tourist: No. I visited Egypt before.	
Farida : (3)	
Tourist: I visited the Pyramids and the Grand Egyp	otian Museum.
Farida: Great. How long will you stay in Egypt?	
Tourist : (4)	
Farida: Let's visit Luxor.	
Tourist: (5)	(Qusiya - Assuit 2023)



مهارة الكتابة

A holiday in Egypt

إجازة في مصر

ا. I went to Egypt to spend my holiday.
 ا. فهبت إلى مصر لقضاء عطلتي.
 My family and I went to the Egyptian Museum.
 المتحف المصري.
 الا وعائلتي ذهبنا إلى المتحف المصري.
 We saw statues and treasures.
 الله went to Luxor and visited the Valley of the Kings.
 ذهبنا إلى الأقصر وقمنا بزيارة وادي الملوك.
 It was a great holiday.

The British Museum

المتحف البريطاني

- The British Museum is in London.
 ا. يوجد المتحف البريطاني في مدينة لندن.
 ا. يوجد المتحف عام في العالم.
 ا. هو أقدم متحف عام في العالم.
 ا. About six million visitors go there every year.
 ا. One of the most important objects is the Rosetta Stone.
 ع. حجر رشيد هو أحد أهم القطعة الفنية في المتحف.
- 5. In my opinion, the most beautiful part of the museum is the Great Court.
 ٥. أحد أجمل الأجزاء في المتحف من رأى هو الساحة الكبيرة.

General Exercises

museum. a. competition

b. race

c. composition

On

LESSONS 5 & 6

1	Understand	○ Apply ○ Create	1,184	
1	Listen and ch	oose the correct an	swer from a,b,c	ord:
1				استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا
	1. We had a/an	holiday in Lux		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
	a. modern	b. expensive		d. wonderful
	2. The Valley of	the is in Luxo	r.	
	a. Queens	b. Kings	c. Pupils	d. People
	3. It is one of th	ne most popular plac	es for to visi	
	a. tourists	b. farmers	c. engineers	d. architects
	4. We went the	re early because that	is the time.	
	a. busiest	b. quietest	c. cleanest	d. noisiest
2	Choose the co	orrect answer from	a, b, c or d:	
o		the one.		
	a. difficult	b. most difficul	c. more difficult	d. as difficult
•	2 was tl	ne language of the ar	ncient Egyptians.	
	a. Spanish	b. English		d. Hieroglyphics
	3. There are ma	ny objects in t	the museum.	371
	a. dirty		c. cheap	d. ugly
0	4. Tourists are g	given a to have	information and s	ome help about
	the places tl	ney visit.		(Beba - Beni-Suef 2023)
	a. passport	b. guidebook		d. newspaper
	5. You should w	vear a helmet when y	ou ride a	
	a. bus			d. car
	6. 33 My uncle	is the person	in my family. No o	ne is older than
	a. youngest	b. tallest		d. deepest
	7. 🔢 In 2002,	there was a to	design a bigger ar	nd more modern

d. park

=	• Unders	stand OApply	Create	
	8. The museum has	more than 13 mi	llion	
	a. people	b. objects	c. mountains	d. fountains
	9. This problem is e	asy. It's the	one I've ever so	lved.
	a. easiest	b. easier	c. more easy	d. easy
1	0. Kilmanjaro is	mountain in Af	rica.	(6 th October - Giza 2023)
	a. high	b. the highest	c. higher	d. higher than
3	Complete the sente	ences with the cor	rect form of the v	word(s) in brackets:
)	1. We went early be			
	2. Luxor is the			
	3. WB Trains are			
	4. 33 The Karnak T	emple is (r	nost) crowded th	an the Valley of the
	Kings.			10
1	Write a paragrap	n of about EIGH1	TY (80) words or	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب]
3	Write a paragrap			ا مجاب عند في زيارة الكتاب (Hihya - Sharkia 2023)
	"The	e Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	(Hihya - Sharkia 2023)
3	"The	e Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	
3	"The	e Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	(Hihya - Sharkia 2023)
1	"The	e Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	(Hihya - Sharkia 2023)
4	"The	e Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	(Hihya - Sharkia 2023)
	"The	e Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	(Hihya - Sharkia 2023)
4	"The	e Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	(Hihya - Sharkia 2023)
4.	"The	e Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	(Hihya - Sharkia 2023)
	"The	e Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	(Hihya - Sharkia 2023)
	"The	e Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	(Hihya - Sharkia 2023)
1	"The	e Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	(Hihya - Sharkia 2023)
	"The	e Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	(Hihya - Sharkia 2023)
	"The	e Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	(Hihya - Sharkia 2023)
1	"The	e Grand Egyptia	n Museum"	(Hihya - Sharkia 2023)



on unit 🖁

قيم مستواك المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
suspension bridge ತುತ್ತಾರಣ	suspension bridge sectives:	1. Talking about measurements:
tower	المقارنة بين اثنين في صفة معينة	الحديث عن القياسات :
tunnel tunnel		ex. How long is the Cairo -
desert road desert road	Company of the Hall	Alexandria Desert Road?
forest क्रोह	क् _{र E} . A dog is bigger than a cat.	كم يبلغ طول طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية
crowded	more / less + علية طويلة + than	الصحراوي :
تعداد السكان population		- It's 220 km long.
غروب الشمس	ž	2. Talking about comparatives:
ترحلق على الجليد ice skating	illstory.	ex. Which nyramid is taller the
oidt diga	2- Superlativ	Great Pyramid or the Red
إنجازات achievements	المقارنة بين اكثر من ائنين في صفة	Pyramid ?
فخور proud	the + o dip gam + est	- I think the Great Pyramid is
رأي nopinion		taller.
أرضية زجاجية glass floor	elepnant is the biggest land اأرضية زجاجية	3. Asking for & giving opinions:
متحف		السؤال عن وإعطاء الآراء :
مدخل entrance	صفة طويلة + the most / least مدخل	ex. What's your opinion about
Stit. treasure	ex. This T-shirt is the most expensive one	the film ?
تاریخی historical	in the shop.	- Do you agree that the
column	A I	match is boring?
تمثال statue		- I agree. / I don't agree.



Understanding reference

🧲 تختير أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة تحديد ما تشير إليه الكلمة في النص.

◄ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the questions:

(Ibrahimia - Sharkia 2023) island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. in Egypt so we should be proud of our great country. We have a lot of great projects and achievements Tahya Masr Bridge. It's the world's widest suspension Warrag Island. More than 100,000 people live on the One of the newest and greatest achievements is the is 67.36 m wide. It's 540 m long. It crosses the Nile's Work began in May 2016. It opened in May 2019. It bridge. More than 40000 people helped to build it. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city. It's really a great project.

- b. Tahya Masr Bridge The underlined pronoun "It" refers to d. glass floor a. October Bridge c. Egypt
- التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد ما تشير إلبه الكلمة التي تحتها خط في الفقرة.

8

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة نجد أن هناك دلالات للضمائر / الكلمات الموجودة في الفقرة.



Giving opinions



أقرأ وقم بالإجابة

Complete the following dialogue:

Farah is asking Jana about the Great Pyramid in Giza. Farah : Did you visit the Great Pyramid?

Jana :(1).....

Farah : (2)

Jana : It is in Giza.

Farah : (3)

Jana: It is 139 m high.

Farah: When did you visit it?

Jana : (4)

Farah: What do you think of it?

Jana : (5)

(West Zagazig - Sharkia 2023)

أسئلة والرد عليها التحدي تريد السؤال عن [الأماكن الهامة المختلفة] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين



🧐 مفتاح الحل بجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.





التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي."	يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة مهارتك في التعبير عن موضوع ما. "للمزيد من التدريب كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي."	🥦 يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة مهارتك في التعبير
ية في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.	husr Bridge] التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن The Tahya Masr Bridge] و [Al-Azhar Park] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.	sr Bridge) التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن sr Bridge) التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن
جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.	🧐 مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية و كيفية استخدامها في تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.	🧐 مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف ه
Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraph
Write the meaning:	Fill in using vocabulary:	Write a paragraph on :
keung - kਤਰ੍ਹਾ	1. It's the suspension	"The Tahya Masr Bridge"
غروب الشمس	2. The bridge the Nile	
li.a	ď.	***************************************
أرضية	3. It has a glass	
g.,	4. You can see the under	
ionad	5. The view is beautiful at the	
<u>ښا</u> ت	1. You can a lot of time in	Write an email about :
مساحة	Al Azilal Fark. 2. There are tall trees and	Al-Azilai rain
نافورات	3. You can see some full of	*
بقض	water. 4 There is for all our	***************************************
نزهات خلوية	family.	
कं.	5. We have a there every	
	weekend.	

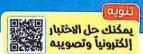
The Tahya Masr Bridge

Ale Park Park

Questions collected from previous exams

lest

on unit 🖁



Understand
 Apply
 Create

A. Listening

لملحق	رفی	راكم	اختبارت	بحل	غم
				- 22	

1	Listen and choo	se the correct an	swer from a , b , c o	rd:	
1		ستماع في نهاية الكتاب].	إجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الا	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ	
1. Where is the British Museum ? - In					
	a. London	b. Cairo	c. Bristol	d. Paris	
	2. When did the				
1	a. 1777	b. 1999	c. 1759	d. 1888	
	3. How many ob	jects does it have	?		
	a. 13 billion	b. 13 million	c. 13 hundred	d. 13 thousand	
1	4. How many vis	itors go there ever	ry year ?	afr Sagr - Sharkia 2022)	
1	a. 600	b. 6,000	c. 60,000	d. 6,000,000	

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Fadi and Helmy are talking about the Tahya Masr Bridge. Fadi: Where did you go last week? Helmy: (1) Fadi: Where is Tahya Masr Bridge? Helmy: (2) Fadi : (3)? Helmy: No, it isn't old. It is new. Fadi : (4)? Helmy: It opened in 2019.

Fadi: What is its floor made of?

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

We have a lot of great projects and achievements in Egypt, so we should be proud of our great country. One of the newest and greatest achievements is the Tahya Masr Bridge. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. More than 40,000 people helped to build it.

Work began in May 2016. It opened in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide. It's 540 m long. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city. It's really a great project.

a. Choose the corre		ma,b,cord: ers to	i ang i
a. the bridge	The second secon	c. Egypt	d. Helwan
2. The bridge has	s a	floor.	rely of
a. plastic	b. stone	c. brick	d. glass
3. More than 100	,000 people liv	e on the Nile's	Island.
a. Wardan	b. Warraq	c. Dahab	d. Helwan
b. Answer the follo	wing question	ns:	
4. Give a suitable	title for this pa	assage.	
5. What is the be	st time to cross	the bridge ?	
6. Why do you th	nink we should	be proud of Egyp	ot ?
			(Kafr Sakr - Sharkia 202

D. Vocabulary & Structure

Choose the col	rrect answer fro	ma, b, coru:	
1. The Tahya Masr	goes	over the Nile in Cair	O. (El Omraniya - Giza 2022)
a. Pyramid	b. Tunnel	c. Tower	d. Bridge
2. What is the	for comi	ng late ?	(El Omraniya - Giza 2023)
a. season	b. person	c. reason	d. cause
3. It's a/an	ِ/مشهد scene	to have all this منظر	rubbish in the street.
a. cheerful	b. exciting	c. wonderful	d. ugly
4. I think science	is math	is.	(Hihya - Sharkia 2022)
2 ASCV	h easier	c easiest	d. easier than

6. I think Siwa is	quieter	c. quietest	Awlad Sakr - Sharkia 2023)
6. I think Siwa is	place ir	c. quietest	
a. nice b. 7. "			d. more quieter
7. "" mean a. Quite b. 8. You can put all thes a. wood b. 9. The museum has a a. numbers b. 0. The bridge was bui a. shows b. Complete the senter 1. Who is	nicor	n Egypt.	
a. Quite b. B. You can put all thes a. wood b. D. The museum has a a. numbers b. D. The bridge was bui a. shows b. Complete the senter 1. Who is	nicei	c. nicest	d. the nicest
a. Quite b. 3. You can put all thes a. wood b. 5. The museum has a a. numbers b. 6. The bridge was bui a. shows b. 6. Complete the senter 7. Who is	without mak	ing much noise; r	not noisy.
a. wood b. 7. The museum has a a. numbers b. 7. The bridge was bui a. shows b. Complete the senter 1. Who is	Quiet	c. Tired	d. Crowded
a. wood b. 7. The museum has a a. numbers b. 7. The bridge was bui a. shows b. 7. Complete the senter 7. Who is	e books on the	e desk. There's en	ough
a. numbers b. D. The bridge was bui a. shows b. Complete the senter 1. Who is	money	c. space	d. time
O. The bridge was bui a. shows b. Complete the senter 1. Who is	ot of valuable		
a. shows b. Complete the senter 1. Who is	competitions	c. pyramids	d. treasures
a. shows b. Complete the senter 1. Who is	t on stone	to stav s	trong.
1. Who is		c. columns	d. lines
1. Who is	ces with the co	orrect form of the	word(s) in brackets .
2. Mount Everest is 3. The Nile is 4. We Which building Write an email of all To your friend Marian Luxor. Your name is S Your friend's email and From: To: Subject:			word(3) in brackets.
3. The Nile is 4. We Which building Write an email of all To your friend Marian Luxor. Your name is S Your friend's email and From: To: Subject:	•		
Write an email of all To your friend Marian Luxor. Your name is S Your friend's email and From : To : Subject :			njaro.
Write an email of all To your friend Marian Luxor. Your name is S Your friend's email and From: To: Subject:			
To your friend Marian Luxor. Your name is S Your friend's email and From: To: Subject:	j is the	(older) ?	
To your friend Marian Luxor. Your name is S Your friend's email an From: To: Subject:	E. Wri	tina	
To your friend Marian Luxor. Your name is S Your friend's email and From: To: Subject:			محاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب
From: Subject:			4 and the second
From: To: Subject:	n to tell her ab	oout a wonderful	holiday you had in
From :	ara and your e	email address is sa	araeng@gmail.com.
To : Subject :	ldress is maria	imsea@gmail.con	1.
To : Subject :			
Subject :			1134.14
	***************************************	••	3.
		·····	

Stop here!

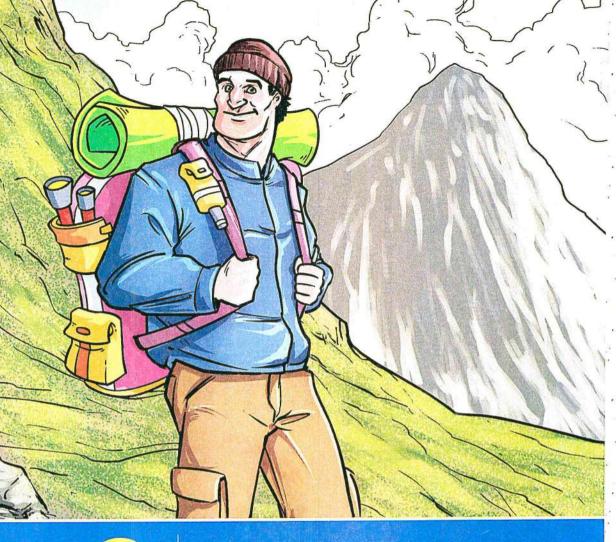
Mini-Test on unit 8 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1	Supply	the missing parts in the following dialogue:
	Marwa	and Jana are talking about Tahya Masr Bridge.
		: Hi Jana.
	Jana	: Hi Marwa. Why did you go to Tahya Masr Bridge ?
	Marwa	: I went to enjoy the view across the bridge.
	Jana	; Oh really. (1)?
	Marwa	: It took 32 months to finish.
	Jana	: Do you know that it's the world's widest suspension bridge?
	Marwa	: (2)
	Jana	: What is the best time to cross the bridge?
	Marwa	: (3)
	Jana	: At sunset! That's fantastic.
2	Reorde	r the words to make correct sentences :
- P	1. live -	world - We - in - an amazing.
	2. holid	ay - to spend - to - went - I - Hurghada - my.
	3. beau	tiful - park - in Cairo - the most - is - Al Azhar Park.
	4. Luxoi	r - went - <u>We</u> - to - the Valley - the kings - of - in.
3	Write a	paragraph of FIVE sentences on :
		"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

d. more

9. The whale is ______ (larger) sea animal in this Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the (famous) musician in the (most) time than the 6. Hossam is the (faster) player in our b. Lake Victoria d. River Nile Omar : Good! I think you are very clever. b. more famous d. I'm sad d. famous than b. Sorry b. faster than b. the largest d. larger than d. fast as c. least brackets from a , b , c or d : c. River Thames a. Lake Nasser : (5) a. Thank you b. little 8. The train takes c. I'm busy c. most famous 7. Who is the a. as famous aquarium. c. large as a. fastest a. largest c. as fast band? team. plane. a. few F Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : About 37,500,000 people live in Tokyo. Omar: What is the longest river in the world? : The Great Pyramid is 146 metres high. Omar and Ali are talking about famous places d. What colour is the Great Pyramid? b. How heavy is the Great Pyramid? a. How deep is the Great Pyramid? a. How many people live in Tokyo? C. How high is the Great Pyramid? a. Yes, you do. b. Yes, you can. to complete the following dialogue: d. Yes, you did. Omar : Can I ask you some questions? b. How many cars are there? c. How did you go there? d. Who did you go with? Omar :(3) Omar : (2) c. Yes, you are. around the world. Ali



Unit 9

Adventure!

SB pages 22:31 WB pages 84:90

Objectives:

· Reading:

Holiday plans, a postcard; Around the World in 80 Days

Writing:

A paragraph about an adventure sport an email planning a trip

Listening:

Discussing adventure sports; a game; a presentation about a trip to the desert; a conversation about choosing activities

Speaking:

Discussing activities and travel plans describing the weather

Language

going to for plans; reflexive pronouns

Life Skills

Negotiating: respect the opinions of others

Lessons -

1 & 2

SB pages 22 : 25 WB pages 84 & 85



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

water sport (n)	رياضة مائية	sailing (n)	الإبحار
mountain sport (n)	رياضة جبلية	kayaking (n)	رياضة التجديف بالزورق
adventure (n)	مغامرة	rock climbing (n)	رياضة تسلق الصخور
guide (n)	مرشد	zip lining (n)	رياضة الانزلاق بالحبال
experience (n)	تجربة حياتية - خبرة	windsurfing (n)	رياضة ركوب الأمواج
diving (n)	الغطس	tent (n)	خيمة
mountain biking (n) ملى الجبال	رياضة ركوب الدراجات ـ	trekking (n) مسافات طویلة]	الارتحال / التجوال (رياضة السير على الأقدام لـ

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

climbing - tent - water - trekking - diving

- 1. Windsurfing is my favouritesport.
- 2. Rock is the most dangerous sport.
- 3. Going in the desert is my favourite hobby.
- 4. I'm good at swimming under water with equipment, so I like

Famous places

أماكن مشهورة

Mount Catherine	جبل سانت کاترین	Serabit el Khadem	منطقة سرابيط الخادم
Sinai	سيناء	Ein Kidd	منطقة عين كيد
Dahab	مدينة دهب	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
Ras Shetan	منطقة رأس شيطان		

Lesson 1 SB pages 22 & 23 WB page 84

How high ?	کم ارتفاع؟	scary (adj)	مخيف - مرعب
article (n)	مقال	travel (led) (v)	يسافر
wind (n)	ریاح	a bit (adj)	قليلًا



Lesson 2 SB pages 24 & 25 WB page 85

nearly (adv)	تقريبًا / حوالي	equipment (n)	معدات
Bedouin (n), (adj)	بدو/بدوی	trip (n)	رحلة قصيرة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	المضارع	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث P.P.
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
sina	رف: ،	sang	sung

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

diving	a sport where a swimmer goes deep under fish, sea animals, etc.	رياضة الغطس
kayaking	a sport or hobby where one or two people a narrow boat	رياضة التجديف بالزورق
mountain biking		رياضة ركوب الدراجات على
rock climbing	a sport where someone climbs up rocks	رياضة تسلق الصخور
sailing	a sport where someone sails a boat or a ye	رياضة الإبحار acht
tent	something you sleep in when you go cam	خيمة ping
guide	a person who shows a place to tourists	مرشد
trekking	a sport where someone walks, usually for the mountains or the countryside (with d ف طويلة سيرًا على الأقدام (ذات ظروف صعبة)	ifficulty)
windsurfing	a sport where someone travels on water v a board with a sail	while standing on ركوب الأمواج [التزحلق عل
journey	a long trip from one place to another	رحلة طويلة
adventure	an exciting experience when something to dangerous happens	unusual or مغامرة
zip lining	a sport where someone slides along a me two high points	tal wire between رياضة الإنزلاق بالحبال
wind	is the movement of air	رياح

How to write the date

We write	. We say	
1 st March	the first of March	
30 th March	the thirtieth of March	



Ordinal Numbers

1 st	first	12 th twelfth	23 rd twenty-third
2 nd	second	13 th thirteenth	24 th twenty-fourth
3 rd	third	14 th fourteenth	25 th twenty-fifth
4 th	fourth	15 th fifteenth	26 th twenty-sixth
5 th	fifth	16 th sixteenth	27 th twenty-seventh
б th	sixth	17 th seventeenth	28 th twenty-eighth
7 th	seventh	18 th eighteenth	29 th twenty-ninth
8 th	eighth	19 th nineteenth	30 th thirtieth
9 th	ninth	20 th twentieth	31st thirty-first
10 th	tenth	21st twenty-first	
11 th	eleventh	22 nd twenty-second	

	_		-							
	_	-	ш	$\overline{}$	$\overline{}$				-	
	ш	0	ш			_	т	o		
100		•		_	_	•	ч.			

متلازمات لفظية

	diving	يذهب للغوص	kayaking	يذهب للتجديف بالزورق
	windsurfing	يذهب لركوب الأمواج	mountain biking	*** Marie & ***********************************
go	sailing	يذهب للإبحار	الجبال	يذهب لركوب الدراجات على
	خور rock climbing	يذهب للتسلق على الص	zip lining	يذهب للإنزلاق بالحبال
	camping	يخيم (يعسكر)	trekking	يذهب لرحلة طويلة
	mountain climbir	يذهب لتسلق الجبال 1g	down the river	يذهب باتجاه تيار النهر
	to the mountain	يذهب للجبل	on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب
	to the beach	يذهب للشاطئ	on a holiday	يذهب في إجازة

Vocabulary Study

Synonyn	ns and Antor	nyms	ادات	مترادفات ومتض
Wor	الكلمة d	المرادف Synonym	Antonym /Oppo	المضاد site
careful	حريص/يقظ	cautious	careless	مهمل
windy	عاصف	stormy	calm	هادئ / ساکن
scary	مخيف	frightening	relaxing - calming	مهدیء - مریح

Prefixes & Suffixes		ناهية	مقاطع بادئة و
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples	أمثلة
-ing	تحول الفعل لاسم	sailing	الإبحار
-у	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	windy	عاصف
-ment	تحول الفعل لاسم	equipment	معدات

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

EXCICIO	on vocabl	utary Study	
Choose the cor	rect answer from	na, b, c or d:	
1. "Careful" and	"" have the	same meaning.	
a. careless	b. sleep	c. cautious	d. nice
2. The antonym	of the word "relax	king" is "" .	
a. quiet	b. scary	c. stormy	d. careful
3. We can chang the suffix "		" into an adjective l	oy adding
aion	bsion	cly	dy
4. We get the no	oun from the word	l "equip" by adding	the suffix ""
ation	bment	cing	dsion
* on + date • - He is goi * on + days o	f the week	tan on 14 th March.	فى + (تاريخ) فى + (يوم من أيام الأسبوع)
▶ - We don't	go to school on F	riday.	(WB page 85)
2 Compound	nouns		الأسماء المركبة
		ن كلمتين أو أكثر مثل :	هی عبارة عن اسم مکون م
* water sport	رياضة مائية :	* school librai	مكتبة مدرسية y
* team sport	رياضة جماعية	* football mat	مباراة كرة قدم ch:
* mountain s	رياضة جبلية <mark>port</mark>	ية shoe shop *	(SB Page 22) محل أحذ
3 scary - scare	d		
* scary = frig	htening		مُخيف - مرعب
▶ - Mountair	n biking looks sca i	ry.	
* scared = afr	aid = frightened		خائف - مرعوب
- Basem w	as scared when he	e saw the snake.	(SB Page 23)



4

لاحظ الأفعال الآتية واستخدامها مع الرياضات والأنشطة المختلفة.

play football basketball tennis volleyball squash

do karate boxing judo swimming windsurfing diving trekking

(SB Page 23)

المصدر + to / المصدر + مفعول به + <mark>to / 5</mark>

يساعد

- I'm going to have a guide to help me find / to find the way.

(SB Page 24)

- 6 arrive in / arrive at
 - arrive in + يصل إلى مكان كبير
 - arrive at + يصل إلى مكان صغير
- She arrived in Cairo at 7 p.m.
- He arrived at school late.

(Reading on Lesson 2 SB page 24)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جرهامة

Expressions		Prepos	sitions
look scary فيفًا	يبدو م	arrive on	يصل في [تاريخ]
اook fun اقتم	یبدو مد	leave on	یغادر فی [تاریخ]
come home لمنزل	يعود لل	stay with	یقیم مع
لوطنه travel home	يسافرا	travel from	يسافر من مكان
I'd love to	أود أن	across Sinai	عبر سيناء
نى أجد الطريق help me find the way	يساعد	across the desert	عبر الصحراء
see you then ن ذلك الوقت	أراك فر	sleep by a pool	ينام بجانب حمام سباحة
د وقت کاف there is no time	لايوجد	sleep in a tent	ينام في خيم <mark>ة</mark>
رياضة تسلق الصخور try rock climbing	يجرب,	plan for the future	يخطط للمستقبل



Reading and Listening

Listening

Imad

on Lesson 1SB page 23

: What are you looking at, Hassan? 1 Imad

Hassan: Hi Imad. It's an article(1) about adventure sports(2) in Egypt.

: Oh yes! Last year, I went diving(3) in the

Red Sea. It was amazing (4)!

Hassan: I'd love to do that. I'd like to try windsurfing(5), too.

Imad : What about rock climbing (6) ?

Hassan: I don't know. I think rock climbing is

a bit dangerous(7), but I like trekking

in the mountains. : Me, too! I like the mountains. I'm

going to visit Sinai with my family in the holidays.

Hassan: Are you going to try mountain biking(8), Imad?

: No, I'm not going to do anything scary(9). It is very difficult to ride a bike in the mountains.

Hassan: I think you're right. Zip lining(10) looks scary, too.

: I think it looks fun! I'm going to try it one Imad day!

Hassan: Really? No way(11)!

قطع الفهم

Pop Quiz











(7) خطير قليلًا	(6) تُسلق الصخور	(5) رياضة ركوب الأمواج	(4) مدمش	(3) الغطس	(2) رياضات المغامرة	(1) مقال
	(11) مستحیل	(10) الانزلاق بالحبال	(9) مخيف	نبال	ركوب الدراجات على الج	(8) رياضة



on Lesson 1SB page 23

Mustafa: I'm going to go to the mountains.

Hazem: OK. Are you going to go trekking?

Mustafa: No, I'm not.

Hazem: Are you going to go rock climbing?

Mustafa: Yes, I am!

Hazem : Your bag is ... D.

Mustafa: That's right.

Hazem: My turn. I'm going to the beach.

Mustafa: Are you going to go kayaking?

Hazem : No, I'm not.

Mustafa: Are you going to go diving?

Hazem: Yes, I am.

Mustafa: Your bag is ... B.





on Lesson 2 SB page 25

Mariam: Next year, I'm going to go sailing down the Nile with my family. We're going to travel from Aswan to Luxor. We're going to leave Aswan on 28th December. We're going to arrive in Luxor on 4th January.



on Lesson 2 WB page 85

Listen and write the dates:

Girl: This summer, I'm going on holiday with my family. On 25th July, we're going to drive to the Red Sea. On 30th July, we're going to go on a boat trip. On 3rd August, my cousins are going to visit us. On 6th August, we're going to have a picnic. We're coming home on the tenth. See you then!



on Lesson 1SB page 23

Hi Eman!

I'm in Dahab with my family. There's so much to do here! This afternoon, we're going to **go trekking**⁽¹⁾ in the **mountains**⁽²⁾. I'm not going to try rock climbing. It's too scary!

Tomorrow, we're going to try **windsurfing**⁽³⁾ in the morning and in the afternoon, we're going to go diving! (2) We're not going to **go kayaking**⁽⁴⁾. There is no time!

Love, Reem

(1) يدْمَب في رحلة صعبة غالبًا سيرًا على الأقدام | (2) جبال | (3) رياضة ركوب الأمواج | (4) يمارس رياضة التجديف بالزورق

on Lesson 2 SB page 24

My Trekking Adventure

By Ahmed

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across Sinai⁽¹⁾. It's going to be a big adventure⁽²⁾! I'm going to travel nearly⁽³⁾ 500 kilometres through mountains⁽⁴⁾ from Ras Shetan to Serabit el Khadem. I'm going to sleep in a tent⁽⁵⁾ and stay with Bedouin families⁽⁶⁾. I'm going to have a guide⁽⁷⁾ to help me find the way

and a camel to carry food and water. The journey is going to take me 43 days.

Here's my plan:

3rd March leave Ras Shetan

14th March arrive at Ein Kidd 30th March

arrive at St Catherine

1st April climb Mount Catherine 15th April arrive at Serabit el Khadem



(1) عبر سيناء

(2) مغامرة

(3) تقریبًا

(4) خلال الجبال

(5) خيمة (6) عائلات بدوية

(7) مرشد (7) مرشد



• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary	gr G		
1 is one of t	he most dangero	us mountain sport	S.
a. Diving	b. Kayaking	c. Rock climbing	d. Sailing
2. When we go can	nping, we sleep ir	n a	
a. castle	b. hotel	c. tent	d. hut
Many tourists lik to the Red Sea.		a board when the	y go on a journey
 a. windsurfing 	b. diving	c. driving	d. trekking
SB, WB & Previou	s Exams		
4. I think is a	water sport.		
a. kayaking	b. zip lining	c. trekking	d. rock climbing (North Giza 2023)
5. I'm going to go t	rekking across Si	nai. It's going to be	
a. party	b. adventure	c. novel	d. term
			(Samalot - Minia 2023)
6. 🗺 In Dahab, we	e're going to go	in the mount	ains.
a. diving		c. windsurfing	
	(Multidisciplinary - Bi	lbeis - Sharkia 2021 / Ro	od El Farag - Cairo 2022)
7. W I love			
a. zip lining		c. kayaking	
		(Ab	o Hamad - Sharkia 2022)
▶ El-Moasser Exerci :	ses		
8. Ahmed went on	a to Aswa	n.	
a. tribe	b. trip	c. wind	d. tent
9 are peopl	e who live in the	desert.	
 a. Bedouins 	b. Sailors	c. Farmers	d. Villagers
10. I don't like	. films because th	ey make me feel fr	ightened.
a. comedy		c. drama	d. happy
Definitions			7 - 1
11. The movement of	of air is called		
a. journey	b. hill	c. wind	d. mountain
12. A/An is a	person who show	s a place to tourist	
a. guide		c. interviewer	d. pilot

Language Note	s, Expressions & f August, we're goi		rahada
a. Of	b. On	c. In	d. At
14. Imad d	1500112500.50	20.015	
a. made	b. went	c. gave	d. took
	like to mou		nas never practised it
a. make	b. try	c. achieve	d. take
2. Speaking			مهارة التحدث
Discussing activi	ties and travel p	olans :	مناقشة الأنشطة وخطط السفر
Questi	ons 😢	Ans	wers
1. What are you g weekend ? هاية الأسبوع؟	oing to do this ن. ماذا ستفعل في عطلة ن	- I am going to	visit Sinai. - سأزور سيناء.
2. Are you going to	? try rock climbing د ۲. هل ستجرب ریاضة تس	- Yes, I am. - No, I am not.	
year ?	going to go next	- I'm going to g	o sailing on the - سوف أذهب إلى الإبحار في
	٣. أين سوف تذهب العام	الليل.	- سوف ادهب إلى الإبخار في
4. Who are you go on the Nile wit	oing to go sailing h ? ع. مع من سوف تذهب إل	- With my family	y . - مع عائلتى.
	ing to leave Aswan?	- On 28 th Decen	nher.
	۵. متی سوف تغادر أسوار	LINE OF THE PARTY	- في الثامن والعشرين من ن
3. Writing			مهارة الكتابة
Your plan for a	summer holiday	• Signation at	خطتك للأجازة الصيفية :
1. I am going to go	trekking across Sin	ام عبر سيناء. ai.	ا. سأقوم برحلة سيرًا على الأقد
2. It's going to be a	big adventure.	•	۲. ستکون مغامرة کبیرة.
3. I am going to try	zip lining.	بالحبال.	٣. سوف أجرب رياضة الانزلاق
4. It looks fun.			٤. إنها تبدو ممتعة / شيقة.
5. I am going to ha	ve a guide to help		۵. سیکون لدی مرشد لیساعد
		ني آن اجيد التشريق.	ه، سيحول حي سرست عيد

Speaking & Writing Corner

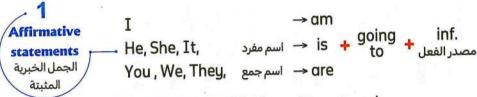
اللحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues قم يجل تدريبات هذه الصفحة باستمراز 80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & Emails

	Step 1 Vocabulary	Step 2 Speaking	Step 3 Writing
	احتبر انقائك للمقردات استويد	اختبر مدى اتفانك لمهارة التحدث	اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهاره الكتابة
Water sports	Read and complete: 1. A. What is the article about? 8. It's about	A. What is the article about ? B. It's about عَنِامَ الأَمْاتِ الأَمْاتِ الْأَمْاتِ الْأَمْاتِ الْأَمْاتِ الْأَمْاتِ الْأَمْاتِ اللَّهُ وَالْعَ عَنَامِ الْمُاتِ الْأَمْاتِ اللَّهِ الْأَمْاتِ اللَّهِ اللَّهُ اللَّهِ اللَّهُ الللَّهُ اللَّهُ الللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ الللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَ	Write a paragraph on : "Water sports"
		Rana : (5)	
Plans for next holiday	1. A. What is your plan for the		Write an email about: "Your plans for next holiday"

III Language

Future with "going to": going to المستقبل باستخدام

التكوين Formation



ex. - I'm going to visit Alexandria next week.

ex. - They are not going to visit Alexandria.

- He is not going to eat fish.

A) Yes / No question:

أ) السؤال بـ «هل» :



الاستخدام Usage

. 7 51	VI_ II &	. a	-:-		4
اصيبه .	في الحالات	الصيعه	محره	ستحدم	4

- 1. عند التخطيط المسبق أو النية لعمل شئ ما: ex. He is going to spend a week in Alexandria.
 - I'm going to visit Ali tomorrow.

- للدظ أن التخطيط المسبق أو النية تأتى مع كلمات مثل:

intend ينوى / plan يخطط / made a decision اتخذ قرار / decided / have decided وير ex. - We're going to fly to London next week. We've decided that.

التنبؤ بالمستقبل مع وجود دليل على ذلك :
 السماء ستمطر (السحب سوداء)

Actions which are about to happen.
 وشك الوقوع. - Watch out! Your car is going to crash.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB , WB & Previous Exams

a. goes

1. WB How you going to travel to Aswan next week? a. was b. were c. are d. have (Qalyoub - Qalyoubia 2023) 2. Is Ahmed spend the summer holiday in Alexandria? a. go b. going c. going to d. goes (Armant - Luxor 2022) 3. We visit Sinai. I've decided. a. go to b. going to c. are going to d. went to (Menouf - Menofia 2023 / Kafr El Dawwar - Beheira 2022) 4. W Who cook your meal this evening? a. going to b. is going to c. will go d. would go 5. 3 Is Reem going to trekking this afternoon? a. going b. goes c. went d. go 6. St. Tomorrow, we're to try windsurfing in the morning.

c. went

b. going

d. go (Rasheed - Beheira 2022)

7. Be c	areful!You're go	oing		
a. to	o fall	b. fall	c. to falling	d. falls
8	you going to	study English toda	ay?	
a. D	0	b. Are	c. Will	d. Has
▶ El-Moa	sser Exercises			
9. The	re are dark cloud	s in the sky. It		19 10 1
	ill rain	b. rains	c. is going to rain	
10. Sam			kt week. She made h	ner decision.
a. g	oing to	b. will	c. is going to	d. won't
2. Com	plete the senter	nces with the co	rrect form of the	word(s)
in bra	ackets:			
SB & W	B Exercises			
1.003	What are you	(go) to do nex	t Saturday ?	
2. 😼 🗎	Ne're going to tr	y windsurfing	(yesterday) .	
3. 📧 H	e is going to	(sleeping) in a	tent.	
4. 🖼 l	le(be) go	ing to stay up late		
5. 🗺 l	s she going	(trying) rock clir	mbing?	
▶ El-Moa	sser Exercises			
6. Tam	ner is going to	(bought) a ne	w car.	
7. I'm	going (vis	it) Sinai.	*	
8.1	(are) going t	o travel this week	4	
9	(Is) you going	to visit your gran	dmother?	
10.1	(going) to re	vise my lessons to	day. It's planned.	
		kis essueb /		



General Exercises

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

Understand

O Apply

Create

Listen and choose the correct answer from	a,	, b,	c or d	:
---	----	------	--------	---

لاستماع في نهاية الكتاب	واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الا	ستمع إلى معلمك
		,
b. In Aswan	c. In Ras Mohamed	d. In Cairc
1?		
	b. Her friends	
	d. Her cousin	
ing to go trekki	ng ?	
	b. This morning	
	d. This night	
ng to try ?		
oing	b. Rock climbing	
	d. Zip lining	
	b. In Aswan ? ping to go trekki	b. Her friends d. Her cousin ping to go trekking? b. This morning d. This night ag to try?

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mostafa	and Ayman are talking about their plans.
Mostafa	: Where are you going to go next weekend?
Ayman	: (1)
Mostafa	: The desert! (2)?
Ayman	: To go trekking in the mountains.
Mostafa	: (3)?
Ayman	: No, I don't think it is a scary sport.
Mostafa	: What things will you take with you?
Ayman	: (4)
Mostafa	: (5)
Avman	· That's great I like diving to

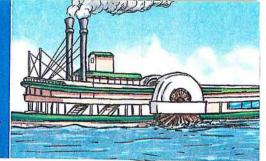
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. We're going to go in the Red Sea. c. windsurfing d. climbing b. trekking a. riding (Kom Hamada Beheira 2022) 2. We are going to go across Sinai. d. fishing c. swimming a. trekking b. tricking 3.you going to travel to Hurghada in August? d. Will c. Am b. Are a. Is 4.1abroad. It's my plan. b. 'll travel a. 'm going to travel d. would have travelled c. travelled 5. This afternoon, we to try rock climbing. It's too scary! d. are not going c. going a. won't b. will (Marsa Matrouh 2023) 6. is a kind of water sport. (West Cairo - Cairo 2022) b. Sailing a. Mountain climbing d. Trekking c. Zip lining 7. "Adventure" means a/an experience when something unusual or dangerous happens. d. funny c. exciting a. boring b. tiring 8. In, you start high, but you finish it on the ground. b. zip lining c. trekking d. diving a. kayaking 9. families live in the desert. b. Bedouin c. Village d. City a. Ancient d. tent a. boat b. journey c. lesson 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 1. What are you going (doing) next weekend? 2. When (was) they going to travel to Egypt? 3. Is she (go) to go kayaking?

4. He's going (sleeping) for 10 hours.

Lessons -

3 & 4

SB pages 26 : 28 WB pages 86 & 87



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

weather (n)	طقس	transport (n)	مواصلات
railway line (n)	خط سكة حديد	dark clouds (n)	سحب مليدة بالغيوم
challenge (n)		newspaper article (n)	
towel (n)	منشفة / فوطة		مقال صحفی (فی جریدة)



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

railway lines - clouds - transport - challenge - towel

- 1. Trains and the underground go on
- 2. He took the to finish the exam in ten minutes.
- 3. Buses, cars and trains are means of
- 4. There are dark in the sky. It's going to rain.

Lesson 3

SB pages 26 & 27 WB page 86

postcard (n)	کارت بریدی	protect (ed) (v)	
presentation (n)	عرض - تقديم		يحمى قمة / أعلى
fire (n)		frightened (adj)	خائف
eagle (n)		dry (ied) (v), (adj)	حالف بحفف - جاف
mirror (n)		trek (ked) (v) , (n)	پچھی-چی
sunglasses (n)	نظارة شمس		

Famous cities and countries

مدن ودول مشهورة

South Africa	دولة جنوب أفريقيا	the USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
Oman	دولة سلطنة عُمان		الولايات المتحدة المرابعية مدينة هونج كونج
San Francisco		South Am	erica a uz 1
	(الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية) ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	Kolkata	مدينة كلكتا (عاصمة الهند القديمة)



London	—ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	Mumbai	مدينة مومباي [الهند]
Japan	دولة اليابان	England	إنجلترا
India	دولة الهند	New York	مدينة نيويورك

Weather words

كلمات خاصة بالطقس

Noun اسم		A	صفة djective
rain	مطر	rainy	ممطر
sun	شمس	sunny	مشمس
cloud	سحابة	cloudy	ملبد بالسحاب
snow	حلىد	snowy	مكسو بالجليد - مثلج
	عاصفة	stormy	عاصف
storm	ریاح	windy	عاصف (شدید الریاح)
wind fog	ر پ ی ضباب	foggy	<u>ضبابی</u>

Forms of transport

وسائل النقل

cars	السيارات	planes	الطائرات
ships		trains	القطارات

Lesson 4

SB page 28 WB page 87

mistake (n)	خطأ	introduction (n)	مقدمة	
complete (d) (v)	یکمل / ینهی	character (n)	شخصية	
British (adj)	بريطاني [الجنسية]	- Comment of the Comm	رسم بیانی	
return (ed) (v)		support (ed) (v)	يدعم / يؤيد	

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

المضارع Present		الماضى Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P	
hurt	یجرح / یؤذی	hurt	hurt	
speak		spoke	spoken	
tell	يخبر	told	told	

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

	a salad	يجهز السلطة		a photo	يأخذ صورة - يصور
make	a cup of tea	یجهز کوب من الشای	take	a challenge	يخوض تحدى
	a mistake	يرتكب خطأ			



Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

	The state of the s	~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~	
cloud / cloudy	a cloud is a white object that floats in the sky. clouds in the sky, the weather is cloudy	When there are سحابة/ملبدبالسحب	
fog / foggy	fog is a very low cloud, when it becomes difficult to see very far. When there is fog, the weather is foggy ملبد بالغيوم		
rain / rainy	rain is water that falls from the sky. When it is weather is rainy	rains, the مطر/ممطر	
snow / snowy	snow is like cold, soft, white rain and falls from snows, the weather is snowy	the sky. When it جلید/جلیدی	
wind / windy	wind is the movement of air. When the wind blows, the weather is windy		
storm / stormy	a storm is very bad weather, with a lot of wind an When there is a storm, the weather is stormy	nd rain or snow	
sun / sunny	The sun is what gives us light. When the sun the weather is sunny		
protect	look after, keep safe.	يحمى	
railway line	the metal that a train travels on	پحتی خط سکة حدید	
challenge	a difficult task or problem.	تحدی	
	- Production	عدى	

Vocabulary Study

Synony	ms and Antor	nyms		مترادفات ومتضادات
Wo	الكلمة rd	المرادف Synonym	Antonym /O	المضاد pposite
dark	مظلم/غامق	black	light	مضئ / فاتح
wet	مبلل	humid	dry	جاف
return	يعود	come back	go / leave	پذهب/پغادر
top	قمة	peak	bottom	

Prefixes & Suffixe	S	عية	مقاطع بادئة وناه
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Example	
-tion	تحول الفعل لاسم	presentation	عرض/تقديم
-ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	frightened	خائف
-er	تحول الفعل لاسم	speaker	متحدث
-у	تحول الاسم لصفة	rain <mark>y</mark> stormy	ممطر عاصف

Exercise

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. "Come back" and "....." have the same meaning.
 - a. turn b. return c. rewrite d. replay
- 2. "Dark" is the antonym of the word ".....".

 d. night
- - a. antonyms b. synonyms c. opposites d. prefixes
- 4. "Storm" can be changed into an adjective by adding the suffix "....."

 a. -ment

 b. -ly

 c. -y

 d. -tion

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 by

لاحظ المعانى المختلفة لكلمة (by)

بواسطة

- * by + شخص -This room was painted by Ali.
- * by + من / بجوار
- He's sitting by the fire.
- * by + وقت
 - By 2025, we will have built a new house.
- عن طريق وسيلة مواصلات + by *
- We went to Cairo by bus. (SB Page 27)

2 a bit (a little) ≠ much

توضع كلمة (a bit / little) أمام الصفة لتشير أن الصفة موجودة بدرجة قليلة.

- I'm a bit frightened of dogs.
 - بينما توضع (much) أمام الصفة لتشير أن الصفة موجودة بدرجة كبيرة.
- I'm much frightened of dogs.

(Reading on Lesson 3 SB page 26)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Express	ions	Prepositi	ons
tell a story	يحكى قصة	protect from	يحمى من
get dressed	یرتدی ملابسه	fall over	يسقط
keep warm	يحتفظ بالدفء	put on a hat	يرتدى قبعة
do an activity	يمارس نشاط	come out of	يخرج من



This sounds easy هذا يبدو سهلًا	ride on a camel	يركب جمل
at the start of the trip في بداية الرحلة	on the way down	في طريق النزول
take the ship back يستقل سفينة عائدًا إلى	go around	يتجول



Reading and Listening



on Lesson 3 SB page 26

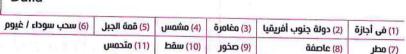
Dear Grandma, We're really enjoying ourselves on holiday⁽¹⁾ in South Africa⁽²⁾! It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do.

Yesterday was an adventure⁽³⁾. We went trekking in the mountains. It was sunny⁽⁴⁾ when we started, but when we got to the

top of the mountain⁽⁵⁾ we saw dark clouds⁽⁶⁾. On the way down, the rain⁽⁷⁾ started! Then there was a storm⁽⁸⁾. The rocks⁽⁹⁾ were wet and Tamer fell over⁽¹⁰⁾ and hurt himself. But it's OK – his leg is better today.

Tomorrow the weather is going to be better, so we're going to try zip lining! I'm a bit frightened, but I'm excited⁽¹¹⁾, too.
See you soon,

Dalia







Listening

- on Lesson 3 SB page 26
- A: It's very sunny and there aren't any clouds⁽¹⁾ in the sky. I think it's a very hot day.
- **B**: There are lots of clouds and they're very dark. I think that there's going to be a **storm**⁽²⁾.
- C: It's a sunny day, but there are some clouds in the sky above the mountain. I think it's quite hot.
- D: It's very foggy(3). I think it's raining. It looks cold and wet.

ا) سحب (2) عاصفة (3) مليء بالضباب



Last weekend, we went on a **trip**⁽²⁾ to the desert. I woke up early and **made myself breakfast**⁽³⁾. Then I **got dressed**⁽⁴⁾. I **put on** my clothes and **looked at myself in the mirror**⁽⁵⁾. I put on a hat and **sunglasses**⁽⁶⁾ to **protect**⁽⁷⁾ myself from the sun. At the desert, we met our guide and we rode with him on our camels. My sister took this photo of herself with her camel. That night, we cooked ourselves dinner on a fire. After dinner, when it **got cold**⁽⁸⁾, we sat by the fire to **keep**

Nader: My trip to the desert(1), by Nader.

(1) الصحراء

(2) رحلة قصيرة

صنعت إفطارًا (3) لنفسي

(4) أرتديت ملابسى

(5) في المرآة في المرآة

(6) نظارة شمس

(7) يحمى (0) أحدد ال

(8) أصبح الجو باردًا نحتفظ بدفء

(9) أجسامنا

Answer

ourselves warm⁽⁹⁾.

the following questions:

- Giving the main idea and guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context. إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية وتذمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

المصنية المطرية المطر

Nader's trip to the desert.

Practise 2. What does the underlined word put on in the text mean?





on Lesson 4 SB page 28

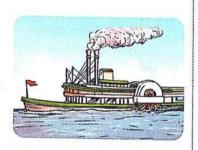
Around the world in 80 Days by Jules Verne

In 1872, the writer Jules Verne read a **newspaper article**⁽¹⁾ about a new **railway line**⁽²⁾ across India. It gave him a **great idea**⁽³⁾ for a book. He wrote a story about a **British**⁽⁴⁾ man called Phileas Fogg. He takes a **challenge**⁽⁵⁾ to travel around the world in just 80 days. This sounds easy today, but at that time, there were no cars or planes.

London to Suez, Egypt	train and ship	7 days
Suez to India	ship	13 days
India to Hong Kong	train and ship	16 days
Hong Kong to Japan	ship	6 days
Japan to the USA	ship	22 days
Across the USA	train	7 days
USA to London	ship	9 days
Leave on 2 nd October	Return on 21st [



When Phileas Fogg takes the ship back to London from the USA, there is a big storm⁽⁶⁾ at sea and he arrives in London one day late, on 22nd December. But he made a mistake⁽⁷⁾: because he travelled east⁽⁸⁾ around the world, it is one day earlier than he thought. So he completes⁽⁹⁾ his challenge on time!



(5) تحدی	(4) بريطاني الجنسية	(3) فكرة رائعة	مقال في جريدة (2) خط سكة حديد	
	(9) یکمل / ینمی			



Exercise

on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- Key vocabulary
 - 1. He needs a to dry his wet hair.
 - a. mirror b. cloud c. towel

d. card

				201
	2. I read a lot of info		c. notebook	d. capital
	a. article	D. 11010		u. capitai
	3. Today, thea. weather	b. leather	c. whether	d. feather
D 5	B, WB & Previous	Exams		
	4. 1 There is	at the top of the n	nountain. Look! It's	white.
	a. air	b. storm	c. sun	d. Snow
	5. 1 broke the vas	se by	(2	Al Munib - Giza 2023)
	a. wind	b. fire	c. luck	d. mistake
	6. 3 Phileas Fogg t	akes a to tra	vel around the wor	ld in just 80 days.
	a. mirror	b. challenge	c. railway line	d. presentation
			(F	akous - Sharkia 2023)
	7. W We can't sail b	ecause there is no		*
	a. sun	b. snow	c. wind	d. fog
	8. We sat by the	to keep our	selves warm.	(El Saf - Giza 2022)
	a. fire	b. snow	c. wild	d. line
D	El-Moasser Exercis	es		
	9. You shouldn't dri	ve vour car in	weather as you v	von't see well.
	a. sunny	b. funny	c. foggy	d. hot
	10. Sara a mist	take when she ansv	wered the question	ns without
	reading them we			
	a. took	b. did	c. made	d. gave
	11. We wear sunglass	ses to our ey	es from the sun.	
	a. damage	b. protect	c. repeat	d. travel
	Definitions	•		
-	12. When the sun sh	ines, the weather is	;	
	a. foggy	b. sunny	c. rainy	d. cold
	Language Notes, E			
	13. Today, ite	acy to travel aroun	d the world in less	than 80 days.
	a. tastes	b. takes	c. sounds	d. leaves
	14. After Sami			
			c. came	d. put
	a. made			Selection of the country
	15. It is important to the sun.	on a nat in	the desert as it pro	tects you nom
	a. make	b. put	c. give	d. cut





مهارة التحدث

Describing the weather:

وصف حالة الطقس:

Questions	Answers
 What is the weather like today ? How is the weather today ? كيف تكون حالة الطقس اليوم ؟ 	- There is fog, the weather is ▶ foggy. يوجد ضباب, الطقس ضبابي.
• How was the weather yesterday ? كيف كان الطقس بالأمس ؟	-The weather was sunny. کان الطقس مشمسًا.
• How will the weather be tomorrow ?	- The weather will be windy tomorrow. سیکون الطقس عاصف غدّا.



مهارة الكتابة

A journey across South Africa:

رحلة عبر جنوب أفريقيا :

1. Last month, I saw some beautiful photos about South Africa on Facebook.

الشهر الماضي، رأيتُ بعض الصور الجميلة عن جنوب أفريقيا على الفيسبوك.

2. I went to South Africa by plane.

3. I had a nice time there.

4. On Saturday, I went trekking in the mountains.

5. The weather was sunny.

6. On Sunday, I got to the top of the mountain.

7. I saw dark clouds at the top of the mountain.

9. I tried zip lining and it was exciting.

9. I tried zip lining and it was exciting.

Speaking & Writing Corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues قم بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة باستمرار. 80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & Emails

Step 3 Writing lexit day of lexit days	lialogue: "A journey across the desert" here? "A journey across the desert" here? "A journey across the desert" he desert. ? ourite food there? ? (Armant - Luxor 2023)	re you, Tarek? re you, Tarek? in Alexandria. weather like there? y weather like there? i you do there?
Speaking Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Complete the following c Hany is asking Samy if he Hany: Did you go to Sina Samy: (1) Hany: When did you go t Samy: (2) Hany: (3) Samy: I went trekking. Hany: (4) Samy: I slept in a tent in t Hany: What was your fav Samy: (5)	Nader asks Tarek abor Alexandria. Nader: Hello! How a Tarek: (1) Tarek: I spent my we Nader: How was the Tarek: (3) Nader: (4) Tarek: I ate fish. Nader: What else dic Tarek: (5)
Vocabulary اختبر اتقائك للمفردات اللغوية	Read and complete: 1. A. When did you go to the local and so the local and	1. A. Where did you spend your 1. A. Where did you spend your 2. A. How was the



III Language

Reflexive Pronouns

الضمائر المنعكسة

A. We use reflexive pronouns for emphasis:

◄ الضمائر المنعكسة هي ضمائر تعود على فاعل الجملة وتستخدم للتأكيد على أن الفاعل قد قام بعمل الفعل بنفسه وغالبًا ما تأتى هذه الضمائر في نهاية الجملة.

ex. - I polished the shoes myself.

Subject الفاعل		Reflexive pronoun الضمير المنعكس	
1	أنا	myself	بنفسى
120020	ھو	himself	بنفسه
She ,	ھى	herself	بنفسها
الهي lt	ھو	itself	بنفسه/بنفسها
ر العاقل	لغي		لغير العاقل

Subject	Reflexive pronoun	
الفاعل	الضمير المنعكس	
أنتم/أنتنَ You نحن We	yourself بنفسك yourselves أنفسكم/بأنفسكن ourselves أنفسهم/بأنفسهن themselves	

- ex. She taught herself to speak German.
 - We must cook the food ourselves.
- **B.** When the object is the same as the subject of the verb, we use the reflexive pronouns.
 - ◄ عندما يكون المفعول هو نفسه الفاعل في الجملة نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة.
- ex. He will hurt himself.
 - She saw herself in the mirror.

﴾ نلاحظ أن في الجملة الأمرية إذا كان المخاطب مفرد نستخدم (yourself) وإذا كان جمع (yourselves) وعدد أو الجملة الأمرية إذا كان المخاطب مفرد نستخدم (yourself) وإذا كان جمع (ex. - Spend a few minutes property)

ex. - Spend a few minutes preparing yourself / yourselves for exercise.

♦ يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بعد [by] بمعنى «بمفرده» أو «بدون مساعدة».

by myself = on my own = alone = without any help

- ex. I went shopping on my own (alone).
 - He lives on his own (alone / by himself).
 - Did Ali paint that picture on his own (without any help)?

- ♦ يمكن أن نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر مثل after / for / on . ex. - The girls looked after themselves.
 - Always depend on yourself.

ولكن لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة مع حروف جر مثل (with) وتستخدم ضمائر المفعول بدلًا منها :

ex. - Bring your jacket with you. (Not: with yourself)

◄ تعبيرات تستخدم فيها الضمائر المنعكسة :

ex. - Enjoy yourself

- Take care of yourself

- Help yourself (to)

- Make yourself at home

- Behave yourself

استمتع بوقتك =

اعتنى بنفسك =

ساعد نفسك / تفضل =

تصرف وكأنك في منزلك =

تصرف بأدب / تأدب =

Exercises on Language

. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB , WB & Previous Exams

- 1. 🖼 l madesome salad for lunch. (Multidisciplinary Biba Beni Suef 2021)
 - a. himself
- b. itself
- c. herself
- d. myself

- 2. Do your homework by
- c. yourself
- (Ain Shams Cairo 2023) d. themselves
- 3. SB Would you like to make a cup of tea?
 - a. yourself

a. herself

b. himself

b. myself

- c. herself
- d. itself
- 4. WB The birds sleep in caves to protect from eagles.
 - a herself
- b. itself
- c. yourselves
- d. themselves

- 5. He puts on a hat to protect
- (Esna Luxor 2022)

(New Damietta - Damietta 2022)

- a. himself
- b. ourselves
- c. themselves
- d. itself
- 6. 3 We enjoyed when we went sailing.
- c. ourselves
- (Abo Hammad Sharkia 2023) d. myself

- a. himself
- b. themselves

- 7. WB Sara has a jacket to keep warm. a. himself
 - b. themselves
- c. herself
- d. yourself



El-Moasser Exercis	es		
8. The teacher told	the students to beha	ave	
a. ourselves	b. themselves	c. yourself	d. yourselves
9. She taught	to cook online.		
a. himself	b. herself	c. themselves	d. itself
10. You both can see	in a mirror .		
a. yourself	b. ourselves	c. yourselves	d. themselves
11. Marwa and I carr	ied the heavy box by	<i>/</i>	
a. myself	b. herself	c. ourselves	d. themselves
12. I cleaned the kito	then alone. This mea	ns I cleaned it by	···········• •
a. myself	b. herself	c. itself	d. themselves
2. Complete the se	ntences with the c	orrect form of th	e word(s)
in brackets:			
SB & WB Exercises			
1. 55 She took a ph	oto of (thems	selves).	
2. 🕦 We cooked	(yourself) dinne	er on a fire.	
3. WB I didn't buy th	nis cake. I made it	(on) myself.	
▶ El-Moasser Exercis	es		
4. The cat is cleaning	g (myself) .		
5. Ali, do your hom	ework by (him	nself).	
6. The children mad	de these toys	(itself).	
7. Leen didn't need	any help. She did ho	omework by	. (himself).
	de myself a sandwic		
	cleaned up(w		
10. Did you take the			
	x i meserim e da s-0 (3. ₹ 0 de e provincia 1826 1€151955)	arrayeoperatusta (ELLAS)	

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 3 & 4

d. started

c. hurt

b. made

• Understand O Apply Create Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب). 1. When did you go trekking in the mountains? c. Last week d. Last month b. Today a. Yesterday 2. What was the weather like when you started? d. Snowy b. Rainy c. Sunny a. Cloudy 3. Did you get to the top? b. No. we didn't. a. Yes, we did. d. No, they won't. c. Yes, he will. 4. What did you see at the top? d. A plane b. The sun c. Dark clouds a. Rain Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: c. herself d. yourself b. himself a. myself 2. When it, we can see ice on the ground. d. rains b. storms c. snows a. hurts (Esna - Luxor 2022) 3. Did you hurt? d. myself c. himself b. yourself a. ourselves d. himself b. herself c. myself a. itself 5. She a mistake and apologised. d. sold b. made c. took a. did 6. The ground was very after the rain yesterday. d. high a. windy b. wet c. dry 7. 3 I woke up early and myself breakfast.

a. dried

0	8. My sister he	r leg and she could	dn't walk.	
	a. heard	b. mended	c. hurt	d. cleaned
0	9. My friends think the to take the	at climbing the m	ountain is not saf	e, but I decided
	a. challenge	b. change	c. trip	d. top
0	10. Adel Emam has a	funny in th	is film. (Sar	nanod - Gharbia 2023)
	a. subject	b. character	c. mountain	d. robot
3	Complete the senten	ices with the corre	ct form of the wo	rd(s) in brackets:
	1. Does she clean the	house by (yourself) ?	
	2. SB I'm sorry, Tamer	hurt (itself).	
	3. You don't need to d	drive this car. It dri	ves (hersel	f).
	4. We bought (1	themselves) a new	car.	
4	Write a paragraph	of about FIGHTV	(80) words on .	Marie Av. 1
	Tribe a paragrapii			
0				
0				nd Sakr - Sharkia 2023)
0		"A trip with yo	our friends" (Awla	ad Sakr - Sharkia 2023)
0		"A trip with ye	our friends" (Awla	nd Sakr - Sharkia 2023)
0		"A trip with ye	our friends" (Awla	nd Sakr - Sharkia 2023)
0		"A trip with ye	our friends" (Awla	ad Sakr - Sharkia 2023)
0		"A trip with ye	our friends" (Awla	ad Sakr - Sharkia 2023)
0		"A trip with ye	our friends" (Awla	nd Sakr - Sharkia 2023)
0		"A trip with ye	our friends" (Awla	nd Sakr - Sharkia 2023)
0		"A trip with ye	our friends" (Awla	ad Sakr - Sharkia 2023)
0		"A trip with ye	our friends" (Awla	nd Sakr - Sharkia 2023)
0		"A trip with ye	our friends" (Awla	ad Sakr - Sharkia 2023)
0		"A trip with ye	our friends" (Awla	ad Sakr - Sharkia 2023)

Lessons -

5 & **6**

SB pages 29 & 30 WB pages 88 & 89





Key Vocabulary

email	بريد الكتروني	grandad (n)	الجد
suggestion (n)		album (n)	ألبوم (صور)
introduction (n)	مقدمة	chess (n)	شطرنج
letter	خطاب	magazine (n)	مجلة
circle (d) (v), (n)	يضع دائرة / دائرة	station (n)	محطة



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

magazine - album - suggestion - station - circle

- 1. The train to Alexandria left the on time.
- 2. I wrote an article about water sports in the school
- 3. What is your for the next weekend?
- 4. My father put our photos in an

Lesson 5 SB page 29 WB page 88

prefer (red) (v)	يفضل	park (n)	حديقة عامة
both		stick (n)	عصا
respond (ed) (v) (n)	CANADA SAN DE LA COMPANSION DE LA COMPAN	respect (ed) (v), (n)	يحترم - احترام
sound (ed) (v)	The second secon	hobby (n)	هواية
basketball (n)	كرة السلة	underline (d) (v)	يضع خطًا تحت

Lesson 6 SB page 30 WB page 89

dear (adj)	عزيز / غال	advantages (n)	مزایا / ممیزات
reply (ied) (v), (n)	يرد - رد	online (adv), (adj)	متصل بالإنترنت

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms		مترادفات ومتضادات		
Wor	الكلمة d	المرادف Synonym	Antonym /Op	المضاد posite
prefer	يفضل/يحب	like better	dislike / hate	یکرہ
respond	یرد / یستجیب	reply	ask / ignore	يسأل / يتجاهل



Prefixes & Suffixes	وناهية	مقاطع بادئة	
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples a	أمثا
dis-	تعطى عكس الكلمة	disadvantages	عيوب
-ing	تحول الفعل لاسم	ending	نهاية

1	7/	Evenden	on Vocabulary Study	
1	V	Exercise	on Vocabulary Study	V

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d	0	Choose	the correct	answer from	ma.b.cord
---	---	--------	-------------	-------------	-----------

1. "Prefer" and "	" have the sar	ne meaning.	
a. dislike	b. miss	c. like better	d. refuse
2. "Respond" is	the antonym of "		
a. agree	b. ignore	c. accept	d. dislike
3. We can get t	he opposite of "adva	antages" by adding	g the prefix ""

c. un-

(Qu

a. mis-

General Notes on Reading & Listening

look forward to + noun اسم / (inf. + ing)

b. dis-

يتطلع إلى

- I'm looking forward to visiting Aswan.
 - We're looking forward to the summer vacation.

(SB page 30)

d. im-

- يفضل أنwould ('d) rather + inf
 - 333 I'd rather do sport.
 - WB I'd rather play chess.

(SB page 29)

- يفضل أن ... would ('d) prefer + to + inf. ... يفضل
 - WB I'd prefer to play chess.

(WB page 88)

4

• لاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية مع الفعل "make".

	- notes	يدون ملاحظات
	- suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات
make	- a sentence	يكون جملة
make	- a special present for	يصنع هدية خاصة لـ
	- a photo album	يصنع ألبوم صور
	- a presentation	يجهز عرض

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جرهامة

Expressions	Prepositions	
forms of transport وسائل المواصلات	plan for يخطط ل	
give a presentation يقدم عرض	write to يكتب إلى	
have tennis lessons يأخذ دروس في التنس	reply to يرد على	
أنا متحمس حقًا.	put in order يضع في الترتيب الصحيح	
respect others' opinions يحترم آراء الآخرين	good at جيد في	
	respond to يستجيب إلى	



Reading and Listening



ـــــ Pop Quiz تدرب على ∙ا من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

on Lesson 5 SB page 29

ola : I'm really enjoying myself on our holiday. I love being by the

sea(1). What shall we do this afternoon?

Lamia: Why don't we go swimming?

ola : I'm not sure. Swimming is fun⁽²⁾, but we can do that at home. I'd rather⁽³⁾ do something

more exciting.

Lamia: OK. How about going windsurfing?

Ola : I don't know. I'm not very good at windsurfing and it isn't very

windy today.

Lamia: OK, not swimming and not windsurfing. I know! Let's go kayaking.

Ola : Good idea! I love kayaking.

(1) بجوار البحر (2) متعة (3) أنا أُفضل





on Lesson 6 SB page 30

New message

From: Maher Karim To:

Subject: Your visit

Dear Karim,

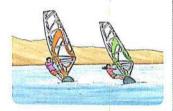
I'm really excited(1) that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm looking forward to (2) seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive? We can meet you at the station(3).

Our new home is by the beach (4). We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing or diving?

On Thursday, Grandad⁽⁵⁾ is going to visit us. Let's make him a special present⁽⁶⁾. Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins? We can make him a photo album⁽⁷⁾. See you on Saturday!

From

Maher



(1) متحمس (2) يتطلع إلى (3) محطة (4) بجوار الشاطئ (5) جد (6) هدية مميزة (7) ألبوم صور فوتوغرافية

on Lesson 6 WB page 89

Dear Manal,

I'm writing to tell you my plans for the summer. It's going to be fun but busy. Then you can write to me about your plans!

First, I'm going to visit my cousins in Alexandria. They're going to take me to the

famous library. I'm very excited about that. It's a beautiful building. I'm going to go home on 22nd August. I'm going to have tennis lessons! I can't play tennis now, but I'm going to be very good after the lessons!



Let's do some things together before we go back to school. What about going to the beach? You always like swimming. Write to me soon so I know your plans! From, Judy استخراج معلومات - Extracting information Choose Learn 1. Judy is writing this email to tell Manal about her the correct c. planes b. plans Practise 2. Judy is going to go home on 22nd answer from a. b. c or d. c. November d. August a. September b. October



• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary 1.is a board game for two players only. d. Chess a. Football b. Swimming c. Tennis 2. I collected all my family photos and put them in a/an d. basket b. album c. book a. quiz 3. Please, can I get off the next? d. email c. magazine a. suggestion b. station 4. Mum loves cooking food very much, so she always reads about food. b. kitchens c. magazines d. screens a. offices SB . WB & Previous Exams 5. BY You can the word you don't know and ask your teacher about it. (Alexandria - West 2023) b. underline c. practise d. respect a. correct 6. WB Always check your final email for any in spelling or grammar. b. mistakes c. words d. lessons a. plans (Multidisciplinary - West Mahala - Gharbiya 2021) 7. Maher wants to make a present for his grandad. d. public a. special b. private c. general (Hehia - Sharkia 2022) El-Moasser Exercises What's your favourite? - It's swimming. b. hobby d. place c. stick



9. One of the a. advantages	b. presenta	tions c. introdu	ctions d. stations
10. We usually start that a. Dare	b. Dear	c. Deer	d. Dart
11. There are many a. forms	b. frames	c. farms	d. farmers
12. We learned to a. destroy	b. delete	c. respect	d. carry
▶ Language Notes, Ex	xpressions &	Prepositions	
Our science teach Science Museum.		me suggestions a	about our trip to the
a. took	b. had	c. made	d. did
14. I'm forward	to seeing my	uncle before trav	elling.
a. making	b. taking	c. looking	d. doing
15. He thinks that rock		t scary. He'd rathe	er another sport.
a. make	b. do	c. give	d.go
2. Speaking			مهارة التحدث
Making and respond	ding to sugge	stions :	تقديم اقتراحات والرد عليها :
0		2	3
Suggestion الاقتراح		tive response الرد بالموافقة	Negative response
الاقتراح		الرد بالموافقة	الرد بالرفض
الاقتراح - Why don't we go swimi	ming? - Tha	الرد بالموافقة s's a good idea.	الرد بالرفض No, thanks.
الاقتراح Why don't we go swimi عب للسباحة ؟	ming ? - Tha	الرد بالموافقة	الرد بالرفض - No, thanks. لا، شكراً.
الاقتراح - Why don't we go swimi	ming ? - Tha	الرد بالموافقة s's a good idea.	الرد بالرفض No, thanks.
الاقتراح - Why don't we go swim عب للسباحة ؟ - How about meeting	ming ? الما لا نذه next - Gre	الرد بالموافقة s's a good idea. إنها فكرة جيدة.	الرد بالرفض No, thanks. - الا، شكراً. - I don't really feel like it.
- Why don't we go swimi عب للسباحة ؟ - How about meeting weekend ?	ming ? الما لا نذه next - Grea	الرد بالموافقة 's a good idea. إنها فكرة جيدة. at idea.	الرد بالرفض - No, thanks I don't really feel like it اناحقاً لا أحب هذا I'm not very keen
الاقتراح - Why don't we go swim هب للسباحة ؟ - How about meeting weekend ? ن نتقابل العطلة القادمة ؟ - What about watching	ming ? لما لا نذه next - Gre ما رأيك أ	الرد بالموافقة s's a good idea. إنها فكرة جيدة. at idea. فكرة عظيمة.	الُود بالرفض - No, thanks. الا، شكراً I don't really feel like it.
- Why don't we go swimi عب للسباحة؟ - How about meeting weekend? ان نتقابل العطلة القادمة؟ - What about watching	ming ? الما لا نذه next - Gre ما رأيك أ	الرد بالموافقة s's a good idea. إنها فكرة جيدة. at idea. فكرة عظيمة. why not ?	الرد بالرفض No, thanks. - I don't really feel like it. - اناحقاً لا أحب هذا. - I'm not very keen on that.
الاقتراح - Why don't we go swim هب للسباحة ؟ - How about meeting weekend ? ن نتقابل العطلة القادمة ؟ - What about watching	ming ? الما لا نذه next - Gre ما رأيك أه TV ? ما رأيك أه ? - Yes,	الرد بالموافقة 's a good idea. إنها فكرة جيدة. at idea. فكرة عظيمة. why not ?	الرد بالرفض No, thanks. - I don't really feel like it. - I'm not very keen on that. - Maybe some other time.
- Why don't we go swimi عب للسباحة ؟ - How about meeting weekend ? ن نتقابل العطلة القادمة ؟ - What about watching عن مشاهدة التلفزيون ؟ - Shall we have a picnic	ming ? الما لانذه next - Gree ما رأيك أه TV ? ما رأيك ف	الرد بالموافقة 's a good idea. إنها فكرة جيدة. at idea. فكرة عظيمة. why not ?	الرد بالرفض - No, thanks I don't really feel like it I'm not very keen on that Maybe some other time. ربما في وقت آخر.
- Why don't we go swiming بالسباحة ؟ - How about meeting weekend ? - ن نتقابل العطلة القادمة ؟ - What about watching - Shall we have a picnic - Shall we go rock climb	ming ? الما لا نذه الما لا نذه الما لا نذه - Grea الماليك أو TV ? المارأيك أو - Yes, المارأيك - مارأيك	الرد بالموافقة 's a good idea. إنها فكرة جيدة. at idea. فكرة عظيمة. why not ?	الرد بالرفض - No, thanks I don't really feel like it I'm not very keen on that Maybe some other time. ربما في وقت آخر I'm not sure. That
- Why don't we go swimi عب للسباحة ؟ - How about meeting weekend ? إن نتقابل العطلة القادمة ؟ - What about watching عن مشاهدة التلفزيون؟ - Shall we have a picnic - Shall we go rock climb	ming ? الما لا نذه الما لا نذه الما لا نذه - Grea الماليك أو TV ? المارأيك أو - Yes, المارأيك - مارأيك	الرد بالموافقة 's a good idea. إنها فكرة جيدة. at idea. فكرة عظيمة. why not ?	الرد بالرفض - No, thanks I don't really feel like it I'm not very keen on that Maybe some other time. ربما في وقت آخر.

- That's not possible. - We could have a game of - OK. - I'd rather (go to football. the beach) هذا ليس ممكنًا. من الممكن أن تلعب مباراة كرة قدم. موافق. أنا أفضل [الذهاب للشاطئ]. - That's a good idea. - I'd prefer to go to - Let's go to the public library the beach to read some books. أنا أفضل الذهاب للشاطئ هيا بنا نذهب للمكتبة العامة لقراءة · إنها فكرة جيدة. بعض الكتب. - Sorry, I'm busy. - Great idea. - Let's go shopping. آسف، أنا مشغول. فكرة عظيمة. هيا بنا نذهب للتسوق. - I disagree. - I suggest going to the I agree. أنا غير موافق. أنا موافق. museum. أنا أقترح أن نذهب للمتحف.



مهارة الكتابة

Forms of transport:

وسائل المواصلات :

- We have different forms of transport today. الدينا وسائل مختلفة من المواصلات اليوم.
- 2. There are some forms of transport that are also hobbies.
 - ٢. هناك بعض وسائل المواصلات التي تعتبر هوايات أيضًا.
- 4. Some people prefer certain forms of transport.
 - ٤. بعض الأشخاص يفضلون وسائل مواصلات معينة.



General Exercises





74	• Understand • A	Apply o	Create		
	Listen and choos	e the corre	ct answer f	rom a,b,	c or d:
	ب).	اع في نهاية الكتار	ة (نصوص الاستم	لإجابة الصحيحا	ستمع إلى معلمك واختر ا
ļ	1. Who is looking for	ward to see	ing Karim ? -	•	
1	a. Samy	b. Maher	c. Kari	im's sister	d. Sawsan
	2. Karim is coming fr	om	···· •		
	a. Cairo	b. Alexand	Iria c. Asw	/an	d. Luxor
	3. When is Karim cor	ming ?			
	a. Next Saturday	b. Today	c. Ton	norrow	d. Next year
	4. How is Karim com	ing ? - By			
	a. train	b. bus	c. plan	ne	d. boat
6	Complete the fol	lowing dia	logue :		
	Salem and Ameer o	are talking o	bout playing	g sports.	
	Salem : What shall	we do tom	orrow?	2 .2	
	Ameer: (1)				
	Salem : Are you go	od at playi	ng basketball	1?	
	Ameer: (2)	D	o you like pla	ying it?	
	Salem: (3)			A1	
	Ameer : Don't worr	y. I'm not ta	ll, either. But	I practise it	a lot.
	Salem : (4)	?			
	Ameer: I practise it	at school o	r in the club.	6	
	Salem : (5)	?			
	Ameer: I practise it	every day.			
3	Choose the corre	ct answer	from a b c	ov d.	
(1. WB The children p				
	a. itself	b. himself	c. her	self	d. themselves
(2 going to th	100			
	a. Shall we	b. Let's	c. Hov	w about	d. Can we

Understand

O Apply

Create

- 3. Shall werock climbing?
 - a. going
- b. go
- c. went
- d. to go

- 4. I'd rather sports on holidays.
 - a. make
- b. take
- c. do
- d. send
- 5. 33 to a friend usually end with an expression like "See you (Samasta - Beni Suif 2023) soon".
 - d Fmails a. Adventures b. Paragraphs c. Passages
- 6. The train to Aswan leaves the at 7 pm.

- a. station
- b. street
- c. road
- d. circle
- 7. I felt when I saw my team winning the match.
 - a excited
- b. afraid
- c. warm
- d. frightened

(West Cairo - Cairo 2022)

- 8. Egypt has many of transport.
 - a. farms
- b. forms
- c. objects
- d. subjects
- 9. Write a/an at the beginning of your email.
- (Tema Sohag 2022)
- b. game a. photo
- c. conclusion
- d. introduction
- 10.some notes during reading is very important to remember what vou read.
 - a. Giving
- b. Doing
- c. Making
- d. Eating

(Kafr Sakr - Sharkia 2023)

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 - 1. She is tall and very good(in) basketball.
 - 2. I'm looking forward to (see) you.
 - 3. WB I'd prefer (playing) tennis.
 - 4. Let's (spending) good time together.





on unit 🚇

قيم مستواك) يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary	ılary	Language	Speaking
diving	رباضة الغطس	الضمائر المنعكسة Pronouns	1. Describing the weather:
kayaking	التجديف بالزورق	تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة عندما يكون الفاعل	- وصف الطقس :
رباضة ركوب دراجات على الجبال mountain biking	رباضة ركوب دراجات على	والمفعول هما نفس الشخص.	ex. What's the weather
sailing	رياضة الإبحار	ex. They're enjoying themselves.	like today?
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	- Toka hurt herself.	- It's sunny / rainy /
zip lining	الانزلاق بالحبال	L - 1- L	windy / hot etc.
trekking (श्रीम जारी यह शिक्षा कि पिता	رحلة طويلة شاقة (غالبًا س	 Sami came out or the sea and dried himself with a towel 	2. Making and responding
windsurfing	التزلج على الماء		to suggestions :
tent	- - - - - - - - - - - - - -	2- "(Be) going to" for future plans.	- تقديم اقتراحات _{والر} د عليها :
water sport	رياضة مائية	استخدام "beJ going to" للتعبير عن خطط مستقبلية.	ex. What shall we do
mountain sport	رياضة جبلية	ex. l am going to visit Sinai.	this weekend?
rainy	ممطر	- I am not going to play football.	- Let's play tennis.
sunny	مشمس		- What about going
cloudy	ملبد بالغيوم	ex. Are you going to travel to lanta ? ملبد بالغيوم	windsurfing ?
windy	عاصف	- Yes, I am No, I am not.	
foggy	ضبابي	-What are you going to do on Sunday?	ex. Good idea!
railway line	خطسكة حديد		- OK why not ?
challenge	تحدي		5 × 115 × 2000
journey	رحلة طويلة		6.6 (6.4)



Reading Reading Comprehension

Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

🥦 تختير أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

◄ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة

Read and answer the questions:

them with their homework. She has got a small family. Salma and Huda, and only one son, Ahmed. Ahmed is going to be a dentist. Salma likes English and science. morning to give her students more lessons and help Her husband is a doctor. She has got two daughters, Mrs Soha is a teacher of English in a prep school. her. She always comes to school at 7 o'clock in the the youngest daughter, wants to be a computer She is very kind and helpful, so all students like She wants to be a doctor like her father. Huda's programmer.

- The underlined word "kind" means
- c. friendly b. lazy a. brave

褖 التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تخمين معني مفردة لغوية في النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أنه يمكن تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية ـ ".. في النص

Speaking

Asking about experiences and Making suggestions

🧷 يختير سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة

Complete the following dialogue:

Salma and Raghda are talking about their holiday. Salma : Hi, Raghda. How are things?

Raghda: (1)

Raghda: I'm going to visit Dahab. Salma : (2)

Salma : Are you going to try diving?

Salma : (4) Raghda: (3)

Raghda: I don't like rock climbing.

Salma : Can I come with you?

Raghda: (5) ...

تكوين أسئلة والردعليها التحدي تريد السؤال عن [خطط للعطلة وتقديم اقتراحات] وتجد صعوبة في



🚱 مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.





Topic

رم يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة مهاراتك فى التعبير عن موضوع ما. "للمزيد من التدريب كراسة المعاصر التفاع (هم) التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن [مغامرة] و [خطط إجازة الصيف] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.	رفق مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية و كيفية استخدامها في تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.	Step 3 Paragraph	"An adventure"	"Your plans for the summer holiday"
يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة مهاراتك في التعبير عن موضوع ما."للمزيد من التدريب كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي.") التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن [مغامرة] و [خطط إجازة الصيف] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.	ن المفردات اللغوية و كيفية استخدامها في تكوين	Step 2 Sentences	Fill in using vocabulary: 1. I'm going in the mountains. 2. I'm not going to try rock it's dangerous. 3. I can't try because there is no wind. 4. I enjoyed my in Dahab.	1. I'm going to visit my
اصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي." جمل عنها.	، جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.	step 1 Review your vocabulary	اقامة	

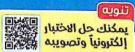
An adventure

Your plans for the summer holiday

Questions collected from previous exams تدریبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة	om previous exams تدریبات مجمعة من اخت
1. Complete the following dialogue: Ahmed and Alaa are talking about spending the weekend. Ahmed: Hi, Alaa. What do you think about travelling at the weekend? Alaa: Hi, Ahmed. (1)	3. Ahmed his uncle tomorrow. It's his intention. (Kafr Eldwaar - Behira 2023) a. will visit c. is going to visit d. visits 4. Look out! The baby is going to his is a. falling b. falls c. fell d. fall (Shebin El-Kanatir - Qalyoubia 2022) 5. What you going to wear tomorrow? a. do b. have c. are d. were
Ahmed: (4)	6. I looked at myself in the
2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. All you need to go is a boat and some wind. a. sailing b. trekking c. diving d. zip lining (Samalot - Minia 2023) 2. What are your for the next weekend? a. planes b. plans c. plays d. plants (Abo Hammad - Sharkia 2023)	8. I read a/an

Test

on unit 🚇



Understand

Apply

Create

A. Listenina

الملحق	می فی	ار تراک	اختب	, بحل	قم
100 mm	0	, ,			

Listen and	choose	the	correct	answer	from	a h	cor	d	
			COLLECT	CHIDAACI	HUIII	a, D	,	u	

	ص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب}.	تر الاجابة الصحيحة (نصوم	استمع الى معلمك واخ
1. We're on holida	ay in		استنے ہی تحدد و
a. Africa	b. South Africa	c. North Africa	d. India
2. There is	to do here.		
a. nothing	b. one thing	c. a little	d. a lot
3. Yesterday was .			
a. foggy	b. an adventure	c. terrible	d. sunny
4. The weather is	going to be better	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	-
a. tomorrow		b. today	
c. next week		d. before mornin	g
		(West Mahe	ula - Gharbiya 2022)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Kareem and Hanan are talking about the holiday.

Kareem: The holiday will be in two weeks. Are you happy?

Hanan : (2)

Kareem : Paris!(3)?

Hanan : No. I'm going to travel with my uncle Sayed.

Kareem : (4)?

Hanan : I will stay for two weeks.

Kareem: I hope you will enjoy your time there.

Hanan : (5)

(Belgas - Dakahlia 2022)

C. Reading Comprehension Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Karim.

I'm really excited that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm **looking forward to** seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive? We can meet you at the station.

Our new home is by the beach. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing or diving? On Thursday, grandad is going to visit us. Let's make him a special present. Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins? We can make him a photo album. See you on Saturday! Yours Maher a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : 1. The underlined expression "looking forward to" means d. worry c. like b. hope a. watch 2. The underlined pronoun "him" refers to d. cousin c. grandad b. Karim a. Maher 3. Karim and Maher can go every day. b. windsurfing c. diving d. skiing a. swimming b. Answer the following questions: 4. Give a suitable title for this email. 5. Where's Maher's new home? 6. Do you think Maher's grandad will be happy with the photo album? Why / Why not? D. Vocabulary & Structure Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. A: What about lining ? B: It's dangerous. d. rope c. zip b. wind a. rock 2. The Red Sea coast has a lot of sports. I like diving and (Beba - Beni Suif 2023) windsurfing. d. light c. snow b. adventure a. land 3. During a trekking adventure, you need a to help you find the way. d. driver c. guide b. rider a. tourist (El Delengat - Beheira 2022) 4. W What learn ? b. she is going to a. is going

d. is she going to

c. is going to

Ó	5. I didn't l	buy this	cake. I mad	de it	·········· •			
	a. himse	elf	b. herself	•	c. yourself	d	. myself	
							ala - Gharbia 2022,)
-	6. When you	ou have ing.	a	. , this m	neans that you	ı know h	ow to do	
	a. subje	ct	b. skill		c. match	d	. sport	
0	7. To walk a. surfin	a long (ig	distance, us b. kayaki	ually in ng	the mountair c. trekking		d . zip lining	
-	8. When you	ou go d ment	iving, you s b. subjec	hould h ts	ave some c. games	to	keep you safe. . kites	٠
0	9. After co	mina o	the state of the s		d myself with			
	a. tape		b. pool	.,	c. tool		. towel	
Ó	10. 🔢 I	t	ry rock clim	bing to	morrow.			
	a. 'll go		b. go to		c. 'm going	d	. 'm going to	
5	Complete	the ser	tences with	the co	rrect form of t	he word(s) in brackets :	
	2. Si Wha	t shall w out	/e(d (go) kay	oing) to aking n	flying) abroad omorrow ? ext weekend (myself).	?		
				E. Writ	tina			
6	Write an	email o	f about EIC		Control of the Contro		محاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب	1
0						Ire vou'r	e having. Your	į.
	name is I	amer ai	nd your em	ail addr	ess is tamerbr	o@vaho	o.com. Your	
	friend's e	mail ad	dress is nab	ileid@y	ahoo.com.			
	From	:						١
	То							
	Subject						_	
							19	

	***************************************	••••••				•••••		
	***************************************	••••••		•••••				
	***************************************	***************	*************				3	

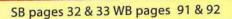
Stop here!

Mini-Test on unit 9 for Al-Az	har students	إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف					
1 Supply the missing parts in th	e following dial	ogue:					
Mazen is asking Zeyad about th	he article he is re	ading.					
Mazen: What are you reading,	Zeyad ?						
Zeyad :(1)	. It does to shop	Dad Can					
Mazen : Oh yes! Last year, I we	ent diving in the	neu sea.					
Zeyad: I'd love to do that. (2)	sk dimbing is a	. I hit dangerous					
Mazen: No, I am not. I think ro Zeyad: I like trekking in the m	ock climbing is a	?					
Mazen : I like the mountains. I w	ant to visit Sinai v	ith my family next holiday.					
2 Choose the correct answer fi							
1. Rock climbing looks	, ,						
a scared b scary	c. frighten	ed d. tired					
2. We are looking forward to	the football n	natch today.					
a watch b. watches	c. watchin	g a. to water					
3. They stood under the umbrell a. help b. walk	c. hop	d. protect					
4. It's cloudy, it rain.							
a. is going to b. will	c. won't	d. didn't					
5. What about the zoo?	c. visiting	d. visited					
GI VISIC	the same of the sa						
Reorder the words to make		.es.					
1. will - tomorrow - be - The wee							
2. looking - I'm - you - seeing - t	2. looking - <u>I'm</u> - you - seeing - to.						
3. Saturday - What - you - going	3. Saturday - What - you - going - 're - to do - next ?						
4. have - transport - of - forms -	We - different - 1	oday.					
Write a paragraph of FIVE sen							
"A tri	ip to the desert						

(ou)

b. No, she hasn't. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in d. No, she can't. 9. She ______ (going) to make pizza. She (doing) ? (herself). d. are going b. himself d. to do Aya: Does she go to a prep school? b. did 8. Ali and Raslan will do a project..... d. of b. is the brackets from a, b, c or d: bought the ingredients. What are you going He planted the tree : (5) a. Yes, she does. c. Yes, she is. c. are doing themselves. c. yourself a. is going a. him a. do c. by a. in Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to 'Aya and Ola are talking about Ola's cousin". b. Koshari. complete the following dialogue: d. Giza. Ola: This is a photo of my cousin. d. What size does she want? c. How does she look like? Aya: What's her favourite food? c. What grade is she in ? d. What is she doing? b. What is her name? a. What is his name? : Where does she live? c. She lives in Cairo. a. How old is she? She is 14 years old. a. She plays tennis. : Her name is Soha. d. She watches TV. b. She has lunch. b. How is she? :(3) :(2) a. Yellow. c. 42. Ola

Review C







on Lesson 1 SB page 32

Hi Dareen

• How are you? I'm really enjoying myself in Sydney with my family. Sydney is about eight hours by car from our home in Melbourne. Yesterday I climbed Sydney Harbour⁽¹⁾ Bridge⁽²⁾. It was very high and scary⁽³⁾. But the views⁽⁴⁾ from the top were fantastic! My sister and I took a great selfie⁽⁵⁾ of ourselves!

Tonight I am going to listen to music at the Sydney Opera House, but it is not opera, it is **classical music**⁽⁶⁾! Tomorrow I am going to the Blue Mountains. I am going to swim in a **lake**⁽⁷⁾ and go **rock climbing**⁽⁸⁾. Here are some photos!

Love, Amy

Hi Amy

Your holiday sounds fantastic (9).

My family and I went to Sydney last year but we did not climb the bridge! We went to Bondi Beach and went windsurfing⁽¹⁰⁾ and kayaking⁽¹¹⁾.

I love water sports(12)!



I hope you enjoy your holiday, send me an email when you are home. Love, Dareen

	(1) میناء	(2) كوبرى	(3) مخيف	(4) مناظر طبیعیة	(5) صورة شخصية بالكاميرا الأمامية
•	(6) موسیقی	6) موسیقی کلاسیکیة		(8) تسلق الصخور	(9) تبدو رائعة
	(10) رياضة رك	وب الأمواج	(11) رياضة التجديف بالزورق		(12) رياضات مائية



WB page 91

· Last weekend, I watched a TV programme about Robinson Crusoe Island(1). The author(2) of Robinson Crusoe, Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a real (3) sailor (4) called Alexander Selkirk spent(5) four years alone here. Defoe wrote Robinson Crusoe after hearing about this man. However, Crusoe's adventures (6) were



different to Mr Selkirk's. Crusoe spent a lot longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was a lot hotter than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe Island. Life is easier now, although people still have to look after(7) themselves. The nearest(8) land, Chile, is 24 hours away by boat. Soon they are going to build a new school and hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe did not have!

(8) الأقرب	(7) يعتني بــ	(6) مغامرات	(5) قضي	(4) بحار	(3) حقیقی	വ്വർഗ (2)	อีนเว (1)	
S-AROS CAMBOO	and the second of the second	5-81-02-02-03-03-03-03-03-03-03-03-03-03-03-03-03-	0 (-)	3-11/	O-2 (5)	ungu (2)	۱۱۱ خریره	



WB page 91



Girl : Hi Lara. How was your weekend?

Lara: Oh, it was terrible(1).

Girl: Oh dear, what happened?

Lara: I went to the museum, but it was closed (2). Then I missed the bus (3)

so I had to walk home.

Girl : Oh dear! (4)

2

Boy 1: I love tennis. Do you agree(5) that it's more exciting than any other sport?

Boy 2: I'm afraid⁽⁶⁾ I don't agree.

(2) مغلق (3) يفوته الأتوبيس (4) يا للأسف (5) يوافق (6) أخشى أن

Girl 1: What shall we do this afternoon, Lama?

Girl 2: Why don't go swimming?

Girl 1: I'm not sure. The swimming pool(7) is not very near.

Girl 2: OK. How about going to the park?

Girl 1: Good idea⁽⁸⁾! I love the trees and plants there.

Boy 3: What do you think about that book you're reading?

Boy 4: I think it's the worst book ever!

(8) فكرة جيدة (9) الأسوأ

7) حمام سياحة

Lesson 2 SB page 33

Woman: Egypt is just over one million square kilometres(1)

Man

: Australia is the sixth largest country(2) in the world. It is just over seven million, six hundred thousand square kilometres.

Woman: The highest mountain(3) in Egypt is Mount Catherine. It is over two thousand six hundred metres high.

Man

: The highest mountain in Australia is Mount Kosciuszko. It is over two thousand, two hundred metres high.

Woman: The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It flows through (4) Egypt and other countries in Africa. It's over six thousand, six hundred kilometres long.

Man

: The longest river in Australia is the River Murray. It is over two thousand, five hundred kilometres long. Be careful of the crocodiles (5)!

Woman: In Egypt, one of the oldest buildings is the Khufu Pyramid. It is about 4,600 years old.

Man

: The oldest building in Australia is Elizabeth Farm, in Sydney. It is over 200 years old.

(6) مبانی

(1) كيلومتر مربع (2) دولة (3) جبل (4) يتدفق خلال (5) تماسيح



Listen and choose the correct answer

Ahmed's favourite sport is

from a,b,c or d:

Based on Units

👴 جید جدا	و ممتاز
🧑 غیر جید	ې ختر

If you got o, you need to revise the	
لت على 👴 غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى	قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصا
=	σ.

c. three times

a. once

a. Mohammed Salah b. Mpabé

He wants to be like

c. neighbours

a. family

c. Benzema

3. He plays football with his

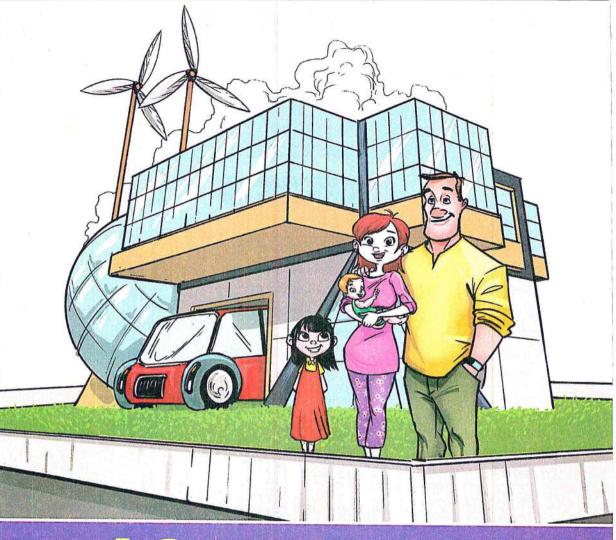
He plays football

c. football

a. tennis

اخرو	دة مر	الوحد	جعه	ابمرا	د،قد	برجي	iç 🔵	ملن	ىلت	احم	هٔ واذ	ضحا	ه المو	للامات	بالع	ىسك	تمابع	ابتقير	قە		یر جی	C @	- Tr.	? (
 B : Is it only for cars and buses to go across it? A : (4)		السؤال الثالث في الورقة الامتحانية :	answer the questions:		ion bridge (Tahya Masr	Aay 2019. It is 67.36	g. More than 4000	ney started building it	it in 32 months later.	s Warraq Island. More	the island. Many people	idge. It has a glass floor,	er your feet! The best	t sunset.	wer from a, b, c or d:	ın "it" refers to	b. Warraq Island	d. the Nile	floor.	b. glass	d. wool			
B: Is it only for cars and buses to go across it?	A:(4)	B:(5)	A: People can enjoy walki	B : Thanks for your help.	حالية :	3. Read the following then answer the questions:	ñ	The world's widest suspension bridge (Tahya Masr	Bridge) opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36	metres wide and 540 m long. More than 4000	people helped to build it. They started building it	in 2016. They finally finished it in 32 months later.	The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More	than 100.000 people live on the island. Many people	enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor,	so you can see the river under your feet! The best	time to cross the bridge is at sunset.	a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to	a. Cairo	c. Tahya Masr Bridge	2. The bridge has a floor.	a. metal	c. paper
السؤال الأول في الورقة الامتحانية :	oose the correct answer	[نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب]	urite sport is	b. karate	d. volleyball	ball a week.	b. twice	d. four times	oall with his	h teachers	2. CCC. ICI.	d. Inerias	e like	d Salan B. Mpabe	d. Messi	السؤال الثاني في الورقة الامتحانية :	following dialogue:	to go to Oasr El-Nil Bridge	ret vicit to Cairo 2	Can you tell me where	idae is?		7	centre is on the River Nile.

b. itself d. themselves c. the game. c. drive k climbing?	a. going b. go c. well. 9. My favourite is reading. I like it so much. a. sport b. study c. hobby d. trip 10. A is a long trip from one place to another.	a. trip a. trip c. challenge d. capital e. d. capital e. d. capital e. d. capital form of the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 1.1 (go) to a concert 3 hours ago. 2. I like jazz, (and) I don't like opera. 3. What places (do) you visit last weekend? 4. (Did) you ill yesterday? i gizzligum! (high) holiday plans" mediday plans"
3. The underlined word "started" in the passage means	5. What do you think of the Tahya Masr Bridge ? 6. What does the bridge cross ?	السؤال الرابع في الجوتق الامتحانية . 1. All you need to go is a boat and some wind. a. sailing



Welcome to my home!

SB pages 34:43 WB pages 93:99

Objectives:

· Reading

Homes in ancient Egypt, round houses around the world

· Writing:

- A paragraph describing your first school
- A timeline of a famous person's life
- A diagram of future houses

Listening

A podcast about homes of the future

Speaking

Saying what things are made of; predicting the future

· Faluidingidie

is/ore mode of, there was/were, there will/ won't be for predictions with no evidence, saying years

· Life Skills:

Creativity, good listening and self-expression

Lessons -

1 & 2

SB pages 34 : 37 WB pages 93 & 94





Key Vocabulary

oven (n)	فبن	curtains (n)	ستائر
bricks (n)		cushion (n)	وسادة
wallet (n)	CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY O	tablet (n)	كمبيوتر لوحى
roof (n)	سطح [المنزل]	lamp (n)	مصباح
tap (n)	حنفية/صنبور	skirt (n)	جيبة
sofa (n)	كئبة	teaspoon (n)	ملعقة شاي صغيرة

Materials

ام	خ	٥	مو

cotton (n)	قطن	plastic (n)	بلاستيك
glass (n)	زجاج	stone (n)	حجر
leather (n)	جلد مدبوغ	wood (n)	خشب
metal (n)	معدن	wool (n)	صوف

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

teaspoon - cushions - tap - plastic - metal

- 1. One of sugar is enough and healthy.
- 2. There are three on the sofa made of cotton.
- 3. Cans of fizzy drinks are made of
- 4. Children's toys are made of

Lesson 1

SB pages 34 & 35 WB page 93

jumper (n)	بلوفر	knife (n)	سكين
scarf (n)	كوفية / وشاح	seat (n)	مقعد
round (adj)	مستدیر / کروی	the Stone Age (n)	العصر الحجرى
answer (n)	إجابة / رد	possessions (n)	ممتلكات



Famous places in Egypt

أماكن مشهورة في مصر

Deir el-Medina	The Valley of the Kings	وادى الملوك
دير المدينة [قرية بمدينة الأقصر]	The Nile valley	وادى النيل

Lesson 2

SB pages 36 & 37 WB page 94

ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	the ancient Egypt	tians	قدماء المصريين
village (n)	قرية	painted walls	ونة]	حوائط ملونة (مدهو
paint (ed) (v)	یلون/یدهن	carts		عربات تجرها الحيوا
kitchen (n)	مطبخ	living room (n)		غرفة المعيشة

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

	AND THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPER	0,
cotton	a soft, white material from a plant that is used to make clothe	قطن S
cushion	a soft object to sit on or rest your head on	وسادة (م
glass	a hard material that you can see through, used to make bowindows, etc	ttles, زجاج
leather	the material from the skins of animals, used to make shoes and ba	
oven	the equipment used for cooking or baking food	فرن
plastic	a light, strong material used for making many things such a rulers, etc	
wood	a natural material that is made from trees	خشب
wool	a soft material that is made from the hair of sheep or goats	
brick	a hard, square object that is used for building houses, walls, etc.	
roof		سطح منز
tap	you turn on it to get water in the house, garden, etc.	حنفية
metal	a hard material, for example, gold, silver	معدن
round	with a shape like a circle	دائری
stone	a hard, natural material that is made from rocks	حجر

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms	and Antor	nyms	بترادفات ومتضادات		
Word a	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym /Opposite		
answer	إجابة	response	question	سؤال	
difficult	صعب	hard	easy	<u>سول</u> سهل	

Prefixes & Suffixes		هية	مقاطع بادئة وناه	
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples		
-en	تحول الاسم لصفة	wooden	خشبى	
-ing	تحول الفعل لاسم	painting	لوحة	
_v	تحول الاسم لصفة	healthy	صحى	

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

	rect answer from		
1. "Answer" and	I "" have the s	ame meaning.	
a. hard		c. response	d. top
2. The antonym	of the word "easy"	is "".	
a. healthy	b. simple	c. hard	d. lazy
3. The suffix "-y	" can change the w	ord "health" into a	a/an
a. noun	b. adjective	c. adverb	d. verb
4. We change the	ne word "wood" int	o an adjective by	adding "
	b -en	cment	dion

General Notes on Reading & Listening

هناك كلمات في اللغة الانجليزية جمع دائمًا وليس لها مفرد لأنها تتكون من جزئين socks - pants - trousers - glasses - scissors - scales

وتستخدم كلمة (a pair of) مع هذه الكلمات بمعنى زوج من لتشير إلى أنها جزئين لا يمكن فصلهما عن بعض [أي أنها شيء واحد] ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد. - This pair of socks is blue. (SB page 35) - The socks are wet now.

2 wood – a wood

* wood

خشب

Doors are made of wood.

* a wood

غابة (SB page 34)

- There is a small wood near my house.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Prepositions on top of about two kilometres away at night على بعد ٢ كيلومتر on the roof بأبواب ذات لون أحمر على السطح with red doors (be) made of (be) sure of مصنوع من





Skills





Pop Quiz تدرب على ١٠ من قطع الفهم وتصوص الاستماع

on Lesson 1 WB page 93

Boy 1: What is a car made of?

Boy 2: That's a difficult question! It's made of a lot of things.

For example, a car door⁽¹⁾ is made of metal⁽²⁾ and the windows are made of glass.

Boy 1: What are the seats(3) made of, where you sit?

Boy 2: I think expensive car seats are made of **leather**⁽⁴⁾. My father's car is not expensive. The seats are made of **plastic**⁽⁵⁾.

(1) باب السيارة (2) معدن (3) مقاعد (4) جلد (5) بلاستيك



on Lesson 2 SB page 36

In Ancient Egypt⁽¹⁾, there was a village⁽²⁾ called Deir el-Medina. The people from the village worked in the Valley of the Kings⁽³⁾. There were 68 houses.

The walls⁽⁴⁾ of the houses were made of bricks⁽⁵⁾ and the doors were made of wood⁽⁶⁾. The people painted⁽⁷⁾ their houses white, with red doors.

The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there weren't any bedrooms. People usually slept on the **roof**⁽⁸⁾ because it was very hot at night.



Deir El-Madina

There was usually an **oven**⁽⁹⁾ for bread in the kitchen, but there weren't any **taps**⁽¹⁰⁾. People got their water from the **Nile valley**⁽¹¹⁾, about two kilometres away.

(6) خشب	(5) <mark>قوالب طوب</mark>	(4) حوائط	(3) وادى الملوك	(2) قرية	(1) مصر القديمة	
	(11) وادى النيل	(10) حنفیات	(9) فرن	(8) سطح (المنزل)		

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vo	cabulary			
1. My	is mad	le of leather.		
a. ta	ble	b. wallet	c. television	d. statue
2. We		to make bread		
a. ta	р	b. spoon	c. knife	d. oven
3. The	wall is made			
a. s t	one	b. wool	c. cloth	d. leather
4. You	can turn on	the to get w		
	ape	1.00		d. toy
5. The				in Deir El-Medina.
a. b	rakes	b. bricks	c. breaks	d. bread
SB , WI	8 & Previou	s Exams		
6.	is the	material from the		
a. L	eather	b. Stone	c. Glass	d. Cotton
		did they th		
		b. design		
8.	Expensive ca			manhour - Beheira 2023,
a. w	vindows	b. doors		d. bags
9. Mos	st windows a	re made of	(1)	Kafi Sagr - Sharkia 2022)
a. w	rool	b. glass	c. cotton	d. paper
10,	are made	of cotton.	(1	El Roda - Damietta 2022,
a. Ta	ables	b. Cushions	c. Lamps	d. Televisions
Definit	ions			
11. The	is the	top part of a build		
V170.0+10-	edroom	b. wall		d. roof
12	is a soft m	naterial that is mad		
a. V	/ood	b. Wool	c. Leather	d. Glass
El-Moa	sser Exerci:	ses		8.0.
13. Tea	spoons and s	some pots are mad	le of	
a M	nol .	b leather	c. cotton	d. metal



14. Most children's toys are made o	f
a. leather b. paper	c. plastic d. glass
▶ Language Notes, Expressions &	Prepositions
15. My house is about three kilome	tres
a. way b. away	c. of d. out
2. Speaking	مهارة التحدث
Asking and answering about when the Asking and Asking and Asking about when the Asking and Asking about when the Asking and Asking a	nat things are made of : جيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن المادة التي تصنع منها الأشياء
Questions	Answers
• What's your pencil case made of ? مما تصنع مقلمتك ؟	- It's made of plastic. تصنع من البلاستيك.
• What's your bag made of ? مما تصنع حقيبتك ؟	l'm not sure; l think it's made of leather أنا غير متأكد. أعتقد أنها تصنع من الجلد.
• What are the cushions made of ? مما تصنع الوسادات؟	- They are made of cotton. تصنع من القطن.
Report of the Park of the Par	مهارة الكتابة
Deir el-Medina :	بر المدينة :
1. Deir el-Medina was a village in and	ient Egypt. . كانت دير المدينة قرية في مصر القديمة.
2. The people from this village worke	d in the Valley of the Kings. . كان يعمل الناس من هذه القرية في وادي الملوك.
3. There were 68 houses.	۲. کان پوجد بها ۱۸ منزلًا،
4. The walls of the houses were made	of bricks. ع. كانت حوائط البيوت مصنوعة من الطوب.
5. The houses had no bedrooms.	ه. كانت لا توجد غرف للنوم في تلك المنازل.
6. They painted their houses white w ن أحمر.	ith red doors. ت. كانت المنازل مطلية باللون الأبيض مع أبواب ذات لور

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues للحصول على أغلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ عمد الصفحة باستمرار.

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & Emails

Step 1	Vocabulary اختبر اتقائك للمفردات اللغوية	Speaking Speaking اختبر مدى اتقائك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
Read and	Read and complete: 1. A. What are the shoes?	Complete the following dialogue: Heba asks Wafaa about her new leather shoes. Heba: I like your new shoes, what are they	Write a paragraph on : "What things are made of"
8. They	مصنوع من They are made of leather.	made of ? Wafaa:(1) Heba:When did you buy them? Wafaa:(2)	
2. A. Whei	2. A. When did you buy them ? B. I them yesterday.	Heba: (3) Wafaa: My dad bought them for me. Heba: (4)	
*)	اشتریت	 Wataa : Because it was my birthday. Heba : Well, can you come with me to buy a pair of shoes for me? Wafaa : (5) 	
		a-P	
1. A. What B. It's al	1. A. What is this book about? 8. It's about	Helmi and Ahmed are talking about a book. Helmi : Hi, Ahmed. What are you doing? Ahmed : Hi, Helmi. (1)	Write an email about : "Deir el-Medina"
2. A. in this	houses were there in this village?	Helmi: What is this book about? Ahmed:(2) Helmi: Deir el-Medina! What is this?	
8. Ther	8. There were 68 houses.	Ahmed:(3) Helmi:(4) Ahmed:The people from this village worked	
		in the Valley of the Kings. Helmi:(5) Ahmed: There were 68 houses.	



III Language

1. is/are made of

١] لوصف المادة الخام المصنوع منها شيء ما نستخدم:

Illustrated examples



is made of





are made of



ex. - The television is made of glass and plastic.

- Curtains are made of cotton.

-The wallet is made of leather.

٢] للسؤال عن المادة التي صنع منه الشيء نستخدم :

What is ♣ اسم شئ مفرد (Singular) للسؤال عن شئ مفرد # made of * (Singular للسؤال عن شئ مفرد • • what is the sofa made of * • The sofa is made of leather.

What are ♣ اسم شئ جمع made of ? [plural] اسم شئ جمع # what are .
• The statues are made of stone.

تذڪر Remember

الأسماء التي تُعد والتي لا تُعد : Countable and uncountable nouns

-Countable nouns-

الأسماء التي تعد [لها جمع]

Uncountable nouns-

الأسماء التى لا تعد (ليس لها جمع) وتعامل معاملة المفرد أى يأتى بعدها فعل في صيغة المفرد

an apple	تفاحة	apples
a potato	ثمرة بطاطس	potatoes
a man	رجل	men
an ox	ثور	oxen
a loaf	رغيف خبز	loaves
a child	طفل	children
a lentil	حية عدس	lentils

- ex. Dates are delicious.
 - Meat is my favourite food.

وقت time	ماء water
furniture أثاث	نقود money
ملح salt	sugar سکر
نصيحة advice	news اخبار
gold خهب	information معلومات
خبز bread	ملوخية molokhia
koshari کشری	lamb لحم الحمل

(تعد) الا تعداً

2. There was / There were

کان یوجد

(۱) في صيغة الإثبات: : Affirmative)

There was

There was إكان يوجد] وبأتى بعدها اسم مفرد يعد أو اسم لا يعد السم مفرد عد أو اسم لا يعد السم مفرد عد أو اسم لا يعد السم مفرد السم مغرد عد أو اسم لا يعد السم مغرد عد أو اسم لا يعد السم عن المؤلفة عن المؤلفة المؤل

ex. - There was a sofa in the living room.

- There was rice in the kitchen.



(٦) في صيغة النفي : : Negative (٢)

There was not [wasn't] + عدر اسم لا بعد ex. - There wasn't a storm yesterday.

There were not [weren't] + اسم جمع بعد ex. - There weren't any cars in that street.

تذڪر Remember

- Was there any salad in the dish?



Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

▶ S	B, WB & Previo	us Exams		
	1. W The pan a	nd the statue ar	e of metal	
	a. made	b. make	c. makes	d. making
	2. In ancient	Egypt, there	a village call	ed Deir el-Medina.
	a. is	b. was	c. were	d. are
	3. In The sofa		eather.	(Benha - Qalyoubia 2023)
	a. are	b. were	c. is	d. am
	4. There a			(Maadi - Cairo 2022)
	a. aren't	b. haven't	c. weren't	d. wasn't
			.There any	
	a. wasn't	b. weren't		d. aren't
			and the second s	ago? (Nasr City - Cairo 2023)
	a. Was	b. Were	c. Are	d. Is
	7. 🔢 What		the photos made	
	a. am	b. is	c. are	d. was
DE	I-Moasser Exerc	ises		
	8. There I		Egypt.	
	a. haven't	b. hadn't	c. were	d. was
	9 the sho		ther?	
	a. Is	b. Does	c. Are	d. Do
	10. There a		ent Egypt.	
0	a. weren't	b. wasn't	c. are	d. isn't
2	Complete the ser	ntences with the	e correct form of	the word(s) in brackets:
D 5	B & WB Exercise	es		
	1. 33 There	(were) any be	drooms in their h	nouses
	2.			louses.
	3. W My bed is			
N F	I-Moasser Exerc	RANGE MANGE BUILDING MANGES BOX	wood.	
	4(When)			
	5. There (a			•
	6. The scissors	nillanna or govern or na confidencial		
	7 (ls) the			
	There weren't.	(some) ta	ps in ancient Equ	nt.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

d. plastic

1	Understand	O Apply	Create		
	Listen and cho	ose the c	orrect ans	swer from a, b, c	ord:
				ر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص	
	1. A car door is i	1915 - 18 S			
	a. metal	b. pl a	stic	c. glass	d. gold
	2. Car are	made of g	glass.		
	a. doors	b. sea	ats	c. windows	d. tires
	3. Expensive car	r are	made of l	eather.	
	a. seats	b. wi i	ndows	c. doors	d. motors
	4. Some car sea	ts are made	e of		
	a. plastic	b. m e	etal	c. glass	d. wood
2	Choose the co	rrect ansv	ver from a	, b, c or d:	
•	1. Most bags are	e made of .		(Ezhet El	Borg - Damietta 2022)
•	1. Most bags are a. leather			(Ezhet El .	<i>Borg - Damietta 2022)</i> d. metal
,		b. we	ather	c. wood	
	a. leather 2. I need a sharp	b. we	ather cut the wa	c. wood termelon.	
	a. leather 2. I need a sharp	b. we b. ove	ather cut the wa en	c. wood termelon. c. scarf	d. metal
	a. leather 2. I need a sharp a. teaspoon	b. we b. ove	ather cut the wa en cook food	c. wood termelon. c. scarf	d. metal
	a. leather2. I need a sharpa. teaspoon3. We have a/an	b. we b. ove b. ove b. sea	ather cut the wa en cook food i	c. wood termelon. c. scarf in. c. air conditione	d. metal
	a. leather2. I need a sharpa. teaspoon3. We have a/ana. oven	b. we b. ove b. ove b. sea ot, people	ather cut the wa en cook food i at used papy	c. wood termelon. c. scarf in. c. air conditione	d. metal
	a. leather 2. I need a sharp a. teaspoon 3. We have a/an a. oven 4. In	b. we b. ove b. sea ot, people	ather cut the wa en cook food i at used papy	c. wood termelon. c. scarf in. c. air conditione rus for writing. c. ancient	d. metal d. knife r d. knife
	a. leather 2. I need a sharp a. teaspoon 3. We have a/an a. oven 4. In Egyp a. new	b. we b. ove b. sea ot, people	ather cut the wa en cook food i at used papy odern ut the Ston	c. wood termelon. c. scarf in. c. air conditione rus for writing. c. ancient	d. metal d. knife r d. knife
	a. leather 2. I need a sharp a. teaspoon 3. We have a/an a. oven 4. In Egyp a. new 5. What do you	b. web. b. web. b. over b. sea ot, people b. moknow about b. Yea	ather cut the wa en cook food i at used papy odern ut the Ston	c. wood termelon. c. scarf in. c. air conditioner rus for writing. c. ancient e	d. metal d. knife d. knife d. knife
	a. leather 2. I need a sharp a. teaspoon 3. We have a/an a. oven 4. In Egyp a. new 5. What do you a. Page	b. web. b. web. b. over b. sea ot, people b. moknow about b. Yea	ather cut the wa en cook food i at used papy odern ut the Ston ar	c. wood termelon. c. scarf in. c. air conditioner rus for writing. c. ancient e	d. metal d. knife d. knife d. knife

a. leather

b. metal

c. cotton

Welcome to my home	nel	ho	mv	to	come	Wel
--------------------	-----	----	----	----	------	-----

Ó	8 there t	raditional houses i	n the past ?	(Luxor 2023)
	a. Is	b. Are	c. Were	d. Was
0	9. Were there	kitchens in th	ne past ?	
	a. some	b. so	c. any	d. a
0	10. What's your s	hirt made?		(Belbes - Sharkia 2023)
	a. on	b. of	c. up	d. into
3	Complete the s	entences with the	e correct form of	the word(s)
0	in brackets:		5.5.5 <u>.1.5.5.1.6.1.6.1.6.</u>	
	1(Was)	there taps in ancie	ent Egypt ?	
	2. B Lamps ar	e made (by) glass.	
		(is) the car seats m	175	
	4. There	(aren't) any pupils	in the class vester	dav.
4	Write a paragr	aph of about EIG	HTY (80) words	ميناب منه تي يبايه الكتاب)
		"Deir el-	Medina"	
		••••••		
l.				
ŀ				······································
	***************************************	***************************************		······
			•••••••	
1			(Shibin E	l-Oanater - Oalvohia 2023)

Lessons -

3 & 4

SB pages 38:40 WB pages 95 & 96





Key Vocabulary

electricity (n)	كهرباء	robot (n)	إنسان آلي
drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار	swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة
3D printer (n)	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد		مهندس معماری
safer (adj)	أكثر أمانا	wind turbines (n)	
accident (n)	حادث	ك تعمل بقوة الرياح]	توربينات الرياح (محركان
warm (adj)	دافئ	machine (n)	آلة
space (n)	فراغ / مساحة	Earth (n)	كوكب الأرض
material (n)	مادة خام	rocket (n)	صاروخ
driverless car (n)	سيارة بدون سائق	earthquake (n)	زلزال - هزة أرضية
electric car (n)	سيارة كهربائية	moon (n)	قمر
solar panels (n)	الألواح الشمسية	igloo (n)	منزل من الجليد

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

Igloo - Electric - earthquake - materials

- 1. Houses fell to the ground after the
- 2. cars are safer than oil cars.
- 3. is a house made of ice and snow.

Lesson 3 SB pages 38 & 39 WB page 95

sign (n)	علامة - إشارة	apartment (n)	شقة سكنية
petrol (n)	ېنزين	parcels (n)	طرود بريدية
produce (d) (v)	ينتج	predictions (n)	تنبؤات
robot teacher (n)	المعلم الآلي (charger (n)	شاحن [کھریی]
podcast (n)	نشرة صوتية / برنامج إذاعي	presenter (n)	مقدم برامج
guest (n)	The second secon	land telephone (n)	تليفون أرضى
recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير	palm tree (n)	نخلة



Lesson 4 SB page 40 WB page 96

area (n)	مساحة / منطقة	Mongolia (n)	جمهورية منغوليا
suddenly (adv)	فجأة	Burkina Faso (n)	دولة بوركينا فاسو
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	Canada (n)	دولة كندا
ground (n)	أرضية / أرض	cheaper (adj)	أرخص
reason (n)	سبب/مبرر	project (n)	مشروع
quieter (adj)	أكثر هدوئا	yurt (n)	خيمة دائرية الشكل

Shapes	أشكال
	اشكال

square	مربع	rectangle	مستطيل
circle	دائرة	triangle	مثلث

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY O			
cool	a nice temperature that is cold, but not too	بارد cold		
drone	a small flying object that you can control from the groun it has no pilot [بدون طيار] وق تعمل بالتحكم من على الأرض [بدون طيار]			
earthquake	a natural event when the ground suddenly mov	and the second s		
electricity	electric power	كهرباء		
yurt	a large circular tent that people can live in	خيمة دائرية الشكل		
warm	a nice temperature that is hot but not too ho	دافئ ot		
igloo	a house made of ice and snow	منزل من الجليد		
wind turbine	a machine that uses the wind to make electricity ن الرياح			
solar panel	a flat glass object that uses the sun to make electric	لوح خلية شمسية city		
driverless car	a car that can drive itself, without a driver	سيارة بدون <mark>س</mark> ائق		
space	an area that you can move around in مساحة			
rocket	an object that can travel to space	صاروخ ٰ		

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms	and Antor	nyms	tal Inc.	مترادفات وم <mark>ت</mark> ضادات
Word a	الكلم	المرادف <mark>Synonym</mark>	Antonym /Op	المضاد posite
ordinary	عادي	usual	special	خاص/مميز
positive	إيجابي	good / helpful	negative	سلبی
warm	دافئ	hot	cold / cool	لطيف/ بارد
reason	سبب	cause	result	نتبجة

Prefixes & Suffixes	5	بة الحالة	مقاطع بادئة وناهي
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Exampl	أمثلة <mark>es</mark>
-er	تحول الفعل لاسم	presenter charger	مقدم برامج شاحن
-less	تعطى عكس الكلمة	driverless	بلا سائق
-ion	تحول الفعل لاسم	prediction	تنبؤ

W/	Exercise	on Vocabulary Stud	
		t answer from a, b, c or d:	

1. The synonym o	of the word "ordina	ry" is "" .	
a. special	b. usual	c. hot	d. cold
2. "Warm" and "c	old" are		
a. synonyms	b. antonyms	c. prefixes	d. suffixes
3. We can get the	e noun of the verb	"charge" by addi	ng the suffix "'
ament	ber	ction	dly
4. "Good" and "	" have the san	ne meaning.	
a nositive	b negative		d. warm



General Notes on Reading & Listening

electricity – electric

* electricity (n)

كهرباء

- ▶ The High Dam produces electricity.
- * electric (adj)

کھرہی

- People will all use electric cars.

(Reading on Lesson 3 SB page 38)

2 round / around

* round (adj)

دائری / مستدیر

- Many traditional houses in the past were round.
- * around (adv)

حول

We hear birds singing around us.

(Reading on Lesson 4 SB page 40)

🔞 sign – signal

* sign

لافته - لوحة إرشادية

- This sign means you mustn't smoke here.
- * signal

إشارة (ضوئية - صوتية)

- He gave me a signal to start driving.

(SB page 38)



Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
design buildings	يصمم مباني	a sign for	علامة لــ
make predictions	يقوم بعمل تنبؤات	under the sea	تحت البحر
heavy snow	ثلج كثيف	fall from the roof	يسقط من السطح
How fantastic!	كم هو شئ رائع !	fall to the ground	يسقط على الأرض
make electricity	یولد کهرباء	In what ways ?	لأي مدي؟
do the housework	يقوم بأعمال المنزل	homes for the future	منازل المستقبل



Skills

Reading and Listening

Listening

Pop Quiz قطع القهم ونصوص الاستما

on Lesson 3 SB page 38

Presenter

: Hello, welcome to our

podcast(1): Homes of the Future. Today we have a special guest(2)

- Dina Hassan, She is a famous

architect(3). Hello Dina.

Dina : Hello.

Interviewer: What does an architect do?

: Well, I design buildings (4) such Dina

as houses or schools. I think about what materials(5) to use

and I draw pictures of it.

Interviewer: What are you designing at the

moment?

: I'm working on a project (6) for houses for the future. They'll Dina

be a bit different to our houses today.

Interviewer: In what ways will they be different?







(1) نشرة صوتية (2) ضيف مميز (3) مهندس معماري مشهور (4) يصمم مباني (5) مواد خام

Dina : Well, I think we'll need more gardens in the future, but there

won't be much space⁽⁷⁾. So the garden will be on the roof.

Interviewer: A garden on the roof, great!

Dina : And I think people will all use electric cars (8) in the future,

so there'll be chargers (9) for electric car next to the house.

Interviewer: How will people get their electricity?

There'll be lots of solar panels (10) and a wind turbine (11).

They'll make the electricity.

Interviewer: Great. What else will be different in 2050?

Dina : Well, I think there will be robots to do all the housework.

Interviewer: Fantastic! Will people use drones (12)?

: Yes, I think drones will bring food and parcels (13) to the house.

Interviewer: What materials will the house be made of?

:We will use plastic bricks (14) that are very strong. We'll also

use a lot of glass and metal. Look, here's a picture of what

it will look like.

Interviewer: Oh it's beautiful. Thank you very much Dina for talking to

us. I think I'll like living in this house!

(10) الواح شمسية	(9) شواحن	(8) سيارات كهربية	(7) فراغ / مساحة
(14) قوالب طوب بلاستيكية	(13) طرود بریدیة	(12) طائرات بدون طیار	(11) توربین الریاح



on Lesson 3 SB page 39

Holidays on the moon

In 2080, you won't go to the beach for your holiday⁽¹⁾. You will go to the moon! There will be rockets⁽²⁾ that leave Earth⁽³⁾ every day, and the journey⁽⁴⁾ will take only 12 hours. They will be very fast!





Driverless cars

In 2080, people won't drive a car. We will all have a driverless car⁽⁵⁾. They will be safer⁽⁶⁾ and there won't be any accidents(7). Students will read a book or watch TV when a computer on the car drives them to school!



Answer

the following questions:

- Critical thinking skill

Why not?

مصارة التفكير النقدى

(5) سيارة بلا سائة. Learn 1. Do you like to have a driverless car ? Why /

(6) اکثر امانًا (7) حوادث

- Yes, I do. I think it will be safer and comfortable.

Practise 2. Why do you think people will like to go to the

on Lesson 4 SB page 40



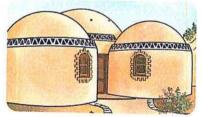
An igloo(1) in Canada



A round house in Burkina Faso



A yurt⁽²⁾ in Mongolia



A round house in Siwa

Round houses around the world

Many traditional (3) houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons !!

(1) منزل من الجليد (2) خيم دائرية الشكل تستخدم كمنزل متنقل (3) تقليدي (4) حديث (5) أسباب / مبررات

A **round shape**⁽⁶⁾ means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an **earthquake**⁽⁷⁾ or in **strong winds**⁽⁸⁾. Also, heavy **snow**⁽⁹⁾ or **rain**⁽¹⁰⁾ will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to **keep** warm⁽¹¹⁾ or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a **rectangle**⁽¹²⁾ or **square**⁽¹³⁾

Finally, a round building uses fewer materials (so it is **cheaper to** make⁽¹⁴⁾). It also has more space inside. How fantastic!

	(6) شکل دائری	(7) زلزال	(8) رياح شديدة	(9) جلید	ubo (10)
-	(11) يحتفظ بالدفء	(12) مستطيل الشكل	(13) مربع الشكل	(14) ارخص	ر في البناء

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary			
1 cars g	o without a driver.		d. Colourless
	b. Driverless		d. Colouriess
2 help u	is to produce electric	ity.	
a. Robots		b. Solar panels	
c. Swimming pools		d. Cameras	
	t use oil in the future,	so they will use	cars.
a. plastic	b. electric	c. toy	d. gas
SB , WB & Prev			
4. MA nice ter	nperature that is hot	but not too hot i	s called
a. freezing	b. cold	c. boiling	d. warm
5. 3 Driverless	s cars will be safer and		
a. ideas	b. apartments	c. chargers	d. accidents
6. @ The	is a machine tha	at can fly, but it d	oesn't have a pilot.
a. drone	b. robot	c. panel	d. charger
7. People in Jap	pan use simple	. to build their ho	ouses. (Armant - Luxor 2023)
	b. accidents	c. materials	d. wind
8. I want a good to design my villa.		(Matrouh 2023)	
	b. pilot	c. driver	d. teacher



▶ El-Moasser Exercises

	Students, in the form	uture, won't need	to go to schools.	They will depend
ā	a. painters	b. cookers	c. teachers	d. doctors
10.1	Ve can plant mo	re trees as we have	e much in t	he garden.
	a. petrol	b. space	c. earth	d. electricity
Defi	nitions			
11.6	The wind	is a machine th	at uses the wind t	o make electricity.
	a. panel	b. turbine	c. drone	d. wave
12.	\/An is a h	ouse that is made	of ice and snow.	
ā	a. drone	b. igloo	c. project	d. ground
13.	\/An is a n	atural event wher	n the ground sudo	lenly moves.
	a. earthquake		c. storm	d. tornado
Lang	guage Notes, E	xpressions & Pr	epositions	
14. 9	She can't climb th	ne mountain beca	use she's afraid to	•
ā	ı. fail	b. fill	c. feel	d. fall
15.5	cientists p	predictions for the	future every day.	
а	ı. take	b. see	c. do	d. make
2. s	peaking			مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about the future and opinions:

Answers
- There will be electric cars.
- I don't think so / I'm not sure.
- I think we will have driverless cars.
- I agree with you. / I disagree with you.

Speaking & Writing Corner

اللحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues قم يحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة باستمرار 80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & Emails

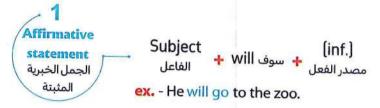
Step । Vocabulary		Step 3 Writing
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	احتبر مدى القالك لمهارة الكتابة
Read and complete:	Complete the following dialogue: Rami and Nader are talking about their	Write a paragraph on : "Future plans"
1. A. Where are you going next	plans.	
week: الصحراء Nilele ale ye	or going next week.	
2. A	Rami: The desert!(2)	
2.	انانا : (3) المادي (3)	***************************************
in in الاستقادة المناسخوال		
	Rami: (5) Nader: That's great idea. I like diving, too. (Samasta / Beni Suef 2023)	dea. I like diving, too. (Samasta / Beni Suef 2023)
1 \ What is the book about ?	Marwa and Hala are talking about a book. Write an email about:	Write an email about:
B. It's about	Marwa: Hi, Hala. What are you doing?	"Round houses"
المنازل الدائرية		
2. A. Why are they?		***************************************
رخيص	Hala: Yes, they are very strong.	
B. Because they use few	La	
materials.	Marwa: Fewer materials! Do you like living	
	In a round nouse ? Hala :(5)	

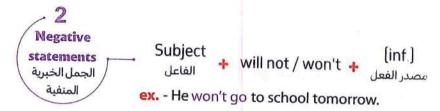


III Language

The future with "will": [will] المستقبل باستخدام

التكوين Formation





A) Yes / No question:

أ) السؤال بـ «هل» :



Will + subject الفاعل + (inf,) + ?

ex. - Will you play football with me?
- Yes, I will. - No, I won't.

B) Wh - question:

ب] السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word + will + subject الفاعل + [inf.] + ?

الاستخدام Usage •

Prediction without evidence:

تستخدم (will+ inf.) عند التنبؤ بأحداث في المستقبل (بدون دليل واضح على حدوث الشئ) تأتي معها كلمات مثل :

I'm sure	expect	think	hope	probable	probably	perhaps
أنا متأكد	يتوقع	عقيق	يتمنى	1	من المحتمل	

هنا في هذه الجملة اتحدث عن رأبي في الطقس ولكن ليس معى دليل إذا ما كان الطقس سيكون لطيفًا أم لا. **ex.** - I think the weather will be nice later.

♦ كما يمكن ان تستخدم في الحالات الأتية

1) Quick decision:

ex. - I'm hungry. I'll have a sandwich.

- The phone is ringing, I'll answer it.

2) Request:

ex. - Will you shut the door, please?

3) Offer:

ex. - I will help you with your homework.

4) Facts in the future:

(۲) عند خرر حقیقة فی المستقبل:

Ex. - I will help you with your homework.

Exercises on Language

ex. - Next year, I will be 17 years old.

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB , WB & Previous Exams

use cheap mater	ials for buildi	ng nouses in the luture.
b. has	c. will	d. are
		(Wasta - Beni Suif 2023)
e be like in cities in t	he future ?	(Al-Amiriya - Alexandria 2022)
b. was	c. were	d. will
drive a car in	2080.	(Itsa - Faiyum 2022)
b. won't	c. don't	d. didn't
n't all electric	cars.	
b. use	c. using	d. uses
we have pet	rol cars anym	ore. (Girga - Sohag 2023)
		d. don't
Dina think people w	vill the	ir electricity?
b. get	c. gets	d. getting
will food and	parcels to the	e house.
	c. bring	d. brought
~. ~99		(Desouk - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)
	b. has e be like in cities in t b. was drive a car in b. won't n't all electric b. use we have pet to b. isn't going to Dina think people w	b. was c. were b. was c. were drive a car in 2080. b. won't c. don't n't all electric cars. b. use c. using we have petrol cars anymeto b. isn't going to c. won't Dina think people will the b. get c. gets will food and parcels to the b. bringing c. bring



8. There w	ill lots of so	olar panels.				
a. being	b. been	c. be	d. to be			
▶ El-Moasser Ex	ercises					
9. My brother	be 17 years	old next month.				
a. is going	b. will	c. have to	d. might			
10. Will she	a garden on th	e roof ?				
a. has	b. had	c. having	d. have			
11. What time v	vill you to b	ed tonight?				
a. go	b. goes	c. going	d. to go			
	robably visit us to	morrow.				
a. is	b. will	c. has	d. does			
2. Complete th	e sentences wit	h the correct form	of the word(s)			
in brackets:						
▶ SB & WB Exerc	ises					
1. 🔢 I think w	/e (would) l	ive on the moon; it	is my dream.			
2. WB What wi	2. What will holidays (been) like in the future ?					
3. 🔢 The jour	ney will (to	ok) only 12 hours.				
	't (goes) to					
▶ El-Moasser Ex	ercises					
5. I think we w	ill(having)	solar panels on plai	nes in the future.			
	year, we will buy					
7. Perhaps, he	(call) me to	visit our friend tom	norrow.			
		this heavy box, ple				
	(happens) ne					
	(to build) house					

General Exercises

LESSONS 3 & 4

	Understand	O Apply	Create		
1	Listen and ch	oose the c	orrect an	swer from a, b,	cord:
0					استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ-
	1 will d				
	a. Rabbits	b. Brick	S	c. Robots	d. Ropes
	2. We will build	l houses usi	ng		
	a. glass	b. plast	ic	c. wood	d. iron
	Plastic bricks				d. hard
	a. expensive	b. terril		c. cheap	a. nara
	4. The text is al a. in the past			c. in the future	d. today
24	Complete th				
Ĭ	Ahmed is aski	ng Ramy ab	out his job).	
	Ahmed: What				
	Ramy : (1)				
	Ahmed: (2)				
	Ramy : An ar				
	Ahmed: What	t are you do	ing at the	moment?	
	Ramy : (3)				
	Ahmed: A ho	use!Where	will the g	arden be ?	
	Ramy : (4)				
	Ahmed: Oh! (
	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH		be on the	roof because the	re won't be much
	spac	e.			(Al Másara - Cairo 2022)
3	Choose the	correct ans	wer from	a,b,cord:	
0	1. Wind turbine	es can be us	ed for		o Hammad - Sharkia 2023
	a. taking	b. mak		c. doing	d. reading
0	2.1 a big	The state of the s			d taking
	a. will take	b. take	25	c. was taking	d. taking

0	3. In the future,	people will use a	that flies	without a pilot.	
	a. taxi	b. robot	c. drone	d. boat	
0	4. A/An is	a large circular tent	that people can I	ive in. <i>(El Badari - Assiut 2022</i>	21
	a. drone	b. yurt	c. igloo	d. rocket	
9	5. There will be .	for electric o	ars next to the	houses.	
	a. chargers	b. freezers	c. fridges	d. drinks	
6	6. When there's	a/an, we fee	el the ground su	iddenly moves.	
	a. volcano	b. earthquake	c. wind	d. storm	
		ve the Earth to the	moon.		
	a. Rackets	b. Guns	c. Planes	d. Rockets	
1	8. Solar panels g	et their energy fro	m the		
	a. moon	b. sun	c. planet	d. earth	
		robot teachers	in the future?	(Desouk - Kafr El-Sheikh 2023	3)
	a. is	b. are	c. be	d. were	13
)	10. Where will you	uon holiday	/?		
	a. going	b. go	c. goes	d. went	
Į.	Complete the	sentences with t	he correct for	m of the word(s) in	
)	brackets:			or the word(s) in	
	1. WB I think we	e (have) mor	e robots in our	schools in 2080	
	2. What ma	terials will the hou	se (heind	n) made of 2	
		ı(doing) ne)) made of :	
		. (to have) driverle			
-	·				
)	Write a paragr	aph of about EIG	HTY (80) word	s on : إصاب عبد الحق يزيالا الكانات	
			d houses"	(Beni Mazar - Minia 2023)	

Lessons -

SB pages 41 & 42 WB pages 97 & 98



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

amazing (adj)	مدهش ،	footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
timeline (n)	جدول زمنی / تسلسل زمنی	diagram (n)	رسم توضیحی
divide (d) (v)	نقسم	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
creative (adi)	مبتکر / ابداء .	calendar(n)	نتيجة/تقويم



تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

diagrams - calendar - divided - amazing - technology

- 1. All the ideas Ali suggested were
- 2. Our teacher us into two groups.
- 3. You should look at the to know today's date.
- 4. Making helps students to learn easily.

Lesson 5 SB page 41 WB page 97

events (n)	African (adj)		افريقي	
European (adj)	اوروبی	Champions League (n)	دورى الأبطال	
Switzerland (n)		date (n)	تاريخ	

Lasson 6 SB page 42 WB page 98

مهمة	decide (d) (v)	يقرر / بحدد
تفاصيل	shape (n)	شکل
يفسر/يشرح	introductory (n)	فقرة تمهيدية
عنوان/رأس الموضو	topic sentence (n)	جملة رئيسية
خیال/ تخیل	compare (d) (v)	يقارن
	تفاصيل يفسر / يشرح عنوان / رأس الموضو	مهمة decide (d) (v) shape (n) introductory (n) topic sentence (n) compare (d) (v)

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

المضارع Present		الماضى <mark>Past</mark>	التصريف الثالث .P.P
keep	يحافظ / يحتفظ	kept	kept
bear		bore	born



Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

imagination	using the mind to think creatively	خيال
round	with a shape like a circle	دائری

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms	and Antor	ت	مترادفات ومتضادا	
Word a	الكلم	المرادف Synonym	Antonym /Opp	المضاد oosite
amazing	مذهل	wonderful	bad	سىء
keep	يحتفظ	store	lose / waste	یفقد / یهدر
different	مختلف	unlike	similar	متشابه

Prefixes & Suffixe	es	ية	مقاطع بادئة وناه
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Exampl	es أمثلة
-er	تحول الكلمة إلى الاسم الذي يقوم بالفعل	footballer	لاعب كرة قدم
-ive	تحول الفعل لصفة	creative	مبدع
-tion	تحول الفعل لاسم	imagination	خيال

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The antonym	of the word "keep"	is "".	
a. take	b. store	c. lose	d. bear
2. "Amazing" an	d "" have the :	same meaning.	
a. boring	b. wonderful	c. lazy	d. happy
3. We can get th	e noun from the wor	d "football" by add	ling the suffix ""
aing	ber	cment	dive
4. "Different" an	d "Similar" are	•	
 a. prefixes 	b. suffixes	c. synonyms	d. antonyms



General Notes on Reading & Listening

move house = move to a new house

ينتقل إلى منزل جديد

- Last year, I moved house / moved to a new house in Giza.

(Listening on Lesson 5 WB page 97)

[مكان/سنة] ... (be) born in ...

ولد في

Jana was born in 2008.

(Listening on Lesson 5 WB page 97)

3 learn + (how) to + inf.

يتعلم أن

- I learned (how) to ride a bike when I was young.

(SB page 41)

A in detail

بالتفصيل

- Tell me everything about you in detail.

(SB page 42)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

	Expre	essions	
have fun	يستمتع	I hope so anyway	أتمني ذلك على أي حال
as many as you can	بقدر ما تستطيع	change my ideas	أغير أفكاري
European Champion	ns League	start school	يبدأ دراسة
		make a plan	يضع خطة
draw a plan	يرسم خطة	look like	يشبه
		sitions	
play for	يلعب لصالح [فريق]	compare with	یقارن بـ
different to / from	مختلف عن	write down	يدون / يسجل

Skills

Reading and Listening



قطع الفهم

on Lesson 6 SB page 42

How to plan⁽¹⁾ a creative⁽²⁾ writing task

First, think of as many ideas(3) as you can. What will the house look like(4)? What will it be made of ? What will be different to houses of today? You can write down (5) or draw your ideas.



(1) يخطط (2) إبداعي (3) أفكار (4) يشبه (5) يدّون



Use your **imagination**⁽⁶⁾ and **have fun!**⁽⁷⁾
Then, **decide**⁽⁸⁾ which of your ideas are the best. Keep the other ideas for another time.
Finally, think about your best ideas **in more detail**⁽⁹⁾. How can you make the ideas work?

Make a plan⁽¹⁰⁾ (maybe in a diagram⁽¹¹⁾ or drawing). You can change⁽¹²⁾ any ideas that don't work⁽¹³⁾.

(10) ضع خطة	(9) بتفاصیل أكثر	(8) اتخذ قرار	(7) استمتع	(6) خيال
1711	ة / لا تؤدى الفرض	(13) غير فعالنا	(12) يغير	(11) رسم توضیحی



on Lesson 6 WB page 98

1. No more journeys by plane

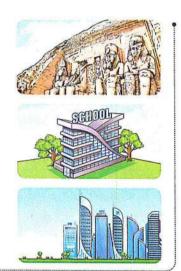
Today, I am going to describe what I think holidays will be like in the future.

2. The schools of tomorrow

I want to explain how I planned the school building you can see above.

3. Taller, cleaner, better

Today's cities are usually big, noisy and dirty, but what will they be like in the future?





on Lesson 5 WB page 97

Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El Mokawloon in 2010. He then moved to **Switzerland**⁽¹⁾ to **play for**⁽²⁾ Basel in 2012.

In 2014, he went to London to play for Chelsea. Three years later, in 2017, he went to play for Liverpool. Mohamed Salah was also **African Footballer of the Year**⁽³⁾ in 2017, and in 2019, he **won**⁽⁴⁾ the **European Champions League**⁽⁵⁾ with Liverpool.

(3) أفضل لاعب كرة قدم في أفريقيا لهذا العام | (4) فاز | (5) دوري أبطال أوروبا on Lesson 5 SB page 41 Listen and write the years: 2: twenty twenty 1: twenty fifty 4 : nineteen ninety-nine 3 : twenty thirty-five Basel's timeline(1). Basel: Hi, I'm Basel. These are the important events(2) in my life. I was born in 2007 in Alexandria. I started school in 2012. I liked my school! Hearned to ride a bike in 2013. I love my bike! In 2018, we moved house⁽³⁾. We live in Cairo now. In 2019, we went on holiday(4) to the Red Sea. It was amazing(5)! In 2023! I will climb Mount Kilimanjaro⁽⁶⁾ - I hope so anyway⁽⁷⁾! (2) احداث هامة (3) انتقل لمنزل جدید (4) ذهبنا فی اجازة (1) خط زمنی/تسلسل زمنی



on Vocabulary

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(6) جبل ڪليمنجارو (7) علي أي حال / بأي طريقة

Key vocabulary

1. Modern has improved our life a lot.

a. data

b. boat

c. technology

(5) مدهش

d. time

2. Write the important events in your life in your

a. time

b. timeline

c. map

d. corner

a. ancient

b. boring c. warm

d. amazing

▶ SB , WB & Previous Exams

4. WB Mohamed Salahthe European Champions League with Liverpool in 2019. (Mattaria - Cairo 2023)

a. won

b. bore

c. found

d. kept



	5. 👀 your	plans with o	ther students . Which p	lan is the best?
	a. Have	b. Think		d. Learn
			nned the school building	
	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	b. draw	c. compare	d. move
	El-Moasser Exercis	ses		
	7. My brother likes	numbers an	nd He wants to b	e a maths teacher.
	a. shells	b. tasks	c. shapes	d. shops
	8. I'm so busy on Fi		many to do.	
	a. reasons	b. risks	c. tasks	d. details
	9. Hatem was	in 2012. H	le's twelve years old nov	v.
	a. born	b, drawn	c. learned	d. kept
	10. What's the	today? - It	's Sunday, September 1	7, 2023.
	a. city	b. town	c. country	d. date
	11. All the ideas he			
	a. creative	b. round	c. alive	d. living
	Definitions			
	12. "" means v	with a shape	like a circle.	
	a. Amazing	b. Round	c. Creative	d. Modern
	13 means us	ing the min	d to think creatively.	
	a. Paining	b. Health	c. Imagination	d. Space
	Language Notes,	Expression	s & Prepositions	•
	14. I compared life i	n the city	the life in the coun	tryside
	a. on	b. with	c. from	d. at
	15. In 2012, Mr Ahm		a new house.	
	a. look	b. moved	c. born	d. lived
1	9 G			
	2. Speaking			مهارة التحدث
1				
***************************************	Saying years:			كيفية نطق السنوات :
	a We usually divid	e the years	into two parts : منابع	عادة ما نقسم السنوات لج
	2050 = twenty f	ifty		en seventy seven
	b For the year 200	170		
	2000 = two thou		•	أما بالنسبة لعام ٢٠٠٠ نقول
-				
	c For the years 20		, 05	أما بالنسبة للأعوام من ٢٠٠
	two thousand +	رقم number	0.000	- 1 (20) N (2)

2001 = two thousand and one / 2006 = two thousand and six

General **Exercises**

LESSONS 5 & 6 On Apply Understand Create

5	Listen and choo	se the correct a	nswer from a , b	, c or d :
1		لاستماع في نهاية الكتاب]	جابة الصحيحة (نصوص اا	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإح
-	1. I learned to	a bike in 2013		
-	a. drive	b. buy	c. ride	d. give
-	2. We went on a h	oliday toir	2015.	
	a. the River Nile	b. the Red Sea	c. Cairo	d. Alexandria
-	3. In , we m	oved house.		
-	a. 2013	b. 2018	c. 2012	d. 1990
	4. Now, we live in	•		
	a. Cairo	b. the Red Sea	c. Aswan	d. Luxor
9	Choose the corr	ect answer fron	na,b,cord:	
-	1. We need to	the cake into n	ine pieces.	
-	a. divide	b. explain	c. compare	d. answer
0	2. He writes the	of every day	in his diary.	
-	a. shapes	b. technology	c. events	d. headings
9	3. The sun has a ro	und		
I	a. colour		c. time	d. date
0	i. Las i was boili			
	a. in	b. on	c. at	d. by
0	5. Remember to be	e when you	ı plan your house	
-	a. active	b. creative	c. voluntary	d. related
-	6. My brother will	a mountair	n when he visits Ch	ina.
-	a. ride	b. climb	c. take	d. explain
-	7. He to buy	a new car after h	e had had money.	
	a. divided	b. decided	c. explained	d. kept
6	8. 💯 Enjoy your ti	me and have	····· •	(New Cairo - Cairo 2022)
-	a. fun	b. fan	c. fine	d. final

Welcome	to	my	home	
---------	----	----	------	--

9. What tir	ne we start p	laying football tomorro	OW ? (Samanod - Gharbia 2023)
a. did	b. will	c. do	d. have
10. ln 2030	, there many	good teachers at my	school.
a. are	b. were	c. will be	d. would be
Comple	te the sentences	with the correct for	m of the word(s)
in brack	rets:		
1. Salah	plays (to) Liv	erpool Football club.	
2. Write.	(on) your ow	n ideas.	
3. W W	e will (had) r	nodern technology in	the future.
4. Which	house will you live	e(on) ?	
D 100-14		CUEN (OO)	
		GHTY (80) words:	[بيجاب عنه في تهاية الكتاب
		ribe to her your plan f	
		our email address is da is ranahani@yahoo.co	areenadel@yahoo.com.
Tour me	nu s email address		
		is rananam@yanoo.co	om.
From	·		om.
			om.
From To	:		om.
From To Subjec	I		om.
From To Subjec	it:		om.
From To Subjec	i		
From To Subjec	i		
From To Subjec	i		
From To Subjec	i : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : : :		
From To Subjec	i		
From To Subjec	i		
From To Subject	i		



on unit 🚺

قيم مستواك ً يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
قطن cotton	1- Describing materials:	1. Saying what things
glass glass		are made of:
eather leather	lwg obce /is it/sybo	الحديث عن مما تصنع
معدن metal	What	الاشياء :
بلاستيك plastic	they / gas small	ex. What is the sofa
Stone stone	1	made of ?
oceids क्षेप्रक	made	- It is made of
roof roof	They are	leather.
حنفيات - صنابير taps	ex. What is the iumpe	- What are the
ألواح شمسية solar panels		cushions made
توريينات الرياح wind turbines		5 i
earthquake Jlj	2- will / won't for predictions :	- They are made
انسان آلی Libot	استخدام # won't / Will / Will / won't المستقبل :	or cotton.
tages	i s	2. Predicting the future
	Cubi Cilia	التنبو بما سيحدث في
	Jano) · (anc	المستقبل :
8		ex I think we will
,	ex. There will be electric cars in the future.	use driverless
ن oven	فرن	cars in 2050.
سيارة كهربائية electric car	We won't use landline telephones.	- I disagree. I
driverless cars	-Will we live on the moon?	think we'll all
سيارات بدون سائق	- Where will you live in the future?	use electric cars.



Extracting information

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة القراءة ومدى إتقانك لتلك المهارة.

◄ اقرآ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the questions:

Tema 2023) delicious meals and different dishes. It is always visited There are also a lot of restaurants where you can have ancient places. They visit the Egyptian Museum to see Cairo Tower where they can have a look on the whole by tourists from all over the world. They enjoy visiting gardens where families can go and spend nice time. Cairo is a big city. It is the capital of Egypt. About the ancient treasures and statues. They also visit the twenty million people live here. There are a lot of

 Where can tourists have a look on the whole city of Cairo? or) How can tourists have a look on the whole city of Cairo?

🏇 التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في استخراج معلومة.

🧀 مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أن الإجابة مبنية على ما ورد في القطعة.

Speaking

What things are made of

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

◄ اقرآ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Ashraf are talking about cars.

Ahmed: Hi, Ashraf. How are things?

Ashraf: (1).

Ahmed: (2)

Ashraf: I bought this car last week.

Ahmed: (3)?

Ahmed: What do you think of electric cars? Ashraf: Car seats are made of leather.

Ashraf: (4)

Ahmed: Do you think we will have driverless cars in the future?

Ashraf: (5)....

🐞 التحدى تريد السؤال عن [مما تصنع الأشياء والتنبؤ بما سيحدث في المستقبل] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها 🧐 مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع





Wirlteling

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة مهاراتك في التعبير عن موضوع ما. "للمزيد من التدريب كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزل."

🊵 التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن [منازل دير المدينة] و (أنواع المنازل حول العالم] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

🧐 مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية و كيفية استخدامها في تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Step 3 Paragraph	Write a paragraph on : "Houses of Deir El-Medina"	Write an email about: "Types of houses around the world" "
Step 2 Sentences	Fill in using vocabulary: 1. Deir el-Medina is a in ancient Egypt. 2. The walls were made of	1. Many
Step 1 Review your vocabulary	قرية طوب حار السطح	دافئ قوی مواد حدیث
Topic	Houses of Deir El-Medina	Types of houses around the world



d. had

C. Will

b. has

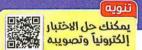
a. have

(Al-Muntazah - Alexandria 2023)

Questions collected from previous exams تدریبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة	rom previous exams تدریبات مجمعة من اختبا
 Complete the following dialogue: Hana and Sama are talking about houses in China. 	3. I'm not sure, I think made of cotton. a. it b. its c. is it d. it's (Edfu - Aswan 2022)
Hana: Did you travel to any place? Sama:(1)	4. Many chairs are made of
Sama : The houses are round. Hana : Strange! You mean they are looking like a	5. A/An is a large circular tent that people can live in. a. panel b. drone c. igloo d. yurt
circle. Sama :Yes, because there is a strong wind. Hana : (3)?	6. To build a house, you think of the design and the you will use.6. To build a house, you c. materials d. parts
Sama: Wood, but strong and cheap. Hana: (4)	7. The opposite of the word "ordinary" is "". a. modern b. negative c. special d. warm (Hehia - Sharkia 2023)
Hana: (5) (Farshout - Qena 2022)	8. A nice temperature that is cold but not too cold is called (Isna - Qena 2023)
2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. The Ancient Egyptians built for making bread in their kitchens. (Menouf - Menofia 2023) a. houses b. walls c. ovens d. roofs 2. There any computers in the past. a. were b. aren't c. weren't d. wasn't	ng c.cool in arm or cool in (1) c. give

Test

on unit 📶



Understand

Apply

Create

قم بحل اختبار تراكمي في ال<mark>ملح</mark>ق

A. Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- 1. Mohamed Salah was born in
 - a. Cairo
- b. Zagazig
- c. Fayoum
- d. Alexandria

- 2. Mohamed Salah was born in
 - a. 1994
- b. 1991
- c. 1992
- d. 1996
- 3. Salah started playing football forin 2010.
 - a. El Mokawloon
- b. Basel
- c. Liverpool
- d. Al Ahly

- 4. He moved to to play for Basel.
 - a. Nigeria
- b. France
- c. Egypt
- d. Switzerland

B. Language Function

Complete the following dialogue:

Injy and Mona are talking about travelling to the moon.

Injy: What was the science lesson about?

Mona : (1)

Injy : Great! It's my dream to go to the moon.

Mona: Do you think we will go to the moon one day?

Injy : (2)

Mona: (3)?

Injy: We can go in a rocket to the moon.

Mona: (4).....?

Injy: I think the journey will take ten hours to the moon.

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons! A round

shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or in strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the **roof**. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle or square. Finally, a round building uses fewer materials, so it is cheaper to make. It also has more space inside. How fantastic! a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. The underlined word "roof" is the place of a building. a. at the bottom b. at the top c. inside d. in front 2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the building. a. round b. empty c. square d. rectangle 3. Round, square and rectangle are all for buildings. a. places b. shapes c. pieces d. spaces b. Answer the following questions: 4. What is the main idea of the passage? 5. Do you think that traditional houses were comfortable? Why / Why not? 6. What happens when there's heavy snow or rain? (Matai - Miniya 2022) D. Vocabulary & Structure Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. They use the from sheep to make jumpers. a. stone b. wood C. cotton d. wool 2. He will probably us tomorrow. (Ismailia 2023) a. visiting b. visit c. visits d. visited 3. Mum used the to make bread. a. oven b. carpets c. curtains d. cushions 4. Change the ideas that don't

c. work

a. make

b. do

d. take

6	5. The people their houses white, with red doors in Deir el-Medina.				
	a. played b. painted c. ate d. drove				
-	6. We can get electricity from solar				
1	a. planes b. panels c. pens d. poles				
ļ	7. I think peoplelive on the moon in the future.				
	a. would b. be c. will d. are				
0	8. People got their water from the Nile, about 2 km away.				
	a. island b. kitchen c. temple d. valley				
0	9. I enjoyed my journey. It was really (Warraq - Giza 2022)				
	a. amazing b. amazed c. expensive d. excited				
ļ	10. There weren't books here.				
	a.any b.no c.some d.one				
-	Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:				
	1. There will (been) modern houses in the future.				
	2. What(is) your sunglasses made of ?				
	3. WBThere weren't (some) TVs in 1900.				
	4. 331 think people will all (used) electric cars.				
	E. Writing				
6	6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :				
0	"Houses in the future" (Belbeis - Sharkia 2023)				
	Houses III the luture (Belbels - Sharkit 2023)				
1000000					

Stop here!

Mini-Test on unit 10 for Al-A	Azhar students	ختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف
Supply the missing parts in	the following dial	
Sara and Mona are talking at Sara: Hello Mona. Are you on Mona: Hi Sara. (1)	bout materials. good at science ?	
Mona: Many chairs are made Sara: (3)	e of glass.	
Choose the correct answer f	rom a, b, c or d:	
 1. The wild animals live in the anima	c. cotton	d. metal
a. useful b. boring 3. Circle, square, pyramid and o a. numbers b. shells 4. To remember what you do, y	c. exciting oval are all c. tasks	d. beautiful
a. up b. on 5. Cushions are made of a. glass b. cotton	c. of	d. down
Reorder the words to make		
1. like - house - in - live - <u>I'd</u> - to	o - around.	
2. ancient - was - Deir el-Medi	na - a village - in - E	gypt.
3. seventeen - We - moved to -	- house - a new - in	- twenty.
4. car - have - people - In 2080	, - will - a driverless	·
Write a paragraph of FIVE se "R	ntences on : cound houses"	

. (bought) for your school (be) a bit different. Ahmed: Can I join the handball team at the club? .. (was) any robots in the past. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in d. Yes of course 6. What is the statue (make) of ? d. to make d. weren't b. buying b. will be d. to buy b. makes b. Yes, I'll b. were d. will the brackets from a, b, c or d: a. No, she wasn't c. No, they can't 8. Houses in the future... What will you... a. making 7. There a. wasn't project? c. made c. were a. buys c. buy c. are a. are Omar Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to "Ahmed and Omar are talking about their b. I'm cooking d. It's very far Ahmed: What's your favourite sport, Omar? : Because it is an interesting sport. d. Next week b. Last week b. Who do you practise it with? a. Why do you practise it a lot? d. How do you go to the club? Ahmed: How often do you practise it? c. Where do you practise it? complete the following dialogue: favourite sport." b. Where do you play it? c. When do you buy it? : I practise it at the club. a. Why do you like it? d. Who is good at it? c. They are at home a. Twice a week Ahmed:(3) a. It's handball c. In the pool Ahmed:(2) Omar

Monthly assessments

تقييمات شهرية

March Test

اختبار شهر مارس

A. Listenina

5	Listen and choo	se the correct a	nswer from a, b, c or	d:	
9	9	لاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].	تر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص اا	استمع إلى معلمك واخا	
	1. Eman is in				
	a. Hurghada		c. Siwa	d. Ras Shetan	
	2. She is with her				
	a. teachers	b. friends	c. family	d. cousins	
	They are going t		he mountains.		
	a. travelling	b. trekking	c. rock climbing	d. zip lining	
	4. Eman isn't goin	g to try rock climb	ing as it is too		
	a. interesting	b. exciting	c. boring	d. scary	
		B. Language	Functions		
2	Complete the fo	ollowing dialogu	ie:		
. 6	Ali and Salim are	talking about Mo	hamed Salah.		
	Ali : Do you know Mohamed Salah ?				
	Salim: (1)	······································			
	Ali : (2)	?			
	Salim: He was bo	rn in 1992.			
	Ali : (3)	?			
	Salim: He plays in	England for Liver	pool.		
	The state of the s	at scoring goals?	***************************************		
	Salim: (4)	And the same of th			
		ou think about his	character?		
	Salim: (5)		,		
			manufaction.		
C			mprehension		
100	Kead the follow	ing, then answe	r the questions.		

Marwan is a very smart boy in the third grade. He always remembers his homework and does well in all of his tests. Last Sunday, he woke up late and quickly left his house. When he arrived at school, he noticed that

his homework was not in his school bag. Marwan was upset because his teacher, Mrs Maha, gets angry when students don't do their homework. He started to get worried but he decided to be brave and apologize to his teacher and tell her he won't do that again. Mrs Maha wasn't angry as she knows that Marwan is a good student.

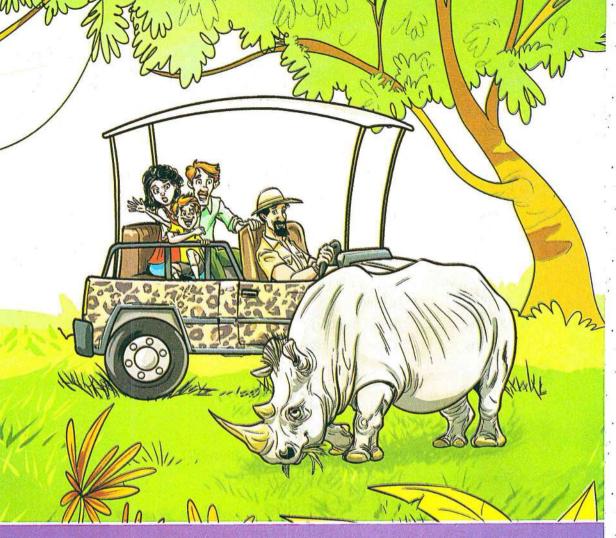
	2 "	20 20				
a. Choose the co	orrect answer fro	ma,b,cord:				
1. The underli	ned pronoun " <u>he</u> "	refers to	× "			
a. Marwan's	brother	b. Marwan's cou	ısin			
c. Marwan		d. Marwan's frie	nd			
2. Mrs Maha b	ecomes w	when her students forget their homewo				
a. bored						
3. The underli	ned word "smart"	means				
a. happy	b. proud	c. clever	d. polite			
b. Answer the fo	ollowing question	ns:				
4. Why did Ma	arwan leave his ho	use quickly?				
350						
5. What is the main idea of the passage ?						
6. Why do you	ı think Mrs Maha v	wasn't angry with M	arwan ?			

Choose the co	rrect answer fro	ma,b,cord:				
1 . Scientists can	ı predicti	ons about the futur	e.			
a. play	b. steal	c. make	d. take			
2 . In villages, pe	2. Mrs Maha becomes					
a. bins	b. fans	c. ovens	d. curtains			
3 are s	small planes witho	out pilots.				
a. Drowns	b. Drones	c. Tunnels	d. Tools			
4 . Ali, please be	have!					
a, myself	b. vourself	c. themselves	d. himself			

0	5	. He looked at the	to see	if he was injured.				
		a. sand	b. mirror	c. cupboard	d. medal			
•	6	. We must	other people.					
		a. respect	b. hate	c. learn	d. spend			
0	7	. There was a stor	m, so the boat					
		a. floated	b. sank	c. flew	d. built			
0	8	.They went	across Sinai.					
		a. tricking	b. picking	c. joking	d. trekking			
9	9 you going to study French?							
		a. Will	b. Have	c. Did	d. Are			
9	10	. Is there		?				
		a. many	b. few	c. any	d. some			
5		Complete the sent	ences with the	correct form of the v	word(s) in brackets:			
0	1	He is going to	(spent) a w	eek in Dahah				
	He is going to (spent) a week in Dahab. Most furniture							
	3. Hatem and Ramy went shopping by(himself). 4. There will							
	4	. There will	(been) holidays	on the moon.				
			E. Wi	riting				
6		Write a paragra	ph of about Ele	GHTY (80) words	on:			
"Adventure sports in Egypt"								
				-po. 15 29/pt				
	100							

	•••							

	•••							
					2 11			



Unit

On land and sea

SB pages 44:53 WB pages 100:105

Objectives:

· Reading

A paragraph about sea life; a leaflet about plastic pollution; The Old Man and the Sea

Writing

Writing rules; writing an advertisement; a text explaining a beach clean-up day

Listening

A talk at a nature reserve

Speaking.

Talking about saving the environment

o Loinguoge

Zero conditional, must/mustn't, should/ shouldn't; asking for, giving and sequencing instructions

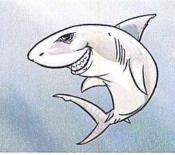
· Life Skills:

Collaboration, setting clear goals

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 44:47 WB pages 100 & 101



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

coral reef (n)	شعاب مرجانية	shell (n)	صدفة / قوقعة
jellyfish (n)	قنديل البحر	tail (n)	ذيل
octopus (n)	أخطبوط	sea turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
stingray (n)	سمكة الراي اللاسع	whale (n)	حوت
sea life (n)	حياة بحرية	environment (n)	البيئة
ocean (n)	محيط	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تصنيع
sting (v)	يلدغ	rubbish (n)	قمامة
poisonous (adj)	سام	shark (n)	سمكة قرش

Po Po

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

whale - turtles - octopus - environment

- 1. All have shells on their back.
- 2. The is everything around us.
- 3. The has eight legs and lives at the bottom of the sea.

Lesson 1

SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 100

danger (n)	خطر	facts (n)	حقائق
flat (adj)	مسطح	away (adv)	بعيدًا
hard (adj)	صلب	turn (ed) (v)	 يتحول
touch (ed)(v)	يلمس	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك

Lesson 2

SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 101

save (d) (v)	يحفظ	planet (n)	كوكب
everywhere (adv)	فی کل مکان	necessary (adj)	ضروری
sea birds (n)	طيور بحرية	view (n)	منظر
shopping bags	حقائب التسوق	traffic rules (n)	قواعد المرور

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Prese	nt المضارع	الماضى Past	التصريف الثالث P.P.	
bite	يعض	bit	bitten	
grow	ينمو	grew	grown	
lose	يفقد/يخسر	lost	lost	
sting	يلسع	stung	stung	
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten	

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

coral reef	a hard area of something like rock made from small sea animals (coral)
environment	the world around us
flat	having no high areas مسطح
jellyfish	a sea animal with a soft body that you can see through. It stings when you touch it
ocean	a large sea محيط
whale	it is the largest sea animal in the world
octopus	a sea animal with eight legs أخطبوط
planets	objects like the Earth that go around the sun
poisonous	if something is poisonous, it can make you very ill or kill you سام
recycle	use again يعيد تدوير
rubbish	things we do not need قمامة
shark	a large, dangerous sea animal with sharp teeth سمكة قرش
shell	the hard part on the outside of a turtle, nut etc. صَدفة / قشرة
sting	if an animal stings you, it hurts you to protect itself يلدغ
stingray	a big, flat fish with a long tail that can sting سمكة الراى اللاسع
tail	the part that is at the end of an animal's body
throw away	put something you do not need somewhere يلقى بعيدًا
sea turtle	a large sea animal with a hard shell on its back سلحفاة بحرية



Collocations

متلازمات لفظبة

take	take time يستغرق وقت		have	a test	
take	a photo	يلتقط صورة / يصور	nave	a test	يمنحن

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms ar	nd Anton	yms		مترادفات ومتضادات
Word مة	الكا	المرادف <mark>Synonym</mark>	Antonym /Op	المضاد posite
fast	سريع	quick	slow	بطىء
die	يموت	pass away	live	يعيش
remember	يتذكر	recall	forget	ينسى
save	يحفظ	keep	lose	يخسر

Prefixes & Suffixes		بناهية	مقاطع بادئة و	
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples		
-ous	تحول الاسم لصفة	dangerous poisonous	خطیر سام	
-er	تحول الفعل لاسم	ruler	حاكم	

Exercise

on Vocabulary Study

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	"Slow"	and	"quick"	aro	11	11	
٠.	21044	anu	quick	are	**********	2	•

a. synonyms b. antonyms c. prefixes d. suffixes

2. "Remember" and "....." have the same meaning.

a. rewrite b. recall c. recycle d. forget

3. The suffix "....." change the word "danger" into an adjective.

b.-ment a.-ly c.-ous d.-er

4. "Keep" and "....." are opposites.

b. lose a. save c. take d. give



General Notes on Reading & Listening

[تستخدم غالبًا مع صيغة التفضيل] اسم جمع + صفة تفضيل + one of the

- In the shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean.

(Reading on Lesson 1 SB page 45)

2 protect from

يحمى من

- I How do fish and sea animals protect themselves from danger?

(Reading on Lesson 1 SB page 45)

3 flat

* a flat (n)

شقة سكنية

- Hoda lives in a small flat.
- * flat (adj)

مسطح

- This table has a flat round top.

(SB page 45)

🛂 die from – die of – die out

* die from

يموت من

- SE Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic.
- * die of

موت بسبب

- His uncle died of cancer سرطان.
- * die out

ينقرض

> - Dinosaurs died out millions of years ago.

(SB page 46)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جرهامة

Express	ions	Prepositions		
make oceans dirty يفة	يجعل المحيطات غير نظ	stay in	يبقى في / يمكث في	
stay safe	يبقى آمنًا	get rid of	يتخلص من	
more than once	أكثر من مرة	run across	یجری عبر	
take a long time	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا	jump out of water	يقفز خارج المياه	
use again = recycle خری	يعيد تدوير / يستخدم مرة	throw away	یُلقی بعیدًا	
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	take off	يخلع ملابسه / أو حذائه	
feel ill	يشعر بالمرض	go into the shell	يدخل إلى داخل الصدفة	
fall asleep	يستغرق في النوم	swim away	يسبح بعيدًا	
get home	يصل للبيت	walk on the grass	يمشى على الحشائش	
find a safe place	يجد مكانًا آمنًا	dangerous for	خطر علی	
keep healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة	in danger	فی خطر	
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	go around the sun	يدور حول الشمس	
answer the phone	يرد على الهاتف	on land	على الأرض اليابسة	





Skills



Reading and Listening

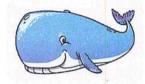


تدرب على ۱۰ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

on Lesson 1SB page 45







Dangers(1) of the sea

The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the **ocean**⁽²⁾. If it **loses**⁽³⁾ a tooth, a new one **grows**⁽⁴⁾. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life!

So how do fish and **sea animals**⁽⁵⁾ **protect**⁽⁶⁾ themselves from danger? A **stingray**⁽⁷⁾ is a big, **flat**⁽⁸⁾ fish and it lives in the coral reef. If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water!







A **sea turtle**⁽⁹⁾ has a hard **shell**⁽¹⁰⁾ to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast - the **octopus**⁽¹¹⁾ has got eight legs to help it!

Some sea life, like the **jellyfish**⁽¹²⁾, is **poisonous**⁽¹³⁾. It **stings**⁽¹⁴⁾ you when you touch it.

What about the **whales**⁽¹⁵⁾? These big, heavy animals hit with their big **tails**⁽¹⁶⁾!

•	(1) مخاطر	(2) محيط	(3) يفقد	(4) ينمو	(5) حيوانات بحرية	(6) يحمى
	(7) سمكة الراي اللاسع	(8) مستو/مسطح	(9) سلحفاة بحرية	(10) صدفة	(11) اخطبوط	(12) قنديل البحر
	(13) سام	(14) يلدغ	(15) حيتان	(16) ذيول		

on Lesson 2 SB page 46

We must save(1) our planet(2)!

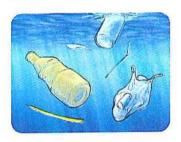
Plastic⁽³⁾ is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the **environment**⁽⁴⁾ for a very long time.

Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can **recycle** (5) some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic.

We must try to use other **materials** ⁽⁶⁾ – paper and glass, for example – because these are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag, we mustn't throw away these bags in rivers.

It will take a long time to clean all the plastic **rubbish** ⁽⁷⁾ from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!





Answer

the following questions:

Giving the main idea and Extracting informations -إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية واستخراج المعلومات

Learn 1. What is the main idea of the passage?

- We must save our planet.

Practise 2. Which two materials are easier to recycle than plastic?

(1) يحمى / ينقذ (2) كوكب

(3) بلاستيك

(4) البيئة

(5) یعید تصنیع (6) مواد خام

قمامة (7)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Ohoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. Plastic is, so sea animals and birds die from it.

a. useful

b. healthy

c. poisonous

d. clean



2.	The is ever	rything around us	. We must keep it	clean.
	a. sea	b. environment	c. planet	d. plant
3.	The is the	biggest sea anima	al in the world.	
	a. elephant	b. whale	c. horse	d. stingray
▶ SB	, WB & Previous	s Exams		
4.	. 😼 A is po	isonous. It stings y	ou when you tou	ch it.
	a. sea turtle	b. whale	c. shark	d. jellyfish
			(Al-Saye	eda Zainab - Cairo 2022)
5	. The animal that h	nas a hard shell to	protect it is called	L
	a. octopus	b. shark	c. turtle	d. whale
			(1)	brahimia - Sharkia 2023)
6	. 💯 The is o	one of the most da	ingerous sea anim	als in the ocean.
	a. dolphin	b. turtle	c. shark	d. elephant
7	. 👀 The whales w	hich are heavy sea	a animals hit with	their big
	a. hands	b. wings	c. legs	d. tails
▶ El-	Moasser Exercis	ies		
8	. We mustn't throv	win the stre	eets. It's very harm	nful.
	a. bananas	b. flowers	c. rubbish	d. planets
9	. A jellyfish will	you if you tou	ıch it.	
	a. sing	b. bring	c. sting	d. watch
10	. My hurt m	ne , I need to visit t	the dentist.	
	a. hands	b. legs	c. eyes	d. teeth
▶ De	finitions			
11	. The hard part on	the outside of a t	urtle, nut etc. is ca	illed a
	a. tail	b. shell	c. head	d. fin
12	are object	s like the Earth th	at go around the s	sun.
	a. Planets	b. Planes	c. Plans	d. Plains
13	. To "" mean	s putting someth	ing you don't nee	d somewhere.
		b. come into		
▶ Lai	nguage Notes, I	Expressions & Pr	repositions	
14	. After running, I	off my cloth	es and have a sho	wer.
	a. make	b. get	c. take	d. put
15	. 🕮 The octopus :	swims very fast wh	nen it's dan	The second secon
	a. out	b. at	c. on	d. in



مهارة التحدث

1. Describing sea animals:

وصف الحيوانات البحرية :

أرجل/زعانف [عدد] 2. It has ظرف ٔ 1. It can swim

مياه 3. It lives in 4. The سمكة القرش is very dangerous.

5. A <u>سمكة الراي</u> is a big, flat fish.

▶ 2. Talking about the rules (What we must / mustn't do)

الحديث عن القواعد (ما يجب ولا يجب علينا القيام به):

Asking for opinions السؤال عن الرأي

1. A: What must I do when I cross the road?

ا- ما الذي يجب القيام به عندما أعبر الطريق؟

2. A: What mustn't you do on roads? ٢- ما الذي يجب عليك عدم القيام به على الطرق؟

Giving opinions

إعطاء الأراء

B: You must look left and right. يجب عليك أن تنظر جهة اليسار وجهة اليمين.

B: We mustn't play games on roads. يجب علينا ألا نلعب ألعاب على الطرق.



مهارة الكتابة

Ways to save the environment:

طرق للحفاظ على البيئة:

1. We mustn't use a lot of plastic materials.

ا. لا يجب علينا أن نستخدم الكثير من المواد البلاستيكية.

2. Plastic materials are very dangerous and damage the environment.

٢. المواد البلاستيكية خطيرة جدًا وتدمر البيئة.

3. We must try to use safe materials like paper and glass.

٣. يجب علينا أن نحاول استخدام مواد آمنة مثل الورق والزجاج.

4. We must keep our planet safe and clean.

يجب علينا أن نحافظ على كوكبنا آمن ونظيف.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ قم يحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة باستمرار.

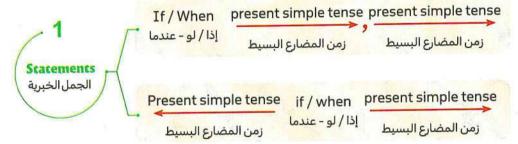
80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & Emails

Step 3 Writing اختبر مدی إتقائك لمهارة الكتابة	Write a paragraph on : "Sea animals"		Write an email about: "Save the environment"	
Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى إتقائك لمهارة التحدث	Complete the following dialogue: They are talking about a visit to the aquarium. A:Where did you go yesterday? B:(1)	B: (2) A: (3) A: (3) B: I saw a lot of sea animals. A: Did you give the animals anything to eat? B: (4) Lo find their own food. A: (5) A: (5) A: (5) B: The aquarium is important because it protects the sea animals and plants.	Seif is collecting plastic from the beach. Fady:What are you doing, Seif? Seif: (1) Fady:Why are collecting plastic from the beach? Seif: (2) Fady: (3) Seif: Plastic damages the environment	because it stays in it for a long times. Seif: We can recycle plastic to save the environment. Fady: Is plastic dangerous for sea animals and birds? Seif: (5)
Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Read and complete: 1. A.Where did you go yesterday ? 8.I went to the منحف الأحياء المائية	2. A.What did you see there ? B.I saw	1. A.Why are you collecting plastic from the beach? B.Because it is plastic damage the the the secause it for a long time.	the بحفظ plastic.

III Language

1. Zero conditional with (If or When)

التكوين Formation



✔ لاحظ وضع comma (,) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية في حالة وجود [If / When] في البداية.

الاستخدام Usage

- 1. We use the zero conditional to say what always happens if/when a certain action takes place. ا. تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث دائمًا عندما يحدث حدث آخر معين. العبير عن حدث يحدث دائمًا عندما يحدث حدث آخر معين. العبير عن حدث يحدث دائمًا عندما يحدث حدث آخر معين. العبير عن حدث يحدث دائمًا عندما يحدث حدث آخر معين. العبير عن حدث يحدث دائمًا عندما يحدث حدث آخر معين.
 - I wear my jacket if it is cold.
- 2. We use the present simple to talk about the action (with if or when) and the result.

٢. يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط عند الحديث عن شيء يحدث مع (if / when) وما يترتب عليه من نتائج.

- ex. I go to bed when I'm tired. When I'm tired, I go to bed.
- 3. It expresses true situations.
 ۳. تعبر عن مواقف حقیقیة.
 ex. If /When you touch the screen, the game starts.
- 4. It describes facts related to (nature, physics and astronomy ...). 3.تصف حقائق ترتبط بـ [الطبيعة والفيزياء والفلك ...].
 - ex. If/When something has enough air in it, it doesn't sink.





Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Previo	us Exams		*
1. 33 When I am	hungry, I	something to eat.	
a. had	b. has	c. have	d. having
		d.	
	-	c. went	d. gone
			d. touching
			(Edfu - Aswan 2023)
•			d. slept
			al van
		c. What	d. Where
74-4			
			No representation of
			d. Although
			d. is happened
			d. melted
			all forms
	White Press		d. but
	h saw		d, seen
(M. 5.2.32)			
Complete the ser	itences with the	correct form of the	word(s) in brackets:
SB & WB Exercise			
		ed, he (falling	g) asleep.
1. W When my g	randfather is tire	ed, he(falling	
1. W When my g 2. W When it is v	randfather is tire ery cold, water	(turn) into ice	<u>.</u>
1.	randfather is tire ery cold, water ere) I've got a tes	(turn) into ice st, I always study ha	e. ord.
1. W When my g 2. W When it is v 3. W (Whe 4. W If we don't	randfather is tire ery cold, water ere) I've got a tes water the plants,	(turn) into ice	e. ord.
1. W When my g 2. W When it is v 3. W When it is v 4. W When it is v 4. W If we don't v El-Moasser Exerc	randfather is tire ery cold, water ere) I've got a tes water the plants, iises	(turn) into ice st, I always study ha , they (died).	erd.
1. W When my g 2. W When it is v 3. W (Whe 4. W If we don't v El-Moasser Exerce 5. What	randfather is tire ery cold, water ere) I've got a tes water the plants, cises appened) when	(turn) into ice it, I always study ha they (died). we put wood on w	erd.
1. W When my g 2. W When it is v 3. W When it is v 4. W When it is v 4. W If we don't v El-Moasser Exerc	randfather is tire ery cold, water ere) I've got a tes water the plants, cises appened) when	(turn) into ice it, I always study ha they (died). we put wood on w	erd.
	1. When I am I a. had 2. W When I feel a. goes 3. W If you	1. When I am hungry, I a. had b. has 2. When I feel ill, I to be a. goes b. go 3. When I feel ill, I f	1. When I am hungry, I

2. must /mustn't

Usage

الاستخدام

We use "must" to talk about things that are necessary to do.

We use "mustn't" to talk about things that you are not allowed to do.

▼ تستخدم "must / mustn't" عندما تريد أن تقول أنه من الضروري القيام أو عدم القيام بشئ ما.

التكوين Formation

Subject. [الفاعل] + must / mustn't + [inf.]

- ex. You must listen carefully to your teachers.
 - You mustn't use a mobile phone in the class.
- Interrogative ميغة الاستفهام

ex. - Must I buy a ticket?

- Yes, you must buy a ticket.

Question word + must / mustn't + subject + inf. (المصدر) ...?

- ex. Where must I put the rubbish? You must put it in a trash bin.
 - What mustn't you do on roads? We mustn't play games on roads.

3. should / shouldn't

Usage

الاستخدام

We use "should/shouldn't" to talk about things that are good ideas to do or not to do.

▼ تستخدم "should/shouldn't" عندما نريد أن نتحدث عن أشياء جيدة أو غير جيدة للقيام بها.

التكوين Formation

Subject. [الفاعل] + should /shouldn't + (inf.)

- ex. We should recycle plastic. You shouldn't waste your time.
- ميغة الاستفهام Interrogative

ex. - Should I finish the story today?

- Yes, you should.

- No, you shouldn't.

Question word + should/ + subject + inf. [الفاعل] ••• ?

ex. - What should I do to keep fit? - You should do more exercises.



Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

▶ SB, WB 8	k Previous	Exams		
1. Sara n	nust	rubbish in the bi	ns.	(Hehia - Sharkia 2023)
a. put		b. are putting	c. puts	d. putting
2. What	mustn't yo	u in the str	eet?	(Mallawi - Minia 2023)
a. doi:		b. did	c. does	d. do
3. 🗺 Th	e animals	eat plastic.		
a. mu	TANKS CO.	b. mustn't	c. should	d. have to
4. 🗺 Wh	nat should I	first ?	200 (200	
a. dor		b. did	c. doing	d. do
		angry with		
a. be		b. being	c. been	d. to be
	2 2	n across the road		
a. sho		b. must	c. can	d. mustn't
		to come first in m		(Mghagha - Minia 2023)
a. had		b. should	.c. have	d. haven't
		in the library lou		(El Tor - South Sinai 2022)
a. mu			c. must	d. can
▶ El-Moass				
	The state of the s	ou before I visit y		10 Sec.
	ed .	b. calls	c. calling	d. call
		u to stay h		
a. eat		b. eating	c. ate	d. eats
		on the grass.		16 Pk
a. mu		D. IIIdatii t	c. can	d. have
			rrect form of the	word(s) in brackets:
▶ SB & WB				
1. You m	ıustn't	(plays) with the	e knives.	
2. W Yo	u must	(came) early.		
3. You	(must) make noise in tl	he class.	
4. WB Yo	u (m	ustn't) follow tra	ffic rules.	
5. 🕮 WI	ny must we	:(cleaned)	the beaches?	
▶ El-Moass				
6. You sl work	nould together.	(shares) your id	leas with others	when you
		(tidies) your roon	n	
8. The st	udents sho	ouldn't(us	ed) their mobile	s in the evams
9. It's a c	reat film V	ou (should	dn't) watch it	s in the exams.
	productilities I	- u (3110010	anti ti vvatti it.	

General **Exercises**

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

 Understand Create O Apply Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب). 1. A stingray is a big fish. d. thin b. flat c. fast a. long 2. It lives in the b. Nile River a. fresh water d. coral reef c. high mountains 3. If it knows ais coming, it jumps out of the water. d. whale a. shark b. fish c. dolphin 4. A sea turtle has a hard to protect it. d. tail b. head c. shell a. mouth Complete the following dialogue: Eman and Aya are talking about marine animals. Eman: What do you think the most dangerous sea animal is? Aya : (1) Eman: (2)? Ava : Sharks live in oceans. Eman: (3)? Aya : A turtle is the sea animal that has a hard shell. Eman: Why is the shell useful to the turtle? : (4) Aya Eman: What about the jellyfish? Does it have a shell? : (5) But it can sting you when you touch it. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. WB A shark uses more than 20,000 in its life. b. fins d. teeth a. feet c. tails 2. The word "....." means to use something again. (Tema - Sohag 2023) c. redo d. remind a. rewrite b. recycle 3. All have shells on their back to protect them from danger.

c. turtles

d. planets

a. octopuses

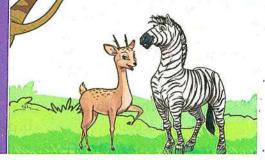
b. birds

4. The Earth is the	where we liv	e. (Fuvva	nh - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)
a. plant	b. planet	c. star	d. moon
5. 🕮 A/An has	eight legs and it	can swim fast.	(Dayrout - Assiut 2022)
a. octopus	b. shark	c. whale	d. jellyfish
			d. material
7. 🕮 If you touch a je	ellyfish, ity	ou.	
a. stings	b. jumps on	c. pleases	d. grows
8. We get water if	it		
a. rain	b. will rain	c. is rained	d. rains
9. When there's a goo	od view, you	take a photo.	
a. should	b. shouldn't	c. mustn't	d. have
0. We must ou	r planet. It's impe	ortant.	
a. saving	b. to save	c. save	d. to saving
Complete the senten	ces with the corr	ect form of the v	vord(s) in brackets:
i. 🖼 i (reit) tir	ed when it's late.		
			u cross the road.
2. 70u (mu	stn't) look left an	d right when yo	
2. WB You (musta.) 3. Students musta't	stn't) look left an (shouted) i	d right when yo n the classroom	
2. WB You (mustable) 3. Students mustn't 4. What must you	stn't) look left an (shouted) i (doing) before	d right when yo in the classroom the exam?	i.
2. WB You (musta.) 3. Students musta't	stn't) look left an (shouted) i (doing) before of about EIGHTY	d right when yo in the classroom the exam? (80) words on:	i.
2. WB You (mustable) 3. Students mustn't 4. What must you	stn't) look left an (shouted) i (doing) before	d right when yo in the classroom the exam? (80) words on:	i.
2. WB You (mustable) 3. Students mustn't 4. What must you Write a paragraph o	stn't) look left an (shouted) i (doing) before of about EIGHTY	d right when yo in the classroom the exam? (80) words on: als"	امحاب معدفي إدانيالكماني (Port Said - East 2023)
2. You (must) 3. Students mustn't 4. What must you Write a paragraph o	stn't) look left an (shouted) i (doing) before of about EIGHTY "Sea anim"	d right when yo in the classroom the exam? (80) words on: als"	ا محال عند في نعابة الكساس) (Port Said - East 2023)
2. WB You (mustable) 3. Students mustn't 4. What must you Write a paragraph o	stn't) look left an (shouted) (doing) before of about EIGHTY "Sea anim	d right when yo in the classroom the exam? (80) words on: als"	ا مجال معد في إنيانالكتان (Port Said - East 2023)
2. WB You (mustable) 3. Students mustn't 4. What must you Write a paragraph o	stn't) look left an (shouted) (doing) before of about EIGHTY "Sea anim	d right when yo in the classroom the exam? (80) words on: als"	ا مجال معد في إنيانالكتان (Port Said - East 2023)
2. WB You (mustable) 3. Students mustn't 4. What must you Write a paragraph o	stn't) look left an (shouted) (doing) before of about EIGHTY "Sea anim	d right when yo in the classroom the exam? (80) words on: als"	ا مجال معد في إنيانالكتان (Port Said - East 2023)
2. WB You (mustable) 3. Students mustn't 4. What must you Write a paragraph o	stn't) look left an (shouted) (doing) before of about EIGHTY "Sea anim	d right when yo in the classroom the exam? (80) words on: als"	ا مجال معد في إنيانالكتان (Port Said - East 2023)
2. WB You (mustable) 3. Students mustn't 4. What must you Write a paragraph o	stn't) look left an (shouted) (doing) before of about EIGHTY "Sea anim	d right when yo in the classroom the exam? (80) words on: als"	ا مجال معد في إنيانالكتان (Port Said - East 2023)
2. WB You (mustable) 3. Students mustn't 4. What must you Write a paragraph o	stn't) look left an (shouted) (doing) before of about EIGHTY "Sea anim	d right when yo in the classroom the exam? (80) words on: als"	ا مجال معد في إنيانالكتان (Port Said - East 2023)
2. WB You (mustable) 3. Students mustn't 4. What must you Write a paragraph o	stn't) look left an (shouted) (doing) before of about EIGHTY "Sea anim	d right when yo in the classroom the exam? (80) words on: als"	ا مجال معد في إنيانالكتان (Port Said - East 2023)
	a. plant 5. A/An	a. plant b. planet 5. A/An	a. plant b. planet c. star 5. A/An

Lessons -

3 & 4

SB pages 48:50 WB pages 102 & 103



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية	water (ed) (v), (n)	يسقى - ماء
soil (n)	تربة [زراعية]	nut (n)	حبة مكسرات
hole (n)	حفرة / ثقب	ground (n)	أرض
seed (n)	بذرة	instructions (n)	ارشادات/تعلیمات
frighten (ed) (v)	يخيف	project (n)	مشروع
school work	عمل مدرسی		

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

water - school - instructions - reserves - soil

- 1. Students should pay attention to their work.
- 2. If you don't the plants, they die.
- 3. Good produces good crops.
- 4. You should follow your teacher's

Lesson 3

SB pages 48 & 49 WB page 102

visit (ed) (v), (n)	يزور / زيارة	knives (n)	سكاكين
reasons (n)	أسباب / مبررات	fishing line (n)	صنارة الصيد
dive (d) (v)	يغطس	Ras Mohammed reserve	محميةرأسمحمد
rules (n)	قواعد	decisions (n)	قرارات

Lesson 4

SB page 50 WB page 103

press (ed) (v)	يضغط	stones (n)	احجار
deep (adj)	عميق	space (n)	فراغ
phone call (n)	مكالمة هاتفية	warm (adj)	دافئ

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Pre	المضارع esent	الماضى Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
hide	يخفي / يختبئ	hid	hidden
pay	يدفع (مال)	paid	paid



Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

1	noise	يحدث ضوضاء	do	an activity	يقوم بنشاط
	a decision	يتخذ قرار	take	turns	يتبادل أدوار
	a rule	يصنع قاعدة	play	a sport	يلعب/يمارس رياضة
make	a hole	يصنع حفرة		a game	يلعب لعبة
	a phone call يجرى مكالمة هاتفية			a picnic lunch	
		m recycled plastic يصنع شئ من البلاستيك	have		ncn يتناول وجبة غداء في نز

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

fishing line	a thin line used to catch a fish	صنارة الصيد	
ground	the top part of the Earth, where we stand	أرض	
hole	an empty space in something	فتحة / ثقب	
cover	put something over something else to protect or hide it يغطى/يحمى		
seed	a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants		
nature reserve	an area of land used to protect nature, animals	and plants محمية طبيعية	
pot	a small container	إناء	
soil	what plants usually grow in	- تربة (زراعية)	

Vocabulary Study

Synonym	s and Antor	nyms	ات	مترادفات ومتضادا
Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	Antonym /Opp	المضاد osite
pay	يدفع	give money	take money	يأخذ أموال
hard	صعب	difficult	easy	سهل
full	مملوء	filled	empty	فارغ

Prefixes & Suffixe	es	اهية	مقاطع بادئة ون
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples	
–ion	تحول الفعل لاسم	instructions	تعليمات
-en	تحول الاسم لفعل أو الصفة	frighten	يُخيف
-CII	لفعل	deepen	يعمق
-ous	تحول الاسم لصفة	dangerous	خطير



on Vocabulary Study

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The antonym of the word "easy" is ".....".
 - b. hard
- 2. If I pay money to Ali, this means I him money.
- d. steal b. give c. borrow a. take
- 3. The suffix "....." changes the word "danger" into an adjective. d. -able c. -lv b. -ous
- a. -ment 4. "Filled" and "full" are
 - a. synonyms
 - b. antonyms
- c. prefixes
- d. suffixes

d. high



General Notes on Reading & Listening

reserve

- * reserve (v) = book
 - He reserved two tickets at the cinema.
- محمية (للحيوانات والنباتات) * reserve (n)
 - You mustn't damage anything in a nature reserve. (SB page 48)

2 soil - floor

* soil

- التربة [التي نزرع فيها النباتات]
- > To grow this plant, you need a good soil.
- * floor

أرضية (الحجرة)

We put a carpet سجادة on the floor.

(SB page 50)

يحجز

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جرهامة

	Expre	ssions	
give instructions about	يعطى تعليمات بشأن	keep air healthy	يحافظ على الهواء صحى
through the reserve	خلال المحمية	work as a group	يعمل كمجموعة
find their own food	يجدوا طعامهم	pay around	يدفع حوالى
	Prepo	sitions	
bad for	ضار بـ	famous for	مشهور بـ
angry with	غاضب من	collaborate with	يتعاون مع
at the bottom	فى القاع	press into	يضغط في
fill with	يملأ بـ	cover with	یغطی بـ



Skills







on Lesson 3 SB page 48

Teacher: We're going to visit this nature reserve(1) today. We have nature reserves to help our birds, plants and animals. Many important birds, animals and plants live here so we must be careful(2) about what we do.

> First(3), you mustn't make a lot of noise(4)! You'll frighten(5) the animals and birds.

> Secondly(6), we must not leave the road through the reserve.

The animals and birds live in the plants next to the road and you don't want to walk into their homes, do you?

Now I know we're going to have a picnic lunch (7) later, but you mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. They must find their own food. They mustn't think that all their food will come from you!

Next⁽⁸⁾, you must take all your rubbish with you when you leave. Some animals think that plastic is food, but they mustn't eat it. It is very bad for them. Finally (9), you must remember to work together and write what you see. You can write about your visit to the reserve for

the project (10).

(1) محمیة طبیعیة (2) حريص **Úgi** (3)

ىددث كثيرًا من الضوضاء

(5) يخيف

(6) ثاننا

يتناول وجبة غداء في نزهة

(8) بعد ذلك (9) أخبرًا

(10) مشروع

Answer

the following questions:

- Critical thinking skill

مهارة التفكير النقدى Learn 1. Why do you think we need the nature reserve? - To protect our birds, animals and plants.

2. Why do you think we must take all the rubbish with us when we leave?

Lesson 4 SB page 50

Plant a tree today!

Adult: Do you want to help save our planet(1)?

Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air (2) healthy. You can

plant (3) a nut (4) or the seed (5) of a fruit.

Child: What should I do first?

Adult: First, wash an empty plastic pot⁽⁶⁾ and dry⁽⁷⁾ it. Secondly, put some small stones⁽⁸⁾ at the bottom of ⁽⁹⁾ the pot.

Child: Then what should I do?

Adult: Then, fill the pot with soil (10).

Child: Like this?

Adult: Yes, that's right! The next thing you do is, **press**⁽¹¹⁾ your finger into the soil and make a small **hole**⁽¹²⁾.

Child: How deep must it be?

Adult: It must be 2 centimetres deep. Now plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place⁽¹³⁾. The seed needs sun and water to make it grow.

Child: Should I water it now?

Adult: Yes, now and every day. But don't give it too much water. It's going to grow big. When it grows too big for the pot, take it out of the soil and plant it in the ground. One day, when it is a big tree, you can say "I planted that!"

ارغ	(6) أناء بلاستيك ف	(5) بذرة	(4) حبة مكسرات	(3) يزرع	(2) هواء	(1) تحافظ على / تنقذ كوكبنا
(13) مكان دافئ	(12) حفرة/فتحة	(11) يخفط	(10) تربة زراعية	(9) في قاع	(8) أحجار	(7) يجفف

on Lesson 4 WB page 103

How to grow a tomato plant

• First, find a sunny place in the garden.

 Second, look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones or other plants in it.

Then, make a small hole in the soil.

• Next, put some water in the hole so it is not too dry.

• Finally, put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.





Lesson 4 WB page 103

Lama: I'd like to grow⁽¹⁾ a tomato plant⁽²⁾. What should I do first?

Mariam: First, find a sunny place (3) in the garden.

Lama: Like this?

Mariam: Yes, that's right. Secondly, look at the ground. It must not have

lots of stones or other plants in it.

Lama : OK. What should I do after that?

Mariam: Then, make a small hole in the soil (4).

Lama : How deep must it be?

Mariam: About 2 cm. Next, put some water in the hole so it is not too dry(5).

Lama: Should I water (6) it now?

Mariam: Yes, you should. Finally, put the seed (7) in the hole and cover (8)

it with soil.

(1) يزرع (2) نبات الطماطم (3) مكان مشمس (4) تربة زراعية (5) جاف (6) يسقى / يروى (7) حبة / بذرة (8) يغطى



on Lesson 3 WB page 102

Ras Mohammed

Ras Mohammed reserve is famous for its birds and animals. Many

people go diving in the coral reefs here to see the many beautiful fish and turtles. If you want to dive here, first you must **pay around**⁽¹⁾ LE 100. When you dive, you mustn't touch or give food to any of the fish. You must only use **knives**⁽²⁾ to cut **fishing**

lines⁽³⁾ and you must never take any fish from the water. Finally, sharks also live here, so you must be careful!

• (1) يدفع حوالي (2) سكاكين (3) صنارات صيد

on Lesson 4 SB page 50

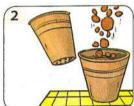
Plant a tree today!

Do you want to help save our planet?

Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air healthy(1). You can plant a nut or the seed of a fruit.

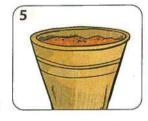
- 1. First, wash the plastic pot(2) and dry it.
- 2. Second, put some small stones(3) at the bottom(4) of the pot.
- 3. Then, fill (5) the pot with soil.
- 4. Next, press(6) your finger into the soil and make a small hole about 2 cm deep.
- 5. Plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.
- 6. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place.
- 7. Water it every day. (Don't give it too much water).
- 8. When the tree grows too big for the pot, plant it in a bigger pot, or in the ground.

















(1) يحافظ على الهواء صحى (2) إناء بلاستيكي (3) أحجار (4) في قاع (5) يملأ





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

	key vocabulary			
	1. When you put a	/an into	the soil, it grows into	o a new plant.
	a. brick	b. seal	c. seed	d. egg
	2. Nature p	rotect a lot of a	animals and birds.	
	a. preserves	b. resorts	c. reserves	d. deserts
	3. The wild dog	the young	g boys and they could	dn't cross the road.
	a. saved	b. frightened	d c. helped	d. kept
		r into the soil a	nd make a small	
	a. hall	b. hole	c. hill	d. hell
	5. This area gives	a lot of good cr	ops. It has a good	
	a. soil		c. earth	d. land
D	SB, WB & Previous	us Exams		
	6. 3 First,	the plastic pot	and dry it to be clean	. (Benha - Qalyobia 2023)
	a. make	b. play	c. throw	d. wash
	7. WB You must	around LE	100 when you go div	ing.
	a. take	b. throw	c. leave	d. pay
	8. WB You can only	use to o	cut fishing lines.	
	a. knight	b. lives	c. knives	d. dives
D	El-Moasser Exerc	ises		
	9. Can I borrow yo	our phone? I ne	eed to make a /an	
	a. email	b. article	c. phone call	d. text message
	10. My father	two tickets to	watch the match in	the stadium.
	a. served	b. reserved	c. laughed	d. kept
	Try to keep this	plant in a	place.	
		b. worm	c. warm	d. wool
D	Definitions			
	12. 000 is a th		catch a fish.	
	a. Fishing net		c. Fishing line	d. Fishing boat
	13. The is th	e top part of th	e Earth, where we st	and.
	a. hole	b. planet	c. plant	d. ground
D	Language Notes,	Expressions	& Prepositions	- Marie Connection Property
	14. 3 You shouldn	't be angry	people you don't	agree with.
	a. of	b. up	c. with	d. in
	15 decision	s quickly isn't a	good habit. You sho	uld think well.
	a. Talking	b. Making	c. Having	d. Giving



مهارة التحدث

▶ 1. Ask and answer questions about a nature reserve :

السؤال عن المحمية الطبيعية والإجابة عليها: Questions (2) Answers - It is an area, smaller than a park for the purpose of preserving What is a nature reserve? some animals, plants or both. ما هي المحمية الطبيعية ؟ هي مكان أصغر من الحديقة يستخدم بغرض حماية بعض الحيوانات أو النباتات أو الاثنين معًا. · What do you think people must - They must be careful about do in a nature reserve? what they do. في رأيك ماذا يجب أن يفعل الناس في المحمية يجب أن يكونوا حذرين لما يفعلوه. الطبيعية؟ - They mustn't walk into animals' What do you think people mustn't يجب ألا يدخلوا بيوت الحيوانات. do in a nature reserve? - They mustn't give any food to في رأيك ماذا يجب ألا يفعل الناس في المحمية the animals or birds. الطبيعية ؟ يجب ألا يعطوا أي طعام للحيوانات أو الطيور. - We can save our planet by planting trees, nuts and fruits. How can we save our planet? يمكننا أن نحمى كوكبنا عن طريق زراعة الأشجار كيف يمكننا حماية كوكبنا؟ والمكسرات والفواكه.

▶2. Asking for and giving instructions :

طلب وإعطاء التعليمات :

طلب التعليمات Asking for instructions	إعطاء التعليمات Giving instructions
• I want to make a phone call. What should I do first ? أريد أن أقوم بإجراء مكالمة هاتفية. ماذا ينبغى على أن أفعل أولًا ؟	- First, you should turn the phone on. أولًا، يجب عليك تشغيل الهاتف.
• Like this ? بهذه الطريقة ؟	- Yes, that's right! Second, find the name or number of the person you want to call. نعم، هذا صحيح! ثانيًا، ابحث عن الاسم أو رقم الشخص الذي تريد الاتصال به.
• Should I press the person's number ? هل ينبغى على أن أضغط على رقم الشخص ؟	Yes, you should. Finally, wait for - the person to answer! نعم، ينبغى عليك. أخيرًا، انتظر الشخص ليقوم بالرد عليك!





مهارة الكتابة

A. Nature reserve:

محمية طبيعية:

- 1. We mustn't make much noise in the nature reserve.
 - ١. بجب ألا نحدث الكثير من الضوضاء في المحمية الطبيعية.
- 2. We mustn't give food to the animals or birds there.
 - ٢. يجب ألا نعطى طعام للحيوانات أو للطيور هناك.
- 3. The animals mustn't eat plastic.

- ٣. يجب ألا تأكل الحيوانات البلاستيك.
- 4. We mustn't walk into animals' homes.
- ع. يجب ألا ندخل بيوت الحيوانات.

B. How to plant:

كيفية زراعة نبات:

- 1. First, wash the plastic pot and dry it. اَوْلًا، قم بغسل الأناء البلاستيكي وجففه.
- 2. Second, fill the pot with soil.

- ٢. ثانيًا، املأ الإناء بالتربة (الزراعية).
- 3. Next, press your finger into the soil and make a hole.
 - ٣. ثم، أضغط بأصبعك في التربة الزراعية واصنع حفرة.
- 4. Plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.
 - أزرع البذرة في الحفرة وقم بتغطيتها بالتربة.

Water it every day.

٥. اسقيها كل يوم.

Don't give it too much water.

لا تقم بإعطائها الكثير من الماء.

Remember

تذكر

Rules for writing instructions

قواعد لكتابة التعليمات :

Use short sentences.

- استخدم جمل قصيرة.

- Use the imperative.

- استخدم صيغة الأمر.

- Say one thing in each sentence.

- اذكر شيء واحد في كل جملة.
- Use sequencing words to show the order in which actions or instructions happen: First, Second, Next, etc.
 - استخدم كلمات التسلسل لتوضح ترتيب الأحداث أو التعليمات باستخدام : أولًا، ثانيًا، ثم ...

Speaking & Writing Corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues قم بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة باستمرار 80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & Emails

N. C.	Vocabulary اختبر إتقائك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى إنقائك لمهارة الكتابة
Re 1.	Read and complete: 1. A. What is the book about?	Complete the following dialogue: Ahmed and Rashwan are talking about nature reserves.	Write a paragraph on : "Nature Reserves"
	B. It's about		
Kese	2. A. What are nature reserves?	Ahmed : What is the book about ? Rashwan: (2)	
1200	B. It's a for rare animals.	Ahmed : Nature reserves! (3)?	
natu	مكان	Rashwan: It's a place for rare animals or plants.	
		Ahmed : (4)?	
		Ahmed :(5)	
-	الأشجار ? 1. Po you like	Salma and Ghada are talking about planting trees.	Write an email about:
	B. Yes, I do.	Salma: Hi Ghada. Do you like trees?	
iree iv	2. A. Should I it every day?	Ghada : (1)	
n 6	reso		
	B. No, you shouldn't.	Salma: (3) ?	
ını		Salma: What is next?	
, W		Ghada:(4)	
		Salma: Should I water it every day?	
		Gnada: (5)	

General **Exercises**

On

LESSONS 3 & 4

	• Understand • Apply • Create
1	Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
-	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).
	1. We're going to visit a
	a. today b. next week c. tomorrow d. next Friday 3. We have nature reserves to our birds, plants and animals.
	a. frighten b. help c. feed d. catch
	4. We must be about what we do there.
	a. fast b. sorry c. afraid d. careful
2	Complete the following dialogue :
-	Omar is telling Kareem about his visit to a nature reserve.
	Kareem: Where did you go yesterday?
	Omar : (1)
	Kareem: How did you go there?
	Omar : (2)
	Omar : I saw a lot of rare animals and plants.
	Kareem: Did you give the animals anything to eat?
	Omar : (4)
	Kareem: (5)?
	Omar : This place is important because we protect these animals
	and plants. (Beni Suif 2023)
6	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
0	1. The top part of the Earth, where we stand is called
	a. planet b. moon c. floor d. ground
Ó	2. You drink polluted water. It's very dangerous. (Akhmim - Sohag 2023)
	a. must b. should c. mustn't d. can
Ó	3. We be careful with what to do in a nature reserve.
1	a. must b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. can't

c. mustn't

d. can't

1		Onderstand	Owblind	Orcute	
5	4. He must	to other	friends' ideas.		
1	a. listen			stening	d. listens
0	5. Plants n	eed good			souk - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)
	a. plane			round	d. hill
9	6. Be caref	ul, there's a			
	a. hall	b. hole	227/1/22	heel	d. whole
-		keep our b	oirds, plants an	d animals s	are. d. parks
	a. resort				u. parks
9		isThere			d. busy
	a. filled	b. dirty		mpty	250
١		the in a l			d. ground
	a. pot	b. water	G	17 (15 (15 (15 (15 (15 (15 (15 (15 (15 (15	-
١		means to put so	mething over s	something	else to protect or
	hide it. a. Save	b. Frigh	ten cR	eserve	d. Cover
		Western 1997			
1					word(s) in brackets:
ľ	1. When ye	ou visit a reserve	;, you (m	nust) cut the	e rare flowers.
	2. WB Shou	uld I (wate	ered) the plants	s now?	
	3. W You :	should(s	naring) your ide	eas with otl	hers.
	4. 🖼 Wha	t must the birds	and animals	(found	d) ?
611	Write an	email of about	EIGHTY (80)	words:	[مجاب عبنه في نهاية الكيتاب]
0					es. Your name is
	Hussien a	nd vour email ac	ldress is hussei	n66@yaho	o.com. Your friend's
		ress is mazenme			
	From	:			
		:			
	Jubject	•			
-					
1					

Lessons -

5 & 6

SB pages 51 & 52 WB pages 104 & 105



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	leaflet (n)	منشور - کتیب إرشادی
headphones (n)	سماعات الرأس	plastic rubbish (n)	نفايات بلاستيكية
fisherman (n)	صیاد	desert (n)	صحراء
skeleton (n)	هیکل عظمی	radio station (n)	محطة إذاعية
respect (ed) (v)	يحترم	writer (n)	كاتب / مؤلف
character (n)	شخصية	helmet (n)	خوذة
advertisement (n)	إعلان	gloves (n)	 قفازات (جوانتی)

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

skeleton - character - helmet - writer - snacks

- 1. He wears a when he rides his motorbike.
- 2. Naguib Mahfouz is the of famous novels.
- 3. Robinson Crusoe is the main in this story .
- 4. Vegetables are healthy

Lesson 5

SB page 51 WB page 104

suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح	smile (d) (v), (n)	يبتسم / ابتسامة
pull (ed) (v)	يسحب/يشد	The second secon	ا ۱۰۰۰ مرض
bones (n)	عظام	position (n)	موضع / مكان

Lesson 6 SB page 52 WB page 105

West Beach (n)	الشاطئ الغربى	conclusion (n)	خاتمة
poster (n)			عنوان (مقال - مس
key points (n)	نقاط رئيسية	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص/يوجز
headings (n)		concluding sentence (n)	
clear goals		conclude (d), (v)	.۔۔۔۔ پختتم/ینھی
local (adj)		comment (ed) (v), (n)	يعلق - تعليق

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

fisherman	a man who catches fish	صياد (سمك)
respect	show care and admiration for someone	يحترم
skeleton	the bones of the body	هیکل عظمی
rubbish	things we do not need	قمامة

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms a	and Anton	iyms	إدفات ومتضادات	متر
Word a	الكلم	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym /Opposite	
brave	شجاع	courageous	cowardly	جبا
tiny	ضئيل	very small	ضم/عملاق giant / enormous	ضم
increase	یزداد	grow bigger	ص decrease	ينقد
simple	بسيط	easy	قد complex	معن

Prefixes & Suffixes	wasted him ears in	وناهية	مقاطع بادئة
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples a	أمثا
–er	تحول الفعل لاسم	writer poster	کاتب ملصق
-ment	تحول الفعل لاسم	advertisement	إعلان

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. "Courageous" and " " have the same meaning.
 - a. giant
- b. coward
- c. brave
- d. tiny
- - a. small
- b. simple
- c. hard
- d. lazy

- 3. "Giant" and "enormous" are
 - a. synonyms
- b. antonyms c. prefixes
- d. suffixes
- 4. The suffix "....." changes the verb "advertise" into a noun.
 - a.-tion
- b.-ness
- c.-ment
- d.-er





General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 feel + (adj)

لاحظ: أن الفعل feel دائمًا يُتبع بصفة.

- Santiago felt worried.
- Rahma feels sad when she sees an orphan يتيم.

(SB page 51)

2 catch

معانى مختلفة للفعل

- catch a bus / a train / a plane
 - يصطاد سمك
- catch a thief يقبض على لص
- يلحق بالاتوبيس / القطار / الطائرة
- catch a ball
- بمسك الكرة
- catch an illness
- يصاب بمرض (SB page 51)

3 role - rule

- catch fish

- * role (n)
 - We all have a role to play in helping the environment.
- * rule (v), (n)

يحكم/قاعدة

دور

- The Romans ruled Egypt a long time ago.
- All students must obey the school rules.

(SB page 52)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جرهامة

Expressions	Prepositions
feel worried يشعر بالقلق	at the end of
find a new use يجد استخدامًا جديدًا	onto the boat متن قارب
كم كانت السمكة كبيرة How big the fish was	To conclude = In conclusion
have a role to play لديه دورًا يلعبه	ى الختام / في النهاية
give yourself clear goals	on the ground الأرض
حدد لنفسك أهدافًا واضحة	home to
l don't feel well today	study for the test راجع من أجل الاختبار
لا أشعر أننى بخير اليوم	for a long time مدة طويلة
more than ever أكثر من ذى قبل	make art with صنع أعمال فنية باستخدام
keep water clean يحافظ على الماء نظيفًا	run away
get well يتعافى	pieces of عمن pieces of



Skills



Reading and Listening



Pop Quiz
تدرب على ۱ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Lesson 5 SB page 51

The Old Man and the Sea

By Ernest Hemingway

Santiago was an old **fisherman**⁽¹⁾. He felt worried, because the last time he caught a fish was 84 days ago. On the 85th day, he felt a big fish at the end of his **fishing line**⁽²⁾. But the fish was **stronger than**⁽³⁾ Santiago. It took two days for him to finally pull it to the boat. Then the **sharks**⁽⁴⁾ came. When Santiago **returned to**⁽⁵⁾ his home on the beach, he had no fish, only **a skeleton**⁽⁶⁾. He felt **weak**⁽⁷⁾ and slept for a long time. But the other fishermen saw how big the fish was and knew that he was **brave**⁽⁸⁾ to catch it. Santiago lost the fish, but the other fishermen now **respected**⁽⁹⁾ him more than ever.







مهارة التفكير النقدى

- (۱) صیاد
- (2) صنارة صيد
- (3) أقوى من(4) أسماك القرش
 - (5) عاد إلى
- (6) ھيڪل عظمي
 - (7) ضعیف
 - (8) شجاع
 - (9) احترم



the following questions :

- Critical thinking skill

Learn 1. Who do you think was stronger, the fish or the fisherman?

- I think the fisherman was stronger than the fish.

Practise 2. What do you think the story teaches us?



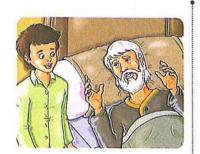
on Lesson 5 WB page 104

When Santiago woke up (1), he saw the boy Manolin. Santiago smiled (2).

"We must fish together (3) next time (4)," said Manolin.

"Yes, but I don't feel well (5) today", said Santiago.

"You must get well fast because there is so much I can learn from (6) you," said Manolin.



1) استيقظ (2) ابتسم (3) نصطاد معًا (4) المرة القادمة (5) لا يشعر بتحسن (6) يتعلم من

-• Lesson 6 SB page 52

We must clean our beach!

- 1-Where and when is the event (1)?
 - West Beach
 - Saturday afternoon 2 pm 5 pm
- 2. What do we need?
 - rubbish bags (2), gloves (3) (to protect your hands), a bottle of water to drink and snacks (4) to eat!
 - some people like listening to music on their headphones (5)!
- 3. Why must we clean the beaches?
 - 100,000 pieces of plastic rubbish on this beach
 - one plastic bottle can stay in our environment for up to 1,000 years (dangerous for animals and fish)
- 4. How can we tell people about our event?
 - posters (6) (around school and town)
 - emails to local groups
 - local radio station (7) or newspaper





(1) حدث (2) أكياس القمامة (3) قفازات (4) وجبات خفيفة (5) سماعات الرأس (6) ملصقات (7) محطة إذاعية

5. What should we do with the rubbish we find?

- recycle it - find a new use for it - make art with it

Life Skills

- Remember that we all have a role(8) to play in helping the environment.

Give yourself clear goals(9) on how to do this.



(8) دور (9) أهداف واضحة

Lesson 6 WB page 105

Match the headings with the conclusions to these three different texts.

- a. Keeping water clean
 - 1. To conclude, the sea gives us much more than a place to go swimming, so let's not make it dirty!
- b. Think before you use plastic material
 - 2. To conclude, we must remember how long plastic rubbish stays in our environment, and we must use different materials when we can.
- c. The amazing Red Sea
 - 3. In conclusion, the warm waters are home to everything from tiny jellyfish to very big sharks.

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- 1. Having a is important if you are hungry. c. role d. snack a. snake b. bag 2. Ernest Hemingway is the of "The Old Man and the Sea". c. baker d. cooker b writer a. reader
- 3. My brother bought new to listen to music.
 - c. helmets d. trousers a, headphones b, gloves
- 4. You should older people. It's important.
 - d. put a. delete c. expect b. respect



▶ SB , WB & Previous Exams

5. 3 The	other fishermen kn	new that Santiago w	as to catch the	e big
fish.			(Belbis - Sharkia	2022)
a. worr	ied b. brave	c. coward	d. weak	
6. 👀 A	is a folded pap	er that has informat	ion about something	J.
a. skele	eton b. leaf	c. leaflet	d. bowl	
7. 2 Mar	olin they fisl	h together next time	2.	
a. orde	red b. ruled	c. used	d. suggested	
8. 🕮 Mo	thers have an impo	rtant in look	ing after their c <mark>h</mark> ildre	n.
a. rule	b. role	c. door	d. real	
			(Shubra - Cairo	2023)
> El-Moasse	er Exercises			
9. The	catches fish an	d sells them to earn	money.	
a. chef	b. fisher	man c. writer	d. engineer	
10. He fell	over and broke a	in his body.		
a. smile	b. snack	c. bone	d. goal	
11. Our tea	cher told us to	the lesson into f	ve sentences.	
a, sumi	marise b. listen	c. paint	d. draw	
Definition	ıs			
12. The bo	nes of the body are	called a		
a. musc	cle b. stoma	ich c. lung	d. skeleton	
13. Things	we don't need are o	called		
a. musc	cles b. lungs	c. rubbish	d. air	
Language	Notes, Expression	ons & Preposition	s	
14. Every s	tudent has a	to play to clean the	classroom.	
a. role	b. rule	c. ruler	d. roll	
15. Forests	are a safe home	many wild anir	nals.	
a. off	b, from	c. to	d. in	

Speaking

مهارة التحدث

Discussing the problem of rubbish:

مناقشة مشكلة القمامة :

Questions



Answers



- · What makes rubbish increase in vour area?
 - ما الذي يزيد القمامة في المنطقة التي تعيش بها؟
- · What must people do to help? ماذا يجب أن يفعل الناس للمساعدة؟
- When people throw away rubbish everywhere.
 - عندما يتخلص الناس من القمامة في كل مكان.
- They must clean their city. يجب أن ينظفوا مدينتهم.



مهارة الكتابة

"The Old Man and the Sea":

الرجل العجوز والبحر:

1. Santiago was an old fisherman.

- ۱. کان سنتیاجو صیاد عجوز.
- 2. He felt a big fish at the end of his fishing line.
- شعر بسمكة كبيرة في نهاية صنارته.
- 3. The fish was stronger than Santiago.
- ٣. كانت السمكة أقوى من سنتياجو. 4. The other fishermen saw how big the fish was.
- ٤. رأى الصيادين الآخرين كم كانت السمكة كبيرة. 5. The fishermen now respected him more than ever.
 - ٥. الآن إحترم الصيادون سنتياجو أكثر من ذي قبل.

Tips for writing

1 Leaflet

منشور [كتاب إرشادي]

A leaflet is a folded paper that has information about something. It has:

المنشور [أو نشرة التعليمات] هو عبارة عن ورقة مطوية بها معلومات عن شيء ما وأهم

- 1. a short, exciting title.
- 2. a short, simple introduction.
- 3. clear headings.
- simple sentences.

- ما يميزها أن لها : ا. عنوان رئيسى قصير مثير للانتباه.
 - ٢. مقدمة قصيرة وبسيطة.
 - ٣. عناوين واضحة.
 - ٤. جمل بسيطة.

2 How to conclude a text

کیف تنهی نص مکتوب

- 1. When you finish writing a text, you use a concluding sentence.
 - ا. عندما تنهى نصّا، استخدم جملة ختامية.
- 2. A concluding sentence summarises the key points of your text.
 - الجملة الختامية تلخص النقاط الرئيسية للنص.
- 3. Always include a comma after phrases such as "to conclude," ٣. دائمًا ضع فاصلة سفلية بعد التعبيرات التي تعبر عن النهاية. "In conclusion,"

General Exercises

a. weak

b. strong

c. tiny

On

LESSONS 5 & 6

· Create • Understand O Applu 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب). 1. Santiago was an old d farmer a. fisherman b. carpenter c. sailor Santiago didn't fish for a long time. a. buy b. sell c. catch d. eat One day, there was a fish. a. dangerous c. fat d. small b. big 4. The fish was at the end of his c. boat a. ship b. net d. fishing line Complete the following dialogue: Adel tells Hany about a story he read. Hany: What are you reading, Adel? Hany: A story! (2)? Adel: It's called the Old Man and the Sea. Hany: What does it tell us about? Adel : (3) Hany: Did the old man catch any fish? Adel : (4) Hany: (5)? Adel: No, he couldn't sell it at the market. (Akhmeem - Sohag 2022) 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. Wear on your hands to keep them warm. a. glasses b. scarfs c. gloves d. coats 2. WB Judy felt very after she was ill, but she is better now. a. weak b. strong c. brave d. active 3. If something is, it is very small.

d. enormous

Understand

6 Apply

• Create

	1			
4	The state of the s	e sometimes do c		7.5
	a. Quiet	b. Lazy	c. Weak	d. Brave
	And the state of t		nd admiration for s	
	a. Conclude	b. Respect	c. Worry	d. Smile
d	6. When I share	a post, my friend		
	a. commas	b. comments	c. blogs	d. plays
	7. This isn't a		imals are talking ir	
	a. brave	b. simple	c. enormous	d. real
	8. You pa	ark here. It's not al	lowed.	(Maghagha - Minia 2023)
1	a. must	b, mustn't	c. should	d. can
	9. We must	the beaches re	gularly.	5.45
-	a. clean	b. cleaned	c. to clean	d. cleaning
	10. People	. smoke in hospita	als. It isn't allowed	to do that.
1	a. should	b. must	c. will	d. mustn't
1			(West	Mansoura - Dakahlia 2022)
2	Complete the s	entences with the	correct form of the	e word(s) in brackets:
5				The state of the s
Т	1 I fool (cadly) when I mis	s the school hus	
	and the second second	sadly) when I mis	s the school bus.	
	2. Tell me	(on) yourself.		
	2. Tell me 3. 😘 Don't	(on) yourself. (threw) rubbis	h on the ground.	
	2. Tell me 3. 😘 Don't	(on) yourself.	h on the ground.	
	2. Tell me	(on) yourself. (threw) rubbis nustn't) follow the	h on the ground. traffic rules.	
	2. Tell me	(on) yourself. (threw) rubbis nustn't) follow the	h on the ground. traffic rules. GHTY (80) words	on : مجاب عند في نبالة الخطاب (مجاب عند في نبالة الخطاب (Fagus – Sharkia 2023)
	2. Tell me	(on) yourself. (threw) rubbis nustn't) follow the raph of about Ele	h on the ground. traffic rules. GHTY (80) words	on : [مجابِ عنه في نهاية الكتاب]
10000	2. Tell me	(on) yourself. (threw) rubbis nustn't) follow the raph of about Ele	h on the ground. traffic rules. GHTY (80) words	on : [مجابِ عنه في نهاية الكتاب]
	2. Tell me	(on) yourself. (threw) rubbis nustn't) follow the raph of about Ele	h on the ground. traffic rules. GHTY (80) words	on : [مجابِ عنه في نهاية الكتاب]
	2. Tell me	(on) yourself. (threw) rubbis nustn't) follow the raph of about Ele	h on the ground. traffic rules. GHTY (80) words	on : [مجابِ عنه في نهاية الكتاب]
	2. Tell me	(on) yourself. (threw) rubbis nustn't) follow the raph of about Ele	h on the ground. traffic rules. GHTY (80) words	on : [مجابِ عنه في نهاية الكتاب]
	2. Tell me	(on) yourself. (threw) rubbis nustn't) follow the raph of about Ele	h on the ground. traffic rules. GHTY (80) words	on : [مجابِ عنه في نهاية الكتاب]
	2. Tell me	(on) yourself. (threw) rubbis nustn't) follow the raph of about Ele	h on the ground. traffic rules. GHTY (80) words	on : [مجابِ عنه في نهاية الكتاب]
	2. Tell me	(on) yourself. (threw) rubbis nustn't) follow the raph of about Ele	h on the ground. traffic rules. GHTY (80) words	on : [مجابِ عنه في نهاية الكتاب]
	2. Tell me	(on) yourself. (threw) rubbis nustn't) follow the raph of about Ele	h on the ground. traffic rules. GHTY (80) words	on : [مجابِ عنه في نهاية الكتاب]
	2. Tell me	(on) yourself. (threw) rubbis nustn't) follow the raph of about Ele	h on the ground. traffic rules. GHTY (80) words	on : [مجابِ عنه في نهاية الكتاب]
	2. Tell me	(on) yourself. (threw) rubbis nustn't) follow the raph of about Ele	h on the ground. traffic rules. GHTY (80) words	on : [مجابِ عنه في نهاية الكتاب]



on unit 📶

قيم مستواك ً يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
efs a _{tu}	الحالة الصفرية (lf) تستخدم للحديث عن أشياء دائمًا ما تكون صحيحة [حقائق].	1. Talking about saving the
قندیل البحر jellyfish سمك الرای اللاسع stingray سلحفاة	present simple present simple lf / When مضارع بسيط مضارع بسيط	environment: الحديث عن المحافظة على السيد
	ex. If it rains, we get water When it's late. I feel tired.	- We mustn't throw
يلدغ sting sting tail	Present simple if / when present simple	trash in the streets.
کوکب planet	ex. We get water if it rains.	- We must clean our
environment قبریان	- I feel tired when it's late.	beaches.
eserve age	مصدر الفعار musn't + inf. راها / 2- must / musn't	2. Describing sea
يخيف أمامي	تستخدم (must) للحديث عن الأشياء التي من الضروري فعلها وتستخدم ألم المستخدم إلاث من الأشياء التي من الضروري فعلها وتستخدم	animals:
	المستور منها المستور منها المستور الم	وصف الحيوانات البحرية :
تربه زراعیه Soll پحمی protect	- We musn't throw rubbish in the ocean.	 Ine shark is very dangerous.
سام fisherman صیاد هیکل عظمی skeleton seed	مصدر الفعل "should / shouldn't + inf مصدر الفعل "as should / shouldn't + inf تستخدم (fshould / shouldn't) للحديث عن أشياء من الجيد فعلها أو من الجيد تجنبها.	- The stingray is a big, flat fish.
م بعيدًا (away يفي	ex. He should study hard. - He shouldn't be rude to his friends.	



Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

🗲 تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة القراءة ومدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

اقرا وقم بالإجابة

Read and answer the questions:

am planning to get married soon. Who knows, maybe open up my own shop. My parents are happy with my I was ten, I had many toy cars. I played with them and crazy about driving and I also enjoy fixing cars. When repaired the ones my friends broke. I also helped my of all football teams. I am also interested in cars. I am that I like. I have a good job now and I really enjoy it. dad fix his car. So, I want to become a mechanic and My name's Adam. I love football. I am a great fan choice, too. They think it is important that I do a job I will have a car shop in the future.

The underlined word "happy" means b. pleased a. popular 🦄 التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في القطعة.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أنه من الممكن تخمين المعنى من قراءة السياق

Speaking

Describing a marine life and discussing some environmental problems.

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة

Complete the following dialogue:

Hamza and Yassir are talking about the problem of rubbish.

Hamza: What are you doing, Yassir?

Yassir : (1)

Hamza: Pollution! (2).....

Yassir: The biggest problem of pollution is rubbish.

Hamza: (3)

Yassir : People must clean their streets and cities. Hamza: How can they do that?

Yassir : (4)

Hamza: Can I help you?

Yassir : (5) ...

تكوين أسئلة والردعليها التحدي تريد السؤال عن [مشكلات البيئة والحياة البحرية] وتجد صعوبة في

🤔 مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع







Writing

التعبير عن موضوع ما "للمزيد من التدريب كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي."

يوانات البحرية] و [المحمية الطبيعية] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها. ر كاف من المفردات اللغوية و كيفية استخدامها في تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

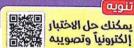
Topic	Step 1	Review	Topic Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2	Sentences	Step 3	Para
	▶ Write th	Write the meaning:	. gr	Fill in usir	Fill in using vocabulary:	Write a paragraph	aragraph
S			mlq	1. There are in the sea.	1. There are many of animals in the sea.		"Sea an
ew			imicap	2. The	2. The is the most dangerous.		
ins e			جھی	3. Sea ani	3. Sea animals use many ways to		
eəs			سمكة القرش	4 Othera	4 Other animals can swim yery		
		***************************************	انواع آنواع				
				5. The jelly	5. The jellyfish is		
ə		***************************************	قمامة	1. Nature	1. Nature reserve is an of	Z	"Nature res
ZGLA			منطقة/مساحة	2. We have	2. We have to help plants and		
e re	***************************************		حيوانات				
ınşe			بْخَيْق	3. We mus	3. We mustn't birds.		ħ
≥N				4. We mus with us	4. We must take all the		
							ő

P. (2) (3)		
يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة مهارتك في التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [الحيا) مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر [rite a paragraph on : "Sea animals"	"Nature reserve"

Luestions collected from previous exams تدریبات مجمعهٔ من اختیارات المحافظات علی الوحدة	om previous exams تدریبات مجمعهٔ من اختیا
1. Complete the following dialogue: Yara asks Tasneem about her weekend in Alexandria.	4. If Monaa lot of TV, she feels tired. a. watch b. watching c. watches d. watched
Yara : Good morning.	(Nasr City - Cairo 2023)
eem:(1)	5. When you leave ice in the sun, it
Yara : (2)	Water. (Qalyoub - Qalyoubia 2023)
mee	a, became b, becomes c, becomingd, become
Tala : How was the weather like there :	6. What must you before exams?
Vara : Fantastic! (4)	a. do b. to do c. doing d. did
Tasneem: late fish.	(Samalut – Minia 2023)
Yara : What else did you do there?	7. You'll the animals and birds if you make
Tasneem : (5)	noise. (Tema - Sohug 2022)
(El-Hamoul - Kafr El-Sheikh 2022)	a, laugh b, frighten c. save d, keep
2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	8. Trees keep air and clean.
protect it. It is a	a. unhealthy b. noisy c. hot d. healthy
a, octopus b, shark c, turtle d, whale	(Abo Kabir - Sharkia 2023)
(Haram - Giza 2023) 2 Wa don't need these old things Vou can not	9. A jellyfish you when you touch it.
them with the	a. stings b. hides c. covers d. protects
a. plastic b. planet c. rubbish d. shark	(Abnoub - Assuit 2022)
	10. My grandmother is 65. We all what
leas (Facility Charles 2003)	she says. (Menouf - Menofia 2023)
a. jellyfish b. octopus c. shark d. whale	a, delete b, became c, respect d, expect

Test

on unit 📶



Understand

Apply

Create



قم بحل اختبار تراكمي في الملحق

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- 1. What is the most dangerous sea animal?
 - a. The dolphin
- b. The whale
- c. The shark
- d. The octopus
- 2. What happens if the shark loses a tooth?
 - a. It loses another one.
- b. A new one grows.

c. It uses less teeth.

- d. It loses its life.
- 3. How many teeth does the shark use in its life? More than
 - a. 1,000 b. 4,000
- c. 20,000
- d. 2000

- 4. What is the text about?
 - a. The shark

b. The sea animals

c. The teeth

d. The shark's tail

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Omar and Ziad are talking about sea animals.

Omar: Yesterday, we had an interesting science lesson.

Ziad :(1).....?

Omar: It was about sea animals.

Ziad : What animals did you learn about?

Omar: Yes, they are dangerous.

Ziad : Where does a stingray live?

Omar : (4)ls it a big fish ?

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. Some of the

plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can **recycle** some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. When we use plastic shopping bags, we mustn't throw away these bags in rivers. We must try to use other materials – for example paper and glass, because **these** are easier to recycle. When we use a plastic shopping bag, we should try to use it more than once.

It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!

a. Choose the correct answer from a . b . c or d:

ar entoone and a			
1. The underli	ned word " <u>these</u> " re	efers to	
a. dolphins		b. paper and glas	S
c. fishing lir	nes	d. plastic bags	
2. The word "r	ecycle" means	over *	
a. reuse	b. repay	c. reduce	d. refer
3. It's better to	use paper than	•	
a. glass	b. bags	c. fishing	d. plastic
b. Answer the fo	ollowing questions	:	
4. Give a suita	ble title for this pas	sage.	
5. Why must v	ve try to use other r	materials such as pa	per and glass?
(20)	7		
			lamada - Beheira 2022)
). Vocabulary	& Structure	
	A RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF THE		
			. Vafr El Chailth 2023)
			The second secon
c. use someth		d. never use som	
2. What to	o get high marks?		
2. What to a. I should do	o get high marks ? b. should I do	c. do I should	d. should do
a. I should do	b. should I do		
a. I should do			
	a. dolphins c. fishing lir 2. The word "r a. reuse 3. It's better to a. glass b. Answer the fo 4. Give a suita 5. Why must v 6. Why do you Choose the cor 1. The word "reco	a. dolphins c. fishing lines 2. The word "recycle" means a. reuse b. repay 3. It's better to use paper than a. glass b. bags b. Answer the following questions 4. Give a suitable title for this pas 5. Why must we try to use other recommendations 6. Why do you think plastic is dar D. Vocabulary Choose the correct answer from 1. The word "recycle" means to	c. fishing lines d. plastic bags 2. The word "recycle" means

4	. At school, y	ou talk to y		
	a. must	b. can	c. mustn't	
5	. When a turi	10 mm		ell. (Nag Hammadi - Qena 2022)
	a. go	b. goes	c. going	d. went
· 6	i. A res	serve is an area of	land in which a	nimals and plants are
	protected.			
	a. furniture	b. future	c. nature	d. culture
7	'. What's you	r favourite	in this story ? - A	lice. (El Badari - Assiut 2022)
	a. adventur	e b. event	c. charact	er d. actor
9	3. You can pra	ctise your favouri	te sport in the s	ports
	a. centre	b. road	c. barn	d. circle
<u> </u>	. The	is the air, water an	d land on Earth	
	a. wind	b. environm	ent c. ocean	d. skeleton
10	. Cleaning pl	lastic rubbish fron	n the beaches ar	nd the ocean helps to
	protect our			(Abu Hummus - Beheira 2022)
l	a. moon	b. problem	c. star	d. planet
3	Complete the	contoness with the	an course form	of the word(s) in brackets :
	- CIC-I-DIMEN - COMPANY		The second secon	
1		ungry, I (ha		
1		(must) forget v	F 8	
1	3. What	(we should) do	with the rubbish	?
	4. What	(happened) who	en we boil water	· ?
		E.	Writing	
5	Write an em	ail of about EIGH	TY (80) words:	(بالنظا يالي نبالة الكياب)
	To your friend	d Fady to tell him	about planting t	rees. Your name is Omar
1	and your ema	ail address is oma	rfarid@gmail.co	m. Your friend's email
i	address is fac	ly40@gmail.com.		
	From :.			
	200			

	***************************************		***************************************	

Stop here!

Mini-Test on unit 1	1 for Al-Azhar	students	اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف
1 Supply the missing	parts in the fo	llowing diale	ogue:
Ramy asks Hany ab Ramy: Good morni Hany: Good morni Ramy: Did you good Hany: (1) Ramy: (2) Hany: I saw a lot o	ing. ing . to the zoo?		
Ramy: Were there a Hany: (3) Ramy: No, I didn't. Hany: Thanks for y	any elephants? 		nat elephants eat grass ?
2 Choose the correct	answer from a,	b, c or d:	
2. She join the a. mustn't	o. turning faculty of Medic o. may not	c. turned tine. She is ve c. should	d. turn ery clever. d. couldn't
4. You should make a a. hall	o. dolphin ato plant o. hole	c. tiger a tree. c. hill	d. turtle d. hell
5. A/Anis the	o. carpenter	c. sailor	d. pilot
Reorder the word 1. materials - mustn	't - <u>We</u> - use - pla		
2. an old - fisherma			
3. reef - the - in - live	es - A stingray - c	oral.	
4. reserve - land - A			
4 Write a paragraph			

6. What should I (doing) to come first? Ahmed must ______ (following) the school Choose the correct form of the word(s) in 8. What must the animals and birds 7. Giza is famous (with) the great 9. When you put a key in water, it the brackets from a, b, c or d: d. will follow d. can find b. follows d. will sink b. finding d. will do b. sinks b. did b. for c. followed (found)? a. sinking Pyramid. a. follow c. does a. finds a. do rules. c. find c. sank a. in c. to Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to Yassir : I swam and built sandcastles on the beach. d. I will go swimming c. Why did you go there d. When did you go b. It was wonderful b. How did you go Ahmed: How was your last holiday, Yassir? d. No, I won't complete the following dialogue: b. Yes, I did Ahmed: Did you buy any souvenirs? Yassir : I went to Hurghada. Ahmed:(3) c. What did you do there a. Who did you go with a. Where did you go Ahmed : (2) d. Why are you busy b. When will you go Yassir : (1) c. They had fun a. No, she isn't Yassir : (4) a. I was busy c. Yes, I do



My future

SB pages 54:63 WB pages 107:113

Objectives:

Reading

An interview with a marine biologist; a text about future plans, a text about traditional jobs in Africa: a text predicting the future

Writing

A paragraph giving information about the future

· Listening

A description of a job, an interview with a marine biologist, people talking about their future plans

Speaking

Describing and asking questions about jobs; talking about future times

Language

Relative pronoun who; question tags; the first conditional

• Life Skills:

Productivity: set clear goals

Lessons -

1 & 2

SB pages 54:57 WB pages 107 & 108



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

accountant (n) محاسب	research (n)	بحث
architect (n) مهندس معماری	scientist (n)	عالم
businessman (n) رجل أعمال	writer (n)	کاتب
businesswoman (n) سيدة أعمال	marine biologist (n)	عالم أحياء بحرية
مبرمج کمبیوتر (computer programmer (n	pilot (n)	طيار
photographer (n) مصور فوتوغرافی	dentist (n)	طبيب أسنان
engineer (n) مهندس	laboratory (n)	معمل
interview (ed) (v),(n)	business (n)	عمل تجاری / شرکة
بجرى مقابلة - مقابلة (شخصية)	design (ed) (v),(n)	يصمم - تصميم

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

scientist - photographer - laboratory - dentist - pilot

- 1. My teeth hurt. I'll go to the
- 2. The flies planes and visits many countries.
- 3. I like taking photos. I want to be a/an
- 4. We have a science lesson. We will go to the

Lesson 1 SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 107

office (n)	مكتب	من المال (sum (n	مسألة حسابية / مبلغ
meeting (n)	اجتماع	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
engine (n)	محرّك	quiz (n)	اختبار قصير
machine (n)	آلة	photograph (n)	صورة فوتوغرافية
African countries (n)		sick (adj)	مريض
score (d)(v)	يحرز / يسجل	name (d) (v), (n)	یسمی - اسم
wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك	voluntary work (n)	-

Lesson 2

SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 108

dive (d) (v),(n)	يغطس/غطسة	diving (n)	رياضة الغطس
Atlantic Ocean	المحيط الأطلنطي	terrible (adj)	رهیب / فظیع
dream (ed) (v),(n)	يحلم/حلم	storm (n)	عاصفة
prefer (red) (v)	يفضل	volunteer (ed) (v), (n)	يتطوع / متطوع
especially (adv)	بصورة خاصة	record (ed) (v)	يسجل
radio programme (n)	برنامج إذاعي	collect (ed) (v)	يجمع
presenter (n)	مقدم برامج	coral reefs (n)	شعاب مرجانية
A CONTRACTOR OF	AND MAKE		

Famous cities and countries

مدن وبلاد مشهورة

Neweiba (n)	مدينة نويبع	England (n)	انجلترا
Thailand (n)	تايلاند	Australia (n)	استراليا
France (n)	فرنسا		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

ارع Present	المض	الماضى Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P	
sell	يبيع	sold	sold	
read	يقرأ	read	read	

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

an accountant	a person who works with money and nun	محاسب nbers		
a businessman	- a man or a woman who works in business رجل أعمال/سيدة أعمال			
businesswoman	- a person who works in an office and goe	s to meetings		
a dentist	a person who looks after people's teeth	طبيب أسنان		
a scientist	a person who works with science	عالم		
an architect	a person who designs buildings	مهندس معماری		
an engineer	a person who designs or mends or works v engines and buildings	with machines, مهندس		
a pilot	a person who flies a plane	طيار		
a marine	a person who studies the ocean, the plar	nts and		
biologist	animals in it	عالم أحياء بحرية		
a computer	a person who writes computer programm	nes		



engine	a machine that makes something move	محرك
teacher	a person who teaches students	معلم
machine	an object, often electric, that can do jobs for us	آلة
meeting	a time when people who work together can talk abo	out اجتماع
photographer	a person who takes photographs غرافی	مصور فوتو
writer	a person who writes books or articles	کاتب
laboratory	a place where scientists work and do experiments	معمل
test	to check or do a scientific experiment on something	يختبر

Collo	cations				متلازمات لفظية
design	buildings	يصمم مبانى		voluntary	work
design	machines or engine	يمل تطوعى يصمم آلات ومحركات 5	يقوم بعمل تطوعى		
	books or articles	يكتب كتب أو مقالات	do	a test	يجرى اختبار
write	computer programmes			very well	يؤدى أداءًا حسنًا
		يبرمج برامج الكمبيوتر		sums	ا ا ا ا ا ا ا ا

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms a	nd Antor	nyms	دفات ومتضادات	متراد
Word an	الكا	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym /Opposite	
useful	مفيد	important	useless /الفائدة	
interesting	شيق	exciting	horing	ممل
sick	مريض	il	well ية جيدة	

Prefixes & Suffixes		وناهية	مقاطع بادئة و
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples	
-ing	تحول الفعل لاسم	meeting	اجتماع
-er	تحول الفعل لاسم	designer programmer	مصمم
–al	تحول الاسم لصفة	traditional	نقلیدی نقلیدی

Exercise

on Vocabulary Study

0	Chanca	sho	corroct	answer	from	2	h	COK	d	•
\odot	Choose	tne	correct	answer	rrom	a,	0,	COL	u	•

- 1. The antonym of the word "useful" is "".
 - a. exciting
- b. ill
- c. boring
- d. useless
- 2. "Interesting" and "....." have the same meaning.
 - a. boring
- b. exciting
- c. important
- d. rich
- 3. The suffix "....." changes the word "design" into a noun.
 - a.-ment
- b.-er
- c.-ion
- d.-ly
- 4. We can get the adjective from the word "tradition" by adding the suffix ".....".
 - a.-er
- b.-al
- c.-ment
- d.-tion

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 'd like (to + inf.) = want + (to + inf.)

- يريد أن يود أن
- I'd like to be an architect. = I want to be an architect. (SB page 55)
- 2 work (ed) (v),(n)

يعمل - عمل (اسم لا يعد)

* work in / for

يعمل في / لدى

- I work in / for a big company.
- Hend works for a hotel.
- * work with

- يتعامل مع
- > An accountant works with money and numbers.
- * work on

- يعمل على تحسين (مهارة صناعة مثلًا)
- > -You need to work on writing skills.

(SB page 57)

3 advice - advise

* advice (n)

- نصيحة [اسم لا يعد]
- My advice to you is to study hard to become a marine biologist.
- * advise (d) (v)

ينصح

▶ - I advise you to do a lot of voluntary work in a charity. (SB page 57)



Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

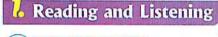
Pop Quiz

قطع الفهم

Expres	sions	Prepositions		
decide to + inf.	يقرر أن	work hard	يعمل بجد	
at least	على الأقل	on the phone	على الهاتف	
check information	يدقق في المعلومات	in a wheelchair	يتحرك بكرسى متحرك	
score a lot of goals			یعتنی بـ	
take photographs	يلتقط الصور	volunteer for	يتطوع	
It's not nice to	ليس من اللطيف أن	the rest of	الباقي من	
hard work	عمل صعب	turn into	يتحول إلى	
work hard	يعمل بجد	go out in a boat for a dive		
do a lot of sums يحل العديد من المسائل الحسابية			يخرج في قا <mark>ر</mark> ب للغطس	

11

Skills



Listening

on Lesson 1SB page 54

Narrator: 1

Male : He looks after(1) people's teeth. He's a dentist.

Narrator: 2

Male: She studies science⁽²⁾. She's a scientist.

Narrator: 3

Male: He's a person who designs(3) machines(4). He's an engineer.

Narrator: 4

Male : She works with numbers. She finds out how much money

a business⁽⁵⁾ gets. She's an accountant.

Narrator:5

Male : He takes photos⁽⁶⁾. He's a photographer.

Narrator: 6

Male : She works in an office (7) and goes to meetings (8). She's

a businesswoman.

Narrator: 7

Male : He writes computer programs⁽⁹⁾. He's a computer programmer.

(5) عمل تجاری / شرڪة	(4) الآلات	(3) يحمور	(2) علوم	(۱) یمتنی بـ
(9) برامج ڪمبيوتر	/ اجتماعات	(8) لقاءات	(7) مكتب	(6) بلتقط صور

Narrator: 8

Male :She writes books or articles (10). She's a writer.

Narrator: 9

Male : She designs buildings (11). She's an architect.

• (10) مقالات (11) مبانی

on Lesson 1SB page 55

Which job from the quiz is she talking about?

Randa: It's an interesting job, but it isn't an easy job. You usually work in an office. You have to do a lot of sums (1). I'm good at maths, so I'd like to do this job.

···• (1) يحل مسائل حسابية / يتعامل مع المبالغ

on Lesson 2 SB page 56

Presenter(1): This week, we interviewed(2) Nesma El-Soory, a marine

biologist. So, Nesma, what's a marine biologist?

Nesma : A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the

plants and animals in it.

Presenter: Why did you decide (3) to become a marine biologist?

Nesma: I'm good at science and I love the ocean. The animals in our

oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

Presenter : What's your day like?

Nesma: In my job, every day is different! On some days, I go diving (4)

around **coral reefs** (5). On other days, I **test** (6) water from the ocean in the **laboratory** (7). I also spend a lot of time on the

computer, writing the results (8) of tests.

Presenter: What's the best thing about your job?

Nesma : My research (9) helps to protect (10) the plants and animals in

the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look

after our planet(11), isn't it?

(6) يختبر	(5) شعاب مرجانية	(4) الغطس	(3) يقرر	(2) أجرى مقابلة	(1) مقدم برامج
700	(11) كوكب	(10) يحمى	(9) بحث (علمی)	(8) نتائج	Joco (7)



Presenter: And what's the worst thing?

Nesma: There are bad things about every job, aren't there?

Sometimes the weather (12) is terrible (13). It isn't nice to go out

in a boat for a dive when there's a storm(14)!

مفس (13) مطيع / رهيب (13) عاصفة (12) عاصفة

on Lesson 2 SB page 57

Listen to the rest of the interview with Nesma.

Presenter: You visit some interesting places(1), don't you?

Nesma: Yes, I do! At the moment⁽²⁾, I'm working in the Red Sea⁽³⁾,

near Neweiba. Last year, I worked in Australia. And before

that, I worked in Thailand.

Presenter: Wow! And what different kinds of animals do you study?

Nesma : Well, some marine biologists study large animals, like

whales and dolphins. But I study fish and smaller animals

around coral reefs.

Presenter: It sounds like a dream job⁽⁴⁾ to be a marine biologist, but it

isn't an easy job, is it?

Nesma: No, it isn't. There's a lot of information to collect⁽⁵⁾ and

record(6). It's hard work and it takes a long time. I work about

ten hours a day.

Presenter: What is your advice⁽⁷⁾ to young people who want to become

a marine biologist?

Nesma: Work hard at school, especially in science. You have to love

science to be a marine biologist! And find out everything you can about the job. You can even **volunteer**⁽⁸⁾ for dives.

Presenter: That sounds like great advice. Thank you, Nesma.

Nesma: You're welcome⁽⁹⁾.

التي يحلم بها	(4) الوظيفة	(3) البحر الأحمر	(2) في هذه اللحظة	(1) اماكن رائعة	
(9) على الرحب والسعة	(8) يتطوع	(7) نصيحة	(6) يسجل	(5) يجمع	



on Lesson 1 SB page 55

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer. An engineer⁽¹⁾ is a person who designs machines and engines⁽²⁾. My uncle designs engines for planes. I'd like to be an engineer one day! My aunt is a businesswoman⁽³⁾. That's an interesting job, too. A businesswoman and a businessman⁽⁴⁾ are people who work in an office⁽⁵⁾ and go to meetings⁽⁶⁾.



Amir

(1) مهندس (2) محركات (3) سيدة أعمال (4) رجل أعمال (5) مكتب (6) (جتماعات / مقابلات

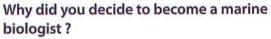
on Lesson 2 SB page 56

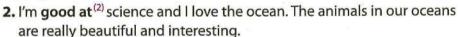
My dream job

This week, we interviewed Nesma El-Soory, a marine biologist (1).

What's a marine biologist?

 A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it.





What's your day like?

3. In my job, every day is different! On some days, I go diving around coral reefs. On other days, I **test**⁽³⁾ water from the ocean in the laboratory. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the **results**⁽⁴⁾ of tests.





What's the best thing about your job?

4. My research⁽⁵⁾ helps to protect the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it?

And what's the worst thing?

5. There are bad things about every job, aren't there?
Sometimes the weather is terrible. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm ⁽⁶⁾!

(5) بحث علمی	•
	(<mark>5</mark>) بحث علمی



• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

D	Key vocabulary			
	1. The scientists di	d lots of tests in th	e	
	a. bank		c. funfair	d. library
	2. Amr's uncle is a			
	a. writer		b. architect	5
	c. dentist		d. computer pro	grammer
	3. Scientists do a lo		the planet.	
	a. research	b. plays	c. acts	d. games
	4. My uncle Ali is a	/an He has	many projects ar	nd a big company.
		b. engineer		
	5. An engineer is the	ne person who		
	a. plays		c. designs	d. cooks
D	SB, WB & Previou			
	6. I living in	the countryside to	living in the city.	(Samanod-Gharbia 2023)
	a. prefer	b. refer	c. design	d. study
	7. I like computer s	o much. I hope to	work as a/an	in the future.
	a. actor		b. dentist	
	c. computer pro		d. doctor	(Qaha - Qalyoubia 2022)
	8. A famous scient	st to teach		
	a. kept	b. volunteered	c. spent	d. tested
400			(Biya	ıla - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)
	El-Moasser Exerci:			
	9. Ayman's hobby	is taking photos. F	le wants to be a/a	ın
	a. dentist	b. businessman	c. engineer	d. photographer

10. Heba works ir	n a bank. She is a/an		
a. actor	b. accountant	c. teacher	d. nurse
11. The of	the car doesn't worl	k well. I need a r	nechanic.
a. door	b. glass	c. engine	d. tyres
Definitions			
12. The person w		n and the plants	and animals in it is
a. an enginee		b. a marine b	iologist
c. a dentist		d. a doctor	
13. A/An is	a person who studi	ies or works witl	n science.
a. architect	b. engineer	c. dentist	d. scientist
Language Note	s, Expressions & P	Prepositions	
14.1him to	be careful with the	knife.	
a. revised	b. advised	c. walked	d. viewed
15. It's really imp	ortant to afte	r our planet.	
a. take	b. look	c. make	d. do
2. Speaking		* # * _ P	مها <mark>ر</mark> ة التحدث

وصف وتوجيه أسئلة عن الوظائف:: Describing and asking questions about jobs:

Questions	Answers
• Who is an architect ? من هو المهندس المعمارى ؟	- An architect is a person who designs buildings. المهندس المعمارى هو شخص يقوم بتصميم المبانى.
• Who is a writer ? من هو الكاتب؟	- A writer is a person who writes > books or articles. الكاتب هو شخص يكتب الكتب أو المقالات.
• Who is a marine biologist ? من هو عالم الأحياء المائية ؟	- A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it. عالم الأحياء المائية هو شخص يدرس المحيط والنباتات والحيوانات التي توجد به.
• Who is a dentist ? من هو طبيب الأسنان؟	- A dentist is a person who looks • after people's teeth. طبیب الأسنان هو شخص یقوم بالاعتناء بأسنان المرضی.

Speaking & Writing Corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues قم بجل تدريبات هذه الصفحة باستمرار 80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & Emails

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Speaking Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing Writing
NAME OF TAXABLE PARTY.	Read and complete: 1. A. Why do you want to be a?	Complete the following dialogue: Rana is talking with Ahmed about jobs. Ahmed: What is your father's job? Rana:(1)	Write a paragraph on : "Your parent's job"
Your parent's job	B. To help	Ahmed: (2) Rana: He looks after sick people. Ahmed: Does your mother work? Rana: (3) Ahmed: (4) Rana: She is a teacher.	
A TOTAL STATE OF THE PARTY OF		Ahmed: Do you want to be a doctor or a teacher? Rana:(5) (Thnasia - Behira 2023)	
A CONTRACTOR OF THE CONTRACTOR	an ?	Sara and Hala are talking about their dream job. Sara: How are you, Hala? Hala: (1) Sara: (2) Hala: I'd like to be an engineer. Sara: Is your father a teacher?	Write an email about: "Your dream job"
		Sara: A dentist! What about your mother? Hala: (4) Sara: (5) Hala: I want this job to design machines.	

III Language

1. The Relative pronoun (who)

We can join two sentences about people using the relative pronoun (who): يمكننا ربط جملتين فاعلهما عاقل باستخدام ضمير الوصل (who).

- ex. A businesswoman is a woman. She works in an office.
 - A businesswoman is a woman who works in an office.

2. Question Tag السؤال المذيل

We use question tag to check information (so we expect people to agree).

. السؤال المذيل للتحقق من معلومات (لذلك نتوقع ان يوافق الشخص على السؤال).

The voice goes down at the end of the question tag.

ينخفض الصوت في نهاية السؤال المذيل.

◄ يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالأتى:

🦿 ضمير فاعل 🕂 فعل مساعد 🏮 جملة خبرية

ا. عند وجود فعل مساعد في الجملة الخبرية يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالآتي :



ex. She is wearing glasses, isn't she?

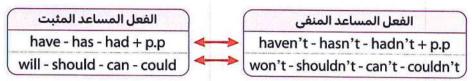
- Ashraf should study hard, shouldn't he?



- ex. Your brother can't play the guitar, can he?
 - Maha won't (will not) travel to England, will she?



- أي أنه يتم تغيير حالة الفعل المساعد من الإثبات إلى النفي أو من النفي إلى الإثبات كالآتي :



♦ لاحـظ أن: (v. to be) سواء كان أساسيًا أو مساعدًا في الجملة يستخدم كالتالي :

ex. - It isn't hot today, is it?

-There were a lot of people at the meeting, weren't there?

٢. عند عدم وجود فعل مساعد في الجملة الخبرية يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالآتي :

الجملة الخبرية	السؤال المذيل
فعل بدون إضافات (في زمن المضارع البسيط)	,don't
فعل مضاف إليه ies/es/s (في زمن المضارع البسيط)	,doesn't
فعل في التصريف الثاني (في زمن الماضي البسيط)	

◄ ملحوظة: صيغة الفعل المساعد المنفى في السؤال المذيل بجب أن تكون مختصرة (isn't - don't).

- ex. You like shopping, don't you?
 - Adel speaks English well, doesn't he?
 - She used the computer, didn't she?

٣. لاحظ إذا كان (v. to have) فعل أساسي ينفي كالتالي:

have → don't

has → doesn't

had → didn't

- ex. Nabil has a car, doesn't he?
 - We have a new flat, don't we?

لاحظ أنه إذا وجدت الكلمات التالية يكون السؤال المذيل مثبت لأنها تدل على النفى:

ex. - We can hardly go inside, can we?

0. تحول (l am) إلى (? aren't l) أما (l am not) إلى (?l am).

ex.-lam tall, aren't !?

- I am not short, am I?

عند الإجابة على السؤال المذيل:

- إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة تكون الإجابة بـ [Yes].

ex. - Nada is late, isn't she? - Yes, she is.

- إذا كانت الجملة منفية تكون الإجابة بـ [No].

ex. - They aren't at home, are they ? - No, they aren't.

المذيل : المذيل المذيل المذيل المذيل : المذيل المديل ا

- عند السؤال عن معلومة :

ex. - Omar doesn't play tennis, does he?

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

▶ SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. You're Ali's	cousin, ?		
a. isn't he	b. aren't we	c. don't you	d. aren't you
2. 🕮 An architect	t is a person	designs buildings	
a. who	b. which	c. when	d. where
3. 🕮 A person	takes photogr	aphs is called a ph	otographer.
a. where	b. which	c. who	d. when
4. W She I	French, doesn't she	?	
a. speaks	b. never speaks	c. doesn't speak	d. is speaking
5. WB Nasser will v	write to me when h	ne gets there,	he ?
a. will	b. will not	c. isn't	d. won't
6. WB Sara wants	to be a marine biol	ogist,?	
a. doesn't she	b. does she	c. is she	d. isn't she
7. This is the perso	on helped m	e at school.	(Nasr City - Cairo 2023)
a. when	b. whose	c. which	d. who
8. You like your jo	b, you ?	(1	Kom Ombo - Aswan 2022)
a. don't	b. has	c. does	d. doesn't
9. Ahmed has a ne	ew car, he ?		(Al-Weili - Cairo 2023)
a. isn't	b. wasn't	c. didn't	d. doesn't



	-	Mo	ass	er	Ex	erci	Ses
--	---	----	-----	----	----	------	-----

10 You can find vitamins in many kinds of food

8. This bag is heavy, (is) it?

9. Toka likes pop music, (does) she?

13. Mona has got a car, (have) she?

11. He went to school early, (doesn't) he?

12. Salma is the woman (when) stole my wallet.

10. A nurse is a person (which) looks after sick people.

ro. roa carrinia vi	carring in marry ki	1143 Of 1004,	•
a. aren't you	b. can't you	c. can you	d. do you
11. Our parents are	e very helpful,	?	
a. are they	b. they are	c. they aren't	d. aren't they
12. I'm your friend	,1?		
a. are	b. am not	c. aren't	d. am
Complete the s in brackets:	entences with th	ne correct form o	f the word(s)
SB & WB Exercise	es		
1. W Can you na	me a person	. (whose) is taller th	an you ?
2. SB You	(don't) forget to p	hone me, will you	?
3. S You want to	o be a nurse,	(doesn't) you ?	
4. W You did yo	ur homework last	night, (don'	t) you ?
El-Moasser Exerc	ises		
5. Soha speaks Er	nglish well,	(didn't) she ?	
6. Hady is the foo	tballer(wh	ose) scores many g	goals.
7. They bought a	new car,(d	lid) they ?	

General **Exercises**

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

ı	● Understand	te	
1	Listen and choose the correct a	answer from a , l	o, c or d:
0	ستماع في نهاية الكتاب].	ابة الصحيحة (نصوص الا	ستمع إلى معلمك واختر الإج
	1. Hana wants to be a	b. marine biolo	
	2. A marine biologist studies the o a. plants c. birds and insects 3. Hana is good at	b. animals d. plants and a	
	a. English b. maths	c. science	d. history
	4. She loves the	c. sky	d. ocean
2	Complete the following dialogue	: :	
	Samar and Nada are talking about Samar: How are you? Nada: (1)	don't we talk abou English, math and science and Englis d you ? r dreams.	l science. What
3	Choose the correct answer from		
0 0	 He gave me some	c. oceans gist to wate c. damage	d. corals r from the ocean. d. send

0	4.			hs. He wants to be	
		a. dentist	b. engineer	c. photographer	d. biologist
	_				(Shubra - Cairo 2023)
0	5.		e every Friday,		a v
	_	a. isn't he		c. does he	d. is he
1	6.				Zagazig - Sharkia 2022)
	_	a. who	b. where	c. when	d. whose
	/.	a. Patients	doctors to take ca b. Nurses	are of sick people. c. Architects	d. Writers
•	8.	. WB I didn't like t	his book. I though	t it was	
		a. beautiful	b. terrible	c. amazing	d. interesting
	9.	A:What about the	he of the te	sts ?	
		a. causes	b. reasons	c. jobs	d. results
0	10		ew bag, he	500 CO 000 000	(Helwan - Cairo 2023)
		a. doesn't	b. hasn't	c. has	d. does
				1.546	
4	[omplete the sent	ences with the coi	rect form of the wo	ord(s) in brackets:
1	1	. She was here ye	sterday, (isı	n't) she ?	
	2	. This is the engin	eer (whose) designed this ma	chine.
	3	. 💯 Girls are qui	eter than boys,	(isn't she) ?	
	4	. Ahmed and Om	ar play chess on F	ridays, (aren	't) they ?
5	1	Write a paragrap	h of about EIGHT	Y (80) words on:	محاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب
0					
			"Marine bi	ologist"	(Beni Suif 2023)
	•••				
	•••				

					<u> </u>

Lessons





Key Vocabulary

apartment (n)	ٔ شقة	colourful jewellery (n)	مجوهرات ملونة
university (n)	جامعة	grandparents (n)	أجداد
workshop (n)	ورشة	skill (n)	مهارة
pottery (n)	الأوانى الفخارية	education (n)	تعليم
adult (n)	بالغ/راشد	earn (ed) (v)	یکسب / پربح



تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

apartment - education - University - earn

- 1. I study science at Cairoin Giza.
- 2. You should work hard to much money.
- 3. We live in a/an in New Cairo.

SB pages 58 & 59 WB page 109

enough (adj)	كاف	hope (d) (v)	يتمنى
life events	أحداث حياتية	countryside (n)	الريف
flying (n)	الطيران	player (n)	لاعب
blog (n)	مدونة	probable (adj)	محتمل

Lesson 4

SB page 60 WB page 110

African villages	قرى أفريقية	necklace (n)	عقد / قلادة
local people	المحليون	beliefs (n)	معتقدات
businesses (n)	أعمال تجارية	fully (adv)	تمامًا / كليًا
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعي	continue (d) (v)	يستمر/ يواصل
culture (n)		traditional jobs	وظائف تقليدية
ring (n)	خاتم	modern offices	مكاتب حديثة
clay (n)	صلصال / طين الفخار	repair (ed) (v)	يصلح
extra (adj)	زائد/ إضافي	tradition (n)	غُرف/عادة



Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

المضارع Present		الماضى Past	التصريف الثالث	
catch	يلحق بـ	caught	caught	
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn	

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

		ادرس هده
earn	get money from a job by working	يربح - يكسب
jewellery	 things such as rings and necklaces that you wear necklaces, rings, earrings etc. often made of silver or 	مجوهرات gold
adult	a fully grown person	بالغ/راشد
workshop	a place where people work to create thingsa room or a small building where people make or repair	ورشة things
skill	an ability to do something well	مهارة
culture	the art, ideas, beliefs, etc. of a group of people	ثقافة
pottery	pots, dishes, etc. made from clay	الأوانى الفخار
apartment	a home that is a number of rooms in a building	شقة
basket	something you can use to carry or hold things	سلة
colourful	with many different colours	ملون
education	the knowledge you get from studying something	تعليم
get married	become husband and wife	يتزوج
university	a place where you study after you leave school, for a degre	جامعة e

Collocations

متلازمات لف<mark>ظ</mark>ية

The state of the s		Santa and the sa			متدرتات تسيد
	a job	يحصل على وظيفة		basket	يصنع سلة
get	married	يتزوج	males	pottery	يصنع أوانى ف <mark>خ</mark> ارية
	money	يحصل على مال	make	jewellery	يصنع مجوهرات
do	a job	يؤدى وظيفة		things	يصنع أشياء

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms a	and Antor	nyms	بادات	مترادفات ومتض
الكلمة Word		المرادف Synonym	Antonym /Oppos	المضاد
local	محلي	native	international	عالمي
continue	يستمر	go on	stop	يتوقف

Prefixes & Suffixe	5	هية	مقاطع بادئة ونا
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Example	أمثلة ع
–ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	colour <mark>ful</mark> help <mark>ful</mark> hope <mark>ful</mark>	ملون متعاون متفائل
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	traditional	تقليدي
–er	تحول الفعل لاسم	player	لاعب

Exercise	on Vocabulary Study
EXCICISE	Oli vocabataly study

				-		Part Control of the Control
0	Chanca	the correct	SMCMOK	from a	h	cord:
(CHOOSE	the confect	GIIDAACI	HUIH	1101	

1. "Native" and	"" have the s	ame meaning.	
a. useful	b. local	c. international	d. helpful

a. useful b. local 2. The opposite of the word "native" is ".....".

a. local

c. colourful d. international b. traditional

3. The suffix "....." changes the word "hope" into an adjective.

a. -ly

b. -ist c. -er d. -ful

4. We can get the noun from the word "play" by adding the suffix "...... d. -or b. -er c. -ist

a. -ent



General Notes on Reading & Listening

earn money = make money

- My uncle works hard to earn money.

(Reading on Lesson 4 SB page 60)

2 pass = succeed in

* pass an exam

يجتاز الامتحان

- Ashraf passed his exams.

* succeed in an exam

ينجح في امتحان

Ashraf succeeded in his exams.

(Reading on Lesson 3 SB page 58)

فعل مفرد maths + singular verb

مادة الرياضيات

لاحظ أن مادة الرياضيات تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد أي يأتي بعدها فعل مفرد.

- Maths is my favourite subject.

(SB page 58)



Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

	Ехрге	ssions	
have children	لديه أطفال	learn to drive	يتعلم كيف يقود
all over the country	في جميع أنحاء البلد	all over the world	فى جميع أنحاء العالم
repair things	يصلح الأشياء	(be) able to + inf.	قادر على
take the rubbish from	يخرج القمامة من	(be) better for	فضل لـ
I'd love to	يود أن		
	Prepo	sitions	
plans for future	خطط للمستقبل	travel around the w	بسافر حول العالم orld/
come back	يعود	a way for	طريقة لـ

Skills

Reading and Listening





on Lesson 3 SB page 58

Munir's plans for the future

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that education⁽¹⁾ is very important. I hope⁽²⁾ that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I'll study maths. It's my best subject⁽³⁾.



I don't like flying, so I don't want to travel around the world (4). I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I'll get married, but how many children will I have ? I don't know!

	2	12.0	
العالم	02	ióliui	(4)

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

Traditional jobs in Africa

Today, many people in Africa work in modern offices⁽¹⁾, but traditional iobs⁽²⁾ and skills⁽³⁾ are still important.

- People started making pottery⁽⁴⁾
 thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some
 people make pottery in workshops or
 their own homes. If you go to Fayoum,
 you will see many people making pottery.
 There is also a school where children and
 adults⁽⁵⁾ can learn this skill.
- 2. It is traditional to make jewellery⁽⁶⁾ in Kenya. You can see the colourful⁽⁷⁾ jewellery in markets⁽⁸⁾ all over the country. Today, some local businesses⁽⁹⁾ also use social media⁽¹⁰⁾ and the internet to sell jewellery to people in different countries. It is an important skill because it continues⁽¹¹⁾ an old tradition⁽¹²⁾ and it helps local people to earn money⁽¹³⁾.
- 3. It is an important part of Africa's culture⁽¹⁴⁾ to make baskets. It is also a way for women from small African villages to earn money. In Ghana, there are a lot of women who make and sell baskets⁽¹⁵⁾. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world.









(5) البالغين	(4) الأواني الفخارية	(3) مهارات	(2) وظائف تقليدية	(1) مكاتب حديثة
(10) وسائل التواصل اللجتماعي	(9) أعمال تجارية محلية	(8) أسواق	(7) ملون	(6) مجوهرات / حلی
(15) سلال	(14) ثقافة أفريقيا	(13) يكسب مال	(12) تقليد / عادة قديمة	(11) يواصل - يبقى





Lesson 3 SB page 59

Rami and Amira are talking about their plans for the future.

Presenter: Rami, what do you want to do when you're older?

Rami

: I really want to be an architect(1). I must go to university(2) for that so I need to work hard. I won't pass my exams(3) if I don't work hard!

When I finish university, I want to travel. I'd like to get a job(4) in

another country, like South Africa. But after a few years, I'll come back to Egypt. I'd like to get married(5) one day, but I don't want to live in Cairo. I prefer(6) the countryside (7)!

Presenter: Amira, what about you?

Amira

: I want to go to university, so I hope I'll pass my exams! If I go to university, I'll study science. I'd love to be a scientist⁽⁸⁾! It's a really interesting job. I'd like to get a job in Cairo and buy an apartment(9). I want to learn to drive so that I can visit my family. One day, I'd like to get married and have children.

(5) أتزوج	(4) يحصل على وظيفة	(3) اجتاز امتحاناتی	(2) جامعة	(۱) مهندس معماری
- N	(9) شقة سكنية	(8) عالم	(7) الريف	(6) يفضل

Exercise

on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- 1. I'll join the after I finish secondary school.
 - a. kindergarten

b. primary school

c. preparatory school

d. university

2. My car broke down and I looked for a to ask a mechanic for help.

d. clinic

- a. gallery
- b. workshop

	Making jewellery h	nelps some people	e in Kenya to	money.
	a. win	b. earn	c. give	d. lose
	4is very impo	ortant for students	' life to get good jo	bs.
	a. Pollution	b. Education	c. Engineering	d. Rubbish
	SB , WB & Previous	Exams		
	5. 3 If I have enough	n money, I'll buy a	an to live in.	
	a. school	b. library	c. apartment	d. car
			(S	Smalut - Minia 2023)
	6. 🕮 If I my ex	ams, I'll go to univ	ersity. (Bei	beis - Sharkia 2022)
	a. fail	b. move	c. pass	d. study
	7. WB You need a lot of	of to make a	a beautiful basket.	
	a. dishes	b. skills	c. shops	d. plates
	El-Moasser Exercise	5		
	8. Eating colourful eg	gs in Sham El-Nes	sim is an Egyptian .	
	a. ring	b. skill	c. blog	d. tradition
	9jewellery is	a traditional craft	in Kenya.	
	a. Getting	b. Making	c. Giving	d. Doing
	10a good job i	sn't easy nowaday	/s.	
	a. Making	b. Giving	c. Getting	d. Bringing
D	Definitions			
	11. The fully grown pe	rson is called a/an		72 760 Nothing
	a. baby	b. teenager	c. adult	d. child
	12. A is a room	75 PA ASSESSMENT OF THE PARTY O		
	a. mosque	7.	c. school	d. café
	13 is the art, id			
	a. Education	,	c. Culture	d. Business
D	Language Notes, Ex	pressions & Pre	positions	
	14. I'll get married and	d two child	ren.	400
	a. get	b. have	c. earn	d. take
	15. She is able	oeautiful baskets.		
	a. makes	b. making	c. make	d. to make





مهارة التحدث

busing critical thinking to discuss traditional jobs:

استخدام التفكير النقدي لمناقشة الحِرّف التقليدية :

Questions



Answers



- Why is it important to keep traditional jobs?
 - لماذا من المهم أن تستمر الحِرّف التقليدية ؟
- How can people use modern technology to help them?

- كيف يمكن للناس استخدام التكنولوچيا الحديثة في مساعدتهم ؟

- I think because they continue an old tradition and help local people to earn money.
 - . أعتقد لأنها استمرار لعادة أو تقليد قديم وتساعد السكان المحليين في كسب النقود.
- I think some local businesses use social media and the internet to sell their products "jewellery".

أعتقد ان بعض الأعمال التجارية المحلية تستخدم وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى والانترنت فى بيع منتجاتهم (المجوهرات).



مهارة الكتابة

Traditional jobs:

وظائف تقليدية :

- 1. In Egypt, people make pottery in their workshops or their own homes. ا. في مصر يصنع الناس أواني فخارية في ورشهم أو في منازلهم.
- 2. There are many markets in the villages of Fayoum.

٢. يوجد العديد من الأسواق في قرى الفيوم.

- 3. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world. ". يمكنك شراء سلال ملونة من غانا من بلدان في جميع أنحاء العالم
- 4. Women from small villages make baskets to earn money.

٤. تصنع النساء التي تعيش بالقرى الصغيرة السلال لكسب النقود.

5. You can see the colourful jewellery in markets all over Kenya.

٥. يمكنك أن تجد المجوهرات الملونة بالأسواق في جميع أنحاء كينيا.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ عمد الصقحة باستمرار. قم يحل تدريبات هذه الصقحة باستمرار. 80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & Emails

Plans for the future

Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 اختبر مدی اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
Read and complete: 1. A. What are you reading? 8. I'm reading about traditional	Complete the following dialogue: Sara and Aya are talking about traditional jobs. Sara: Hi, Aya. How are you? Aya: (1)	Write a paragraph on : "Traditional jobs"
الوظائف 2. A. Is modernuseful	Sara: What are you reading ? Aya: (2) Sara: Traditional jobs!	
النكنولوچيا . for these jobs ? B. Yes, it is.	Aya: Yes, they are very important. Sara: (4) Aya: It's important to keep traditional jobs to help local people. Sara: Is modern technology useful for these jobs?	
A. What do you want to be when you're older? B. I want to be an	Aya: (5) Magdy asks Kareem about his plans for the future. Magdy: Kareem, what do you want to be when you're older?	Write an email about : "Plans for the future"
مهندس معماری 2. A. Why do you want to be an architect ?	Magdy: (2) Kareem: I want to be an architect because I like to design buildings. 7	
B. Because I like to design مبانی	Kareem: I must go to university to be an architect. Magdy: Do you want to travel around the	
3. A. What must you do to be an architect? B. I must go to	A. What must you do to be an architect? Anagdy: Where do you want to live when you're older? B. I must go to	

Traditional Jobs



III Language

The first conditional clause with "If" [If] الحالة الشرطية الأولى لـ [If]

التكوين Formation

ex. - If Ali studies hard, he will pass his test.

عندما تأتي (if) في منتصف الجملة لا نضع (ر) بين الجملتين:

ex. - Mona will catch the bus if she is quick.

Interrogative ميغة الاستفهام

A) Yes/No question:

أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

ex. - Will you stay inside if it's hot tomorrow?

B) Wh-question:

ب] السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

- ex. What will you do if it is windy tomorrow?
 - We won't go to the beach.

الاستخدام Usage

We use the first conditional to talk about the probable result of an action. We use if or when with the present simple, followed by (will) with a verb without (to).

* تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لـ [1f] للحديث عن النتيجة المحتملة للحدث. وتستخدم | when / if مع المضارع البسيط متبوعًا بـ [will] والفعل بدون [to]

- ex.- If Ahmed comes early, he will meet his uncle.
 - If it is windy tomorrow, they won't go to the beach.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

▶ SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. If Ahmed	. English well, he will	travel to USA. 🔑	l Shorouk - Cairo 2023)				
a. speak	b. speaking	c. speaks	d. spoke				
2. WBwe water the tree every day, it will give us more fruit.							
a. So	b. While	c. Although	d. If				
3. SB If you go to	Fayoum, you will	many people	making pottery.				
a, saw	b. see	c. seen	d. seeing				
4. If we are noisy i	n class, our teacher	us.	(Shubra - Cairo 2022)				
a. punish	b. will punish	c. punished	d. are punished				
5. 33 If I er	nough money, I'll buy	an apartment nea	r the Red Sea.				
a. had	b. hadn't	c. have	d. haven't				
6. If I up ea	rly, I'll visit my grandf	ather. (Sa	manod - Gharbia 2023)				
a.get	b.got	c. will get	d. getting				
7. Wilf we the rubbish from all the oceans, they will be better							
for sea life.							
a.take	b. 'll take	c. taking	d.took				



▶ El-Moasser Exercises

8. If she drops the g	lass of milk on the	e floor, her mom will	angry.
a. be	b. is	c. being	d. been
9. If you sleep early,	you early.		
a. will get up	b. got up	c. would get up	d. getting up
10. If I visit my grand	oarents, I t	ake them some sweet	s.
a. wouldn't	b. am	c. will	d. would
11. A: How wh	en you pass your	exams ? B: I will feel h	парру.
a. did you feel		b. will you feel	
c. have you feel		d. would you fee	1
Complete the sent	ences with the	correct form of the	word(c) in
brackets:		correct form of the	word(S) III
SB & WB Exercises			
1. 1 You (sp	eak) better Englis	sh if you practise ever	v dav.
2. 🕮 If I (ate)			,, .
		(swam) every day	in summer.
4. 🕮 If I go to the s			
		you get a good job ?	
El-Moasser Exercise	es		
6. If I visit Aswan, I	(send) you a	picture.	
7. What will (H	nappening) if you	forget your homewo	rk?
		ould) go to university	
9. He will borrow a b			

10. If my dad gets home early, I'll (being) happy.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand

Create

ı				(i)	
1	Listen and choo	se the correct	answer from a, b,	cord:	
0).	ستماع في نهاية الكتاب	إجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الا،	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا	
	1. The important pa		lture is making		
	a. clothes	b. gloves	c. baskets	d. pots	
-	2. There are a lot of	who ma	ke and sell baskets.		
	a. boys	b. women	c. men	d. children	
	3. They make and s				
	a. Somalia		c. Egypt	d. South Africa	
	4. They make and s				
	a. earn	b. lose	c. waste	d. spend	
7	Choose the corr	ect answer fro	ma,b,cord:		
0	1. Her favourite pie	ece of is h	er diamond ring.		
			c. furniture	d. paper	
6	2. Noha is good at	things ar	nd reusing them in h	er house.	
			c. revising	d. losing	
0	3. The opposite of	"traditional" is "	". (West		
	a. modern		c. local	d. old	
-	4. WB My cousin is	a/an nov	v. She was 18 last we		
and the same of	a. baby	b. adult	c. child	d. kid	
•	5. I'd like to	my exams to go			
	a. get	b. pass	c. succeed	d. cross	
•	6. Hearned how to	before b			
	a. ride	b. cycle	c. drive	d. dive	
•	7. My brother				
	a. made	b. got	c. took	d. did	

. If I go to	the univ	ersity, I	geography.	
a. would	study	b. study	c. am studying	g d. 'll study
. What wil	l you tak	e with you if	you your grand	father?
a. visit		b. 'll visit	c. visited	d. visits
. If you do	n't study	hard, you	pass the exam.	
a. will		b. won't	c. would	d. wouldn't
Complete	the sent	ences with th	he correct form of the w	vovel(e) in bypeleet
				roru(s) in bracket
			(be) a holiday ?	
. 🔢 If I ea	at too ma	ny sweets, I	(would) be fat.	
. W Who	(0	do) you see it	f you go out tonight?	
(C	oid) you i	nvite me if v	ou have a party?	
write an	email of	about EIGH	TY (80) words:	اب حمق في ترقاية الكَمَّاب
name is B	aher and	your email a	n about your plan for the address is baherbingo@ fares@gmail.com	ne future. Your @yahoo.com. You
name is B friend's er	aher and nail addr	your email a ess is sadekf	address is baherbingo@ fares@gmail.com.	ne future. Your Dyahoo.com. You
name is B friend's er From	aher and nail addr	your email a ress is sadekf	address is baherbingo@ fares@gmail.com.	ne future. Your @yahoo.com. You
name is B friend's er From To	aher and mail addr	your email a	address is baherbingo@ fares@gmail.com.	ne future. Your Dyahoo.com. You
name is B friend's er From To Subject	aher and mail addr	your email a	address is baherbingo@ fares@gmail.com.	ne future. Your
name is B friend's er From To Subject	aher and mail addr	your email a	address is baherbingo@ fares@gmail.com.	ne future. Your Dyahoo.com. You
friend's er From To Subject	aher and mail addr	your email a	address is baherbingo@ fares@gmail.com.	yahoo.com. You
name is B friend's er From To Subject	aher and mail addr	your email a	address is baherbingo@ fares@gmail.com.	yahoo.com. You
name is B friend's er From To Subject	aher and mail addr	your email a	address is baherbingo@ fares@gmail.com.	yahoo.com. You
name is B friend's er From To Subject	aher and mail addr	your email a	address is baherbingo@ fares@gmail.com.	yahoo.com. You
name is B friend's er From To Subject	aher and mail addr	your email a	address is baherbingo@ fares@gmail.com.	yahoo.com. You
name is B friend's er From To Subject	aher and mail addr	your email a	address is baherbingo@ fares@gmail.com.	yahoo.com. You
name is B friend's er From To Subject	aher and mail addr	your email a	address is baherbingo@ fares@gmail.com.	yahoo.com. You
name is B friend's er From To Subject	aher and mail addr	your email a	address is baherbingo@ fares@gmail.com.	yahoo.com. You

Lessons

5 & **6**

SB pages 61 & 62 WB pages 111 & 112



Openity Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

mind map (n)	تطبيق على الهاتف المحمول / الحاسوب (n) app خريطة ذهنية		
injury (n)		cure (n)	علاج / دواء
electric car (n)	سيارة كهربائية	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
countryside (n)	الريف	illness (n)	مرض
grandchildren (n)	أحفاد	health (n)	صحة

Lesson 5 SB page 61 WB page 111

language (n)	لغة	video games (n)	ألعاب الفيديو
writing (n)	كتابة	revise (d) (v)	يراجع
spelling (n)	الهجاء	area (n)	منطقة

Lesson 6 SB page 62 WB page 112

completely (adv)	بشكل كامل	hopeful (adj)	متفائل
headlines (n)	عناوين رئيسية	description (n)	وصف
predictions (n)	تنبؤات	exciting (adj)	مثير/شيق
engineering (n)	الهندسة	happen (ed) (v)	يحدث
personal information (n) معلومات شخصية		introduce (d) (v)	يقدم

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	المضارع	الماضى Past	التصريف الثالث ٢٠٩
make	يصنع	made	made
begin	يبدأ	began	begun

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

- · something that does a particular job on your phone or computer
- something on your phone that helps you to use maps, book tickets, etc. تطبيق على الهاتف / الكمبيوتر

app



cure	a treatment that can make an illness better	علاج
illness	being ill	مرض
countryside	the area that is outside a town	الريف

Colle	ocations				متلازمات لفظية
play	the guitar	يعزف على الجيتار	finish	may de made	
play	the piano	يعزف على البيانو	Tinish	my book	أنهى قراءة كتابى

play	the guitar	يعزف على الجيتار	finish	my book	1-4-1
pidy	the piano	يعزف على البيانو	11111511	ITIY DOOK	أنهى قراءة كتابى
	an app = appli	ication	learn	a new langua	يتعلم لغة جديدة age
design	the second secon	يصمم تطبيق لله	learn	new things	يتعلم أشياء جديدة
a lateral	a video game	يصمم لعبة ڤيديو	give	some advice	يعطى بعض النصائح
finish	my project	أنهى مشروعي	give	information	يعطى معلومات
11111311	school	ينهى الدراسة	b	-11	
make	predictions	يضع تنبؤات	have/get	а јор	يحصل على وظيفة

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms	and Anto	nyms	ے ۔	مترادفات ومتضادا
Word	الكلمة	دف Synonym	Antonym /Opj	المضاد oosite
teach	يعلم	educate	learn	ىتعلم
begin	يبدأ	start	finish	ا ينهى

Prefixes & Suffixes		اهية	مقاطع بادئة ون
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples	and in the same
-ness	تحول الصفة لاسم	illness	مرض
-ed	تحول الفعل لصفة	injur <mark>ed</mark>	مصاب
dis-	تعطى عكس المعنى	disappear	یختفی
–ful	تحول الاسم لصفة	hopeful	<u> </u>
-ion	تحول الفعل لاسم	prediction	تنبؤ

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. "Teach" and "....." are antonyms.
 - a. start
- b. learn
- c. play
- d. run

- 2. "Begin" and "start" are
 - a. synonyms
- b. opposites
- c. prefixes
- d. suffixes

3. The suffix "....." changes the word "ill" into a noun.

a. -less

b. -ment

c. -ly

d. -ness

4. We can get the noun from the verb "predict" by adding the suffix ".....

b. -ment

c. -er

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

	Expre	essions	
spend time	يقضى وقت	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
book tickets	يحجز تذاكر	live longer	يعيش طويلًا
	وماذا عن بعد ذلك؟ ? on	follow the advice	يتبع النصيحة
start university	يبدأ دراسة في الجامعة	do first	يقوم بفعل شيء أولًا
	Prepo	sitions	
revise for	يراجع لأجل	check for any mistal	يتحقق من أى أخطاء kes
end with	ینتهی بـ	in ten years' time	فی خلال عشر سنوات

Skills

Reading and Listening





on Lesson 5 SB page 61

Presenter

: What are your plans (1) for the future, Hussein?

Hussein

: I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I want to learn

to play the guitar(2). And before I leave school(3), I want to

design a video game(4)!

Presenter

: Wow! And what about later on? What will your life be like in

ten years' time?

Hussein

: In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I think I'll be

a doctor. I'd like to live in the city.

Presenter

: Thank you, Hussein.

Presenter

: Khadeeja, what are your plans for the future?

Khadeeja

: Well, one day I'd like to be a teacher. But there are lots of

other things I want to do first.

Presenter

: Tell me about them.

(4) يصمم لعبة فيديو

(1) خُطط (2) يعزف على الجيتار (3) ينهى الدراسة في المدرسة



Khadeeja: Well, before I get a job, I'd like to learn a new language (5).

I also want to learn to drive.

Presenter : And what will your life be like in 10 years' time?

Khadeeja: That's a long way into the future, isn't it? Well, in 10 years'

time, I'll have a job in a school. I think I'll get married, too.

Presenter: Thanks, Khadeeja.

قفا (5)

on Lesson 5 WB page 111

Dina: I want to be a doctor but I need a lot of skills⁽¹⁾ to do that.

Tomorrow, I'm going to visit my uncle. He's a doctor so he can give me some advice⁽²⁾.

Next summer, I'm going to study English in England. You need to speak good English to be a doctor. Before I leave school, I'm going to do **voluntary work**⁽³⁾ at a **children's hospital**⁽⁴⁾. In a few years' time, I want to go to a good university.

Then, in about ten years' time, I think I'll be a doctor in a good hospital!

(1) ممارات (2) نصيحة (3) عمل تطوعي (4) مستشفى أطفال



on Lesson 6 SB page 62

My predictions⁽¹⁾ for the future

By Ahmed

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of **changes**⁽²⁾ in our lives. **Technology**⁽³⁾ will **make our lives easier**⁽⁴⁾ and more interesting. Our phones will be even more important and we will have **apps**⁽⁵⁾ for everything.

Scientists will find new cures⁽⁶⁾ for illnesses⁽⁷⁾ so people will live longer. Some illnesses will disappear⁽⁸⁾ completely⁽⁹⁾.

All our cars will be **electric**⁽¹⁰⁾. If this happens, it will be much better for the **air**⁽¹¹⁾ in our cities, won't it? I don't think I will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves!

There will be a lot of interesting new jobs for people. Robots⁽¹²⁾ will do some of the jobs that people do today. But I don't think we will have robot doctors or teachers!

(6) علاجات	(5) تطبیقات	(4) تجعل حياتنا أسهل	(3) تكنولوجيا	(2) تغيرات	(1) تنبؤات
(12) الإنسان اللَّلي	(11) هواء			(8) تختفی	1100

I think there will be a lot of exciting changes in the future, but some things will stay the same. Children will still go to school, learn new things and spend time with friends.

on Lesson 6 WB page 112

- Today, I am going to write about life in the future. I think life in the next 100 years will be very different. Here are some reasons⁽¹⁾ why.
- First, I think there will be a lot more people living in Egypt. I think our cities will be much bigger. They will also be better⁽²⁾. We will have clean, quiet electric cars⁽³⁾.
- 3. Second, we are all going to be healthier. People will not work long hours so they will have more time to do sports (4) and stay healthy (5).
- 4. In conclusion (6), I think the future will be very different, but I am hopeful (7) that life will be better for my children and my grandchildren.

(1) أَسْبَاب (2) أَفْضُل (3) سَيَارَات كَمَرِيائِيةً (4) بِمَارِس رِياضَةً (5) يَبقَى بِصِدَة جِيدَةً (6) فَي الخَاتِمَةُ (7) عَثَمَانُلُ (1) السِّارِ (1) الْفَضُل (2) الْفَضُل (3) السِّارِ (4) السِّارِ (5) السِّارِ (6) في الخَاتِمَةُ (7) السِّارِ (7) السُلِّ (7) السِّارِ (7)

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

b. draw

Key vocabulary 1. Flu is a common causes fever and headache. d. number c. change a, headline b. illness 2. Apps are examples of new d. health c. environment a. technology b. planes 3. I saw an accident and the old man had a /an c. education d. skill b. injury a. design ▶ SB , WB & Previous Exams 4. I think there will be a lot ofchanges in the future. d. disappearing b. exciting c. traditional a. lazv 5. WB If you, people cannot see or find you. (Tahta - Sohag 2022) d. begin b. cure c. disappear a. build 6. I like maths, so I want to study when I grow up. b. engineering c. engineer d. engines a. engine (Hehia - Sharkia 2023) 7. I am that life will be better for my children. d. worried a. sad b. bored c. hopeful El-Moasser Exercises 8. Our teacher asked the new student to herself to the class.

c. introduce

d. text

a. produce



9. The policeman asked Heba t	o give a full for the thief she saw.
a. headlines b. descript	ion c. advice d. passport
	the green plants is quieter than living in
the city.	
a. countryside b. seaside	c. capital d. hospital
11. You shouldn't share your	with people you don't know.
a. video games	b. technology
c. language	d. personal information
> Definitions	
12. A/An is something that of	does a particular job on your phone or computer.
a. headline b. design	c. app d. prediction
13. A/An is a treatment th	nat can make an illness better.
a. illness b. cure	c. app d. design
Language Notes, Expression	
14 three months' time, I	'm going to start university.
a. In b. At	c. For d. On
15. Can you predictions a	bout what will happen in the next 30 years?
a. take b. make	c. do d. think
2. Speaking	مهارة التحدث
Talking about future plans :	لحديث عن الخطط المستقبلية :
	2,000
1	🕂 (be) going to 🕂 inf.
ex Next year, I'm going to design	- العام القاد <mark>م</mark> سوف أقوم بتصميم تطبيق للهاتف. . an app
عل Subject	الفا 🕂 want to 🕂 inf.
ex Next month, I want to buy a	- أريد أن اشترى سيارة الشهر القادم.
- Before I leave school, I want	to learn a new language.
	- قبل أن أنهى دراستى في المدرسة، أريد أن أتعلم لغة جديدة.
2000 TO 100 TO 1	الفا 🕂 'd like to 🕂 inf.
ex In a few years' time, I'd like t	
- Before I get a job, I'd like to	- فى خلال سنوات قليلة، أحب أن أحسن من مهاراتى. live in the town.
الشخصية لما سيحدث في المستقبل	- قبل حصولى على وظيفة، أحب أن أعيش فى المدينة. أما عند الحديث عن ترتيب خططك المستقبلية أو تنبؤاتك
	الفاء 🕂 will 🕂 inf.
ex In five years' time, I think I'll	
,	- في غضون خمس سنوات، أعتقد أنني سأصبح عالمًا.
- I don't think I will have to lear	- في عصون حمس سنوات اعتقد التي تسطيح عالما. .n to drive because cars will drive themselves
- ستكون ذاتية القيادة	. Wild arive Cleanse cars will drive trieffiseives. - لا أعتقد، أنني سوف أضطر إلى تعلم كيفية القيادة لأن السيارات

General **Exercises**

On

LESSONS 5 & 6

Understand

Apply

Create

1	Listen and choo	se the correct an	swer from a, b, c	ord:
		، الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب]	الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص	استمع إلى معلمك واختر
	1. I've got	plans.		
	a. a few	b. a lot of	c. two	d. three
	2. I've got plans for	or the		
	a. vacation	b. past	c. trip	d. future
	3. I want to learn t	to play then	ext year.	85 #8
	a. guitar	b. piano	c. flute	d. drum
	4. I also want to	a video game		
ä	a. buy	b. play	c. design	d. make
2	Choose the corr	ect answer from	a, b, c or d:	
	1. Doing sporing	is good for your	•	
	a. app	b. health	c. map	d. area
	2. My friend told	me what in t	he party yesterday	
	a. happened	b. wrote	c. revised	d. learned
	3. Pupils should	well for their	exams.	
	a. advise	b. revise	c. reply	d. rewrite
	4. 🔢 will n	nake our lives easie	er.	(Isna - Qena 2023)
	a. Technology	b. Illnesses	c. Problems	d. Pollution
	5. You need to	to improve yo	ur reading skill.	
	a. practise	b. design	c. divide	d. happen
	6. It's difficult to	predictions f	or the future.	(Hehia - Sharkia 2022)
	a. do	b. take	c, make	d. be
	7 cars are	cleaner for our env	vironment.	
	a. Electric	b. Plastic	c. Personal	d. Old

My	fut	ure
----	-----	-----

0			Company of the Compan	
	8. Asmaa doesn	t like crisps,	?	
	a. does she	b. doesn't she	c. is she	d. isn't she
0	9. This is the boo	kI bought y	esterday.	(Beni Suif 2023)
	a. who	b. which	c. when	d. where
o	10. 🌃 If you get i	up late, yout	he school bus.	
	a. will catch	b. won't catch	c. wouldn't catch	d. don't catch
3	Complete the se	entences with the co	rrect form of the wor	d(s) in brackets :
			(got) enough money.	
		ect is English,	122 NE N	
		(drives) his ca		
			g) to school in the fut	9
	4. Gas Ciliaren v	/iii stili (goli l	g) to school in the fut	ure.
4	Write an email	of about EIGHTY (80) words :	مجاب عن في بناية الكمات
	To your friend M	lavar to tell her abo	ut your dream job Vo	ur name is Nour
	To your friend M and your email a	layar to tell her abo	ut your dream job. Yo	our name is Nour
	and your email	address is nourque	ut your dream job. Yo en@yahoo.com. Your	our name is Nour friend's email
	and your email address is maya	address is nourque regy@gmail.com.	en@yahoo.com. Your	our name is Nour friend's email
	and your email and dress is maya	address is nourque regy@gmail.com.	en@yahoo.com. Your	our name is Nour friend's email
	and your email and dress is maya From: To:	address is nourque regy@gmail.com.	en@yahoo.com. Your	our name is Nour friend's email
	and your email and dress is maya From: To:	address is nourque regy@gmail.com.	en@yahoo.com. Your	our name is Nour friend's email
	and your email and dress is maya From: To: Subject:	address is nourque regy@gmail.com.	en@yahoo.com. Your	friend's email
	and your email and dress is maya From: To: Subject:	address is nourque regy@gmail.com.	en@yahoo.com. Your	friend's email
	and your email and address is maya From: To: Subject:	address is nourque regy@gmail.com.	en@yahoo.com. Your	friend's email
	and your email and dress is maya From: To: Subject:	address is nourque regy@gmail.com.	en@yahoo.com. Your	friend's email
	and your email and address is maya From: To: Subject:	address is nourque regy@gmail.com.	en@yahoo.com. Your	friend's email
	and your email and address is maya From: To: Subject:	address is nourqued regy@gmail.com.	en@yahoo.com. Your	friend's email
	and your email and dress is maya From: To: Subject:	address is nourqued regy@gmail.com.	en@yahoo.com. Your	friend's email



on unit 12

قيم مستواك ً يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
محاسب accountant	1- Relative pronoun who	1. Describing and
مهندس معماري architect	يستخدم ضمير الوصل [who] للربط بين جملتين الفاعل بهما عاقل.	asking questions
رجل أعمال businessman	رجل أعمال - A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean.	about jobs : مصف وتوجيه أسئلة عن
alla scientist	2- Ouestion tag	। हिंदीकं :
photographer photographer	معلومة ويتكون م	- Who is an architect
engines	ضمير فاعل ثم علامة الاستفهام [؟].	An architect is
marine biologist	سؤال مذيا منفي المستحملة خبينة مثبتة	a person who
عالم أحياء مائية		designs buildings.
تنبؤ prediction	 It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it? 	
computer programmer	سؤال مذيل مثبت 🔻 — جملة خبرية منفية	2. Talking about
مبرمج كمبيوتر	It isn't an easy question, is it?	ruture plans:
طبيب أسنان dentist	The first conditional (ff)	الحديث عن حطط مستعبليه :
کاتب writer	عطبة الأول (١١١) للجدث عن النتائج المجتملة لجدث معين.	- Tomorrow, I'm
مهندس engineer		going to play
معمل laboratory	procent cimple	a video game.
مجوهرات jewellery		- Next year, I'm
ملون luful colourful		going to learn
مرض sillness	ex † go to university, l'Il study maths.	a new language.
टure	- If I don't study hard, I won't pass my exams.	
آلات machines		



Reading Comprehension

Giving the main idea

🧲 تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية للنص

♦اقراً وقم بالإجابة

Read and answer the questions:

helpful to his students. He helps them to do experiments him if they have any problems. (El-Sayda Zeinab - Cairo 2023) Nader is a famous teacher of science in a prep school for boys and girls. He likes his job very much. He is also starts work at half past seven. He finishes it at half past two. He is very kind to his students. They always go to school garden. He is about thirty five years old. He is married. He has got two daughters and one son. He in the science lab. He enjoys growing flowers in the

- What is the main idea of the passage?
- What does the passage talk about?
- Give a suitable title for the passage.

🏇 التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية بسبب وجود عدة أفكار

تم عرضها في الفقرة. مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية] أو [العنوان المناسب] للفقرة

Speaking

Discussing jobs

🥕 يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة،

▲اقراً وقم بالإجابة

Complete the following dialogue:

Sara and Mona are talking about the job of the

engineer.

Sara: How are things, Mona?

Mona:(1)

Sara :(2)

Mona: My father is an engineer.

Sara :(3)

Mona: I think it's an important job.

Sara : Is it hard?

Mona: (4)

Sara : Do you want to be an engineer in the future?

Mona: (5)

🇀 التحدي تريد السؤال عن [الوظائف] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها



🧐 مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.





Writting

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة مهارتك في التعبير عن موضوع ما. "للمزيد من التدريب كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزل."

التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن [وظيفة أحلامك] و [الوظائف التقليدية في أفريقيا] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية و كيفية استخدامها في تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic

Your dream Job

Step 3 Paragraph	Write a paragraph on:	"Your dream job"				"Traditional jobs in Africa"
Step 2 Sentences	Fill in using vocabulary:	1. My dream job is to be	want to studyand the plants and animals in it.	3. The animals in the sea are very	4. I hope to go diving around the	1. Traditional jobs and
tep 1 Review your vocabulary	Write the meaning:	otal.	عالم أحياء بحرية	المرجانية	aleq	مهارات تقلیدی الاُوانی الفخاریة یکسب أموال

Traditional jobs in Africa

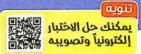
Questions collected from previous exams تدریبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

3. My father is a/an	6. Living in the is quieter than living in the city. the city. a. countryside b. market c. hospital d. capital 7. He needs a/an because he can't walk. a. sum	8. It's important to a. explain 9. Marwa TV, didn a. doesn't watch c. watched 10. The body needs sleep, a. isn't b. didn't
1. Complete the following dialogue: Sameh is talking to Tamer about a party. Sameh: Why didn't you come to the party yesterday? Tamer: (1) Sameh: (2) Tamer: Yes, I went to the doctor. Sameh: (3) Tamer: He gave me some medicine.	Sameh: Will you go to school tomorrow? Tamer: (4) Sameh: I hope you get well soon. Tamer: (5) (East Zaguzig - Sharkia 2022)	2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. Scientists always try to find for illnesses. a. predictions b. changes c. cures d. maps 2. The is the person who looks after your teeth. b. dentist c. accountant d. actor



Test

on unit 12



Understand

Apply

Create

A. Listening

قم <mark>بحل</mark> اختبار تراكمي في الملحق

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- 1. Is your uncle's job interesting?
 - a. Yes, it is.

b. No, it isn't.

c. Not always.

- d. Yes, sometimes.
- 2. What's your uncle's job?
 - a. A doctor
- b. An engineer
- c. A businessman d. A teacher
- 3. Where does your uncle work?
 - a. In a building b. In an office
- c. In a factory
- d. In a school

- 4. What does an engineer design?
 - a. Buildings
- b. Machines
- c. Engines
- d.b&c

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Baher and Emad are talking about the jobs.

Baher: What do you think the most interesting job?

Emad: (1)

Baher: Why do you think the businessman's job is the most interesting?

Emad : (2)

Baher: You're right. He meets a lot of people. Where does he work?

Emad: (3)

Baher: An office! (4)?

Emad: No, it isn't an easy job.

Baher: (5)?

Emad: I think it is a very important job.

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think education is very important. I hope that I can pass all my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I will

to travel around science. If I have	enough money, I v	o get a job in Eg will buy an apar	g, so I don't want ypt. I want to teach tment near the Red I have ? I don't know.
a. Choose the co	orrect answer fron	na,b,cord:	
1. The writer t	hinks education is	very	
a. hard	b. expensive	c. important	d. easy
2. The underli	ned word " apartm	ent" means a	•
a. flat	b. garden	c. beach	d. park
The underling	ned pronoun " <u>It</u> " re	efers to	
a. maths	b. science	c. university	d. work
b. Answer the fo	llowing question:	s:	
4. Give a suita	ble title for this pas	ssage.	

5. What do yo	u think about the v	vriter ?	
6. What is the	writer's favourite s	ubject ?	
			·······
			(Ibsheway - Faiyum 2022)
0	. Vocabulary	& Structur	*
	iett answer mon	a b cord.	
1 Making invelle		a,b,cord:	
	ry helps people to	much mo	400
a. waste	ry helps people to b. earn	much mo	oney. d. draw
a. waste2. When somethir	ry helps people to b. earn ng is, it's ve	much mo c. give ery old.	d. draw (North Sinai - Sinai 2022)
a. waste2. When somethira. clear	ry helps people to b. earn ng is, it's ve b. modern	much moc c. give ry old. c. traditional	d. draw (North Sinai - Sinai 2022) d. medium
a. waste2. When somethinga. clear3. I live with my fa	ry helps people to b. earn ng is, it's ve b. modern ımily in a small	much mo c. give ry old. c. traditional on the secon	d. draw (North Sinai - Sinai 2022) d. medium
a. waste2. When somethinga. clear3. I live with my famousa. apartment	ry helps people to b. earn ng is, it's ve b. modern imily in a small b. aquarium	much mo c. give ry old. c. traditional on the secon c. skyscraper	d. draw (North Sinai - Sinai 2022) d. medium
a. waste2. When somethinga. clear3. I live with my famousa. apartment	ry helps people to b. earn ng is, it's ve b. modern ımily in a small	much mo c. give ry old. c. traditional on the secon c. skyscraper	d. draw (North Sinai - Sinai 2022) d. medium nd floor.
a. waste2. When somethinga. clear3. I live with my famousa. apartment	ry helps people to b. earn ng is, it's ve b. modern imily in a small b. aquarium	much mo c. give ry old. c. traditional on the secon c. skyscraper	d. draw (North Sinai - Sinai 2022) d. medium nd floor. d. department
 a. waste 2. When something a. clear 3. I live with my fare a. apartment 4. My cousin goes a. riding 	ry helps people to b. earn ng is, it's ve b. modern mily in a small b. aquarium	much mo c. give ry old. c. traditional on the secon c. skyscraper c coral reefs. c. diving	d. draw (North Sinai - Sinai 2022) d. medium nd floor. d. department (Samanod - Gharbia 2023)

Understand O Apply

Create

Stop here!

Mini-Test on unit 12 for Al-	-Azhar students	ختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف
Supply the missing parts	in the following di	alogue:
Karim and Ali are talking ab	- Table 2	
Karim: Hello Ali. How are yo	ou ?	74.44.61
Ali : (1)		
Karim: (2)		
Ali : I want to be a marine		
Karim: Wow! That's interest Ali: 'm good at science.	ing. But wny ?	2
Karim: I want to be a musici	(a)	
Ali : Really! Do you enjoy		
Karim: Yes, I do.		
Ali : Well, good luck.		
2 Choose the correct answer	from a, b, c or d:	
1. He rarely has money,	he?	
a. does b. doesn't	c. hasn't	d. haven't
2. Theis the person wh a. dentist b. teacher	o designs buildings. c. architect	d. actor
3. It's good to for your f		G. actor
a. plane b. plan	c. plain	d. plant
4. She wears a beautiful		
a. earring b. ring 5. I like toshells on the	c. necklace	d. crown
a. collect b. dive	c. score	d. design
Reorder the words to mak		u. design
1. will - look after - do - We - t	o - our planet - our l	nest .
2. new - illnesses - for - cures	- find - Scientists - w	rill.
3. hope - my exams - I - will -	that - I - pass	
4. phones - for - Our - have - v	will - apps - everythi	na.
Write a paragraph of FIVE so	entences on :	
	our dream job"	

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:	wer from a, b, c or d to dialogue:	Choose the correct form of the the brackets from a, b, c or d:	Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:
Tamer and Ahmed are talking about Ahmed's visit to Alexandria.	king about Ahmed's	6. Sara plays chess w	6. Sara plays chess well, (isn't) she?
Tamer: What did you do last week?	last week?	7. He went to schoo	op)
Ahmed:(1)		a. did b. didn't	n't c. had d. hadn't
a. I went on a trip	b. I'm Tine, thanks d. You're welcome	8. If you sta	I WOL
Tamer :(2)		a. staying b. stays	s c. stay d. stayed
a. What did you eat?	b. Where did you go?	9. If she gets the jok	9. If she gets the job, she will (invites) her
c. When did you sleep? d. Who are you?	d. Who are you?	friends.	*
Ahmed: I went to Alexandria.	dria.	a. invite	b. inviting
Tamer :(3)		c. invited	d. can invite
a. How did you go?	b. When did you go?		
Ahmed: We went by train.			
Tamer: Who did you go with?	with?		
Ahmed:(4)	2		
a. My friends		Si	
c. My family	d. My team		
Tamer: Your family! Did you go to the beach?	you go to the beach?		
Anmed: (5)			
a. Yes, I do c. No, I don't	b. Yes, I did d. Yes, I have		

Review D



SB pages 64 & 65 WB pages 114 & 115



on Lesson 1SB page 64

A: There was a film about the dangers (1) to our planet on TV yesterday. It was very sad. What can we do?

B: We can help, can't we, Tarek?

A: How?

B: If we pick up (2) the rubbish (3) from the beach, the animals won't eat it.

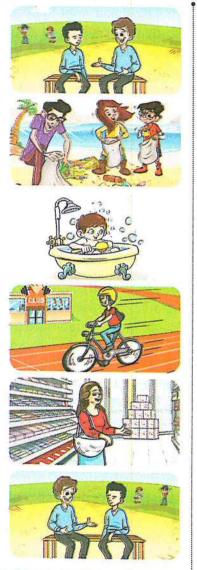
If we have shorter showers (4), we'll save (5) water.

We must walk or cycle when we can. I always ride my bike to the **sports** centre (6).

You mustn't buy plastic bags. My shopping bag is made of cotton. I use it every day.

B: If we all do these things, we'll help to save our planet.

A: Thanks Ali! I'll do all those things!



• WB page 114

In the past, many people had **traditional jobs**⁽¹⁾ that people still do today. There were many teachers and bakers, for example. However, some jobs are quite new, aren't they?

For example, an **aeronautical engineer**⁽²⁾ is a person who designs things that fly. If you want to become an aeronautical engineer, you will have to study science. It is not an easy job, but it is very interesting. If you want to help **future technology**⁽³⁾, perhaps you will design **drones**⁽⁴⁾.

Many people think that drones will carry our **post**⁽⁵⁾ in the future. That will make the **skies**⁽⁶⁾ above our cities interesting, won't it?

(1) وظائف تقليدية | (2) مهندس طيران | (3) تكنولوجيا المستقبل | (4) طائرات بدون طيار | (5) البريد | (6) الجو / الأجواء



on Lesson 2 SB page 65

Malak : Here are the boxes for the recycling project⁽¹⁾.

Different rubbish goes into different boxes.

Hala : Great! So which box does this bottle go into?

Malak : What is it made of, plastic or glass?

Hala: It's made of plastic.

Malak : OK, it goes into the yellow box.

Hala: Right ... There's another bottle here.

This one is made of glass.

Malak : If it's made of glass, it goes into the

blue box.

Hala: What about this magazine? It's

made of paper(2).

Malak : It goes into the red box. Hala : Where can I put this can?

Malak : If it's made of metal, it goes into the green box.

Hala: Yes, it's made of metal ... I'm putting it in the green box.

Malak : What's left?

Hala: Just this T-shirt. We can't recycle that, can we? It's made of cotton(3).

(1) مشروع إعادة تدوير المخلفات (2) ورق (3) قطن



Malak : We're not going to recycle the clothes – but we can give them

to other people so that they can use them. Put them in the

orange box, please.

Hala: The orange box ... OK.

Malak: Great. Everything is ready⁽⁴⁾. Thanks for your help, Hala.

(4) جاهز

WB page 114

Guessing something

1: I'm not sure what this souvenir⁽¹⁾ is made of. Is it plastic or stone⁽²⁾?

Giving instructions in order

2: OK, first look for the fruit that is yellow. Then feel the fruit **carefully**⁽³⁾. It should not be too **soft**⁽⁴⁾. So, if it's yellow and not too soft, what should you do? Well, finally, take it carefully from the tree.

Checking information

3: Hello, so, it's Mrs Shabana, isn't it? And you have got two children in this class, haven't you? But Aya isn't in school today, is she?

Talking about future plans

4 : Before I go to university⁽⁵⁾, I think I'll travel for a few months. Then I'd like to work for a charity⁽⁶⁾.



(1) هدية تذكارية | (2) حجر | (3) بحرص | (4) ناعم | (5) جامعة | (6) جمعية خيرية

Videoscript 🕍



Lesson 3 SB page 6

There are lots of different styles of music such as classical, jazz and opera. Did you know that people first watched the famous opera Aida, by Giuseppe Verdi, in Cairo in 1871?

You can often hear music at weddings and other celebrations. Egypt also has a lot of traditional music. You can hear it from Alexandria to Aswan. In traditional music you can hear instruments like drums and the ney. The ney is a type of flute. Another traditional instrument is the qanun. This is a string instrument that you play with your fingers. You can also hear the violin ...

... and the oud. The oud is similar to the guitar, but it usually has more strings.

You can also hear these instruments in many other countries.

Do you like music? What styles of music do you like?



Lesson 6 SB page 20

Do you know about the seven wonders of the ancient world?

People thought that they were the most fantastic buildings in the world. Many of them were in or near Egypt.

For many centuries, this Lighthouse of Alexandria was the tallest building ever made.

The sea was dangerous for boats because there were a lot of rocks near Alexandria. The lighthouse warned boats about the rocks. This was a very important invention.

We use similar technology today. We still

use lighthouses to warn boats about rocks. Boats are safer now, thanks to the work of the ancient Egyptians.

The Hanging Gardens of Babylon were probably in modern day Iraq. These were beautiful gardens around a huge palace.

The Statue of Zeus was in ancient Greece. This was believed to be the biggest statue in the world. Another wonder of the world was the Colossus of Rhodes. This was another big statue in ancient Greece.

The Ancient Greeks also built the Temple of Artemis... and the Tomb of Mausolus.

Time and earthquakes destroyed most of these wonders of the world.

After an earthquake in Alexandria, they built Fort Qaitbay at the same place as the Lighthouse of Alexandria and used many stones from the same building.

Today, only the Great Pyramid of Giza remains. Experts believe that this was the first ancient wonder because it is older than the others.

Every year, millions of people come to see the Pyramids of Egypt. They are some of the most visited tourist attractions anywhere.

For many people, the Great Pyramid of Giza is also a wonder of the modern world.

Which building do you like the best? Why?



Lesson 5 SB page 29

There are many sports that people enjoy today, such as hockey, athletics, and archery. But did you know these sports, and many others, were first played in Ancient Egypt? Very old drawings and paintings show people playing a lot of different sports.

This picture in the Temple of Ramses III shows people fencing with sticks. In fencing



today, two people fight each other with swords.

The Ancient Egyptians also liked running. During the time of King Taharka, there was a race of 100 kilometres.

People believe that this was a test so that the king could find his best soldiers. Today, there is a race called the Pharaonic Race. This, too, is 100 kilometres. It starts at the Hawara Pyramid and finishes in Saqqara. Running is very popular today. Millions of people around the world go running every week. It is a good way to stay healthy.

Some people think the ancient Egyptians played tennis, because there is a town near the Nile called Tinnis... and because the Arabic word for part of the hand is rahat al-yad. This sounds like the racket you hit the ball with.

Sport was very important in Ancient Egypt. Is sport important for you?



Lesson 3 SB page 39

Do you live in a village or in a city? And do you live on the coast, near the sea or in the desert? There are often different houses for each place. This house is a traditional Nubian house. The floors are made of sand and there is normally a bench outside each house to sit on. This is made of mud.

These Nubian houses are in Aswan. They're very colourful.

There are paintings on the walls of Nubian houses of things like fish, crocodiles and palm trees.

The door of each house usually faces south. This is to protect people from the strong wind from the north. Houses will probably be different in the future. Many houses will be made of recycled material or

natural material, like wood.

This hotel is in Siwa and it's made of natural materials.

The roof is made of palm trees.

Many houses in the future will use the sun for electricity.

This is called solar power.

What type of house do you want to live in? Is it a house?

Or is it an apartment? There are lots of different places to live.



Lesson 3 SB page 49

From the camel to the beautiful desert cat, or caracal to the Nile crocodile, there are many animals in Egypt. But some animals are in danger of extinction. This means that every example of the animal will die. The Dorcas gazelle lives in the Sinai Peninsula and in other parts of North Africa. It eats plants and you can sometimes see them early in the morning and late in the evening. The animal is in danger because some people want to eat it.

In the past, the Barbary sheep lived all over the country. It eats plants, but warmer weather means the sheep find it harder to find food. Today, you can only find them in the mountains of southern and western Egypt.

The striped hyena looks like a dog. You can only see it at night. It eats other animals. People think that there are only a small number of striped hyenas in Egypt.

One of the most unusual animals is the dugong. This animal lives in the Red Sea and other places. It is also called the sea cow. This is because it only eats plants that grow underwater.

The dugong is in danger because there is

plastic and other pollution in the sea. Also, there is not much food in the sea for it to eat.

Today, there are some organisations that want to help these and other animals that are in danger, like this turtle. It is helpful for animals when we take rubbish from the beaches. We must all do what we can to help to protect nature.



Lesson 4 SB page 60

What job will you do when you are older? Will you be an engineer, who designs exciting new things? Will you be a doctor, who looks after sick people? Or will you be an architect, who designs new buildings and even cities? These will all be important jobs in the future. But did you know that the Ancient Egyptians did many of these jobs too? They helped to form the world we know today. Engineers in ancient Egypt designed and built a lot of things, like boats.

These boats used the wind to help them travel to other parts of the world.

The Ancient Egyptians also learned how

to move water from one place to the next. This helped farmers who worked far from the Nile. We use similar ideas to help farmers today.

A doctor was a very important person in Ancient Egypt. The doctor used a lot of different tools. We can see some of them in this picture. The Ancient Egyptians also had dentists.

In the tenth century, an Egyptian doctor invented the first kind of syringe. Today, doctors and scientists use syringes every day.

Imhotep was the world's very first architect. He designed a new way of building pyramids using stone. He built the Pyramid at Saqqara using this method. He also used it to build the Great Pyramid at Giza. Imhotep also used stone to build columns. These columns made buildings very strong. Before this, the Ancient Egyptians used mud and plants to build columns. These columns sometimes fell down. But every job can be important. If you do your job well, you can help to make a better world.





General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From : yasser.sam@yahoo.com

To wael2022@yahoo.com

Subject: your last weekend

Dear Wael,

How are you doing? I write to you to tell you about my last weekend. My weekend was fantastic. I went to Ahmed 's house on Sunday and we played football in the park. It was a lot of fun. We had lunch together. It was delicious. In the afternoon, we went to the sports centre. We played tennis there. There was a really big swimming pool. We swam in it. We had a nice time at the sports centre. In the evening, we went shopping. I bought a T-shirt and shoes for my younger sister. Ahmed is a nice friend. I enjoyed my time with him. Tell me about your weekend.

Yours.

Yasser

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

From : tahani20@gmail.com

To : ghadanagy@yahoo.com

Subject: a story you read

Dear Ghada,

How are you and your family? Do you like reading stories? Last month, I read a story. It is called Robinson Crusoe. Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor. His ship sank because there was a bad storm. Crusoe swam to a nearby island, but there were no other people there. He walked along the beach, but he saw nobody. He thought that he was alone. He found a fish and ate it. He looked for a cave to sleep in. He found a coconut on the beach. It was delicious. He wrote a diary of what happened to him. I think it is an exciting story. You can borrow it.

Yours,

Tahani

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

" A fantastic day "

Yesterday was a fantastic day for me. I did many interesting things on this day. In the morning, I went to the bowling alley. I went with my cousin. After that, we went to a pizza restaurant. I had a pizza with chicken. My cousin had a pizza with olives and pepper. The pizza was delicious. In the evening, we went to visit our grandparents. They were very happy to meet us. We helped our grandpa to fix many things at home. He was proud of us.

Test on unit 7

"A terrible weekend you had"

My weekend was a terrible one. My baby sister woke me up at 5 a.m. I felt so tired. I went to the kitchen, but there was no milk or bread. I went to buy food, but the shops were all closed. I didn't do my homework because my laptop stopped working. I planned to have a barbecue but there was a lot of wind. In the evening, I went to the stadium to watch a football match. My team lost the match. I was very sad.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From : marwanamir@yahoo.com
To : davidalex@gmail.com
Subject : the famous places in Egypt
Dear David,

How are things with you? I knew you will come to visit Egypt next month. I want to tell you about famous places in Egypt. There are many famous places in Egypt. We are very proud of them. There are some of them in Giza. In Giza, there are the Pyramids and the Sphinx. The Great Pyramid of Giza is 146 m tall. It's taller than the Red Pyramid which is 105 m tall. The Red Pyramid is further away from the centre of Cairo. In Luxor, there are Luxor Temple and the Temple of Karnak. Last winter, I went to Luxor with my family. We visited many places there. We had a nice time. Have a nice holiday.

Yours,

Marwan

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"The Tahya Masr Bridge"

The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world 's widest suspension bridge. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. More than 4.000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

In 2019, the Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors. It is further from the city centre than the old museum. But it is two km from the Pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects. More people can see these valuable things. The museum can preserve these objects. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance. The biggest statue in the museum is the statue of Ramses II. It is 12 m high.

Test on unit 8

saraeng@gmail.com
mariamsea@gmail.com

Subject: a wonderful holiday you had in Luxor

Dear Mariam,

How are you and your family? I'm excited to write to you about my holiday. We had a wonderful holiday in Luxor last week. We visited the most interesting places in Luxor. First, we went to the Valley of Kings. It is one of the most popular places for tourists in Luxor. We went early because that is the quietest time. Secondly, we went to the Karnak Temple. It was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings. Finally, we went to the best and quietest place for me: Habu Temple. Did you visit Luxor before?

Yours,

Sara



General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A trip with your friends"

Last year, I went to South Africa with my friends. It was beautiful there. Our first day there was an adventure. We went trekking in the mountains. When we started trekking, it was sunny. But when we reached the top of the mountain, there were dark clouds. After that, the rain began and there was a storm. The rocks were wet and Ahmed fell down and hurt himself. The following days, the weather was better. I tried zip lining. I was a bit frightened, but I was excited.

Test on unit 9

tamerbro@yahoo.com

Subject : the adventure you're having

Dear Nabil,

How are you doing? I'm very excited today to write to you about my adventure! I'm in Dahab with my family. There's so much to do here. This afternoon, we're going to go trekking in the mountains. I'm not going to try rock climbing. It's too scary. Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing in the morning. In the afternoon, we're going to go diving. We're not going to go kayaking. There is no time.

See you soon.

Yours,

Tamer



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Deir el-Medina"

Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt. The people in this village worked in the Valley of the Kings. The doors of their houses were made of wood and the walls were made of bricks. The people painted their houses white and the doors red. There was a kitchen and a living room. People slept on the roof because there weren't any bedrooms. It was very hot at night. They got their water from the Nile Valley because there weren't any taps.

General Exercises on Jessons 3 & 4

"Round houses"

Many houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. This is important when there is an earthquake or a strong wind. A round building means that the building is very strong. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is easier to keep warm or cool. It is quieter inside than a building that is a rectangle or a square. A round house is cheaper because building a round house uses fewer materials.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : dareenadel@yahoo.com

ranahani@yahoo.com

Subject: your plan for your future house

Dear Rana,

How are you doing? Did you think about your future house before? I want to tell your my plan. I have many creative ideas for my future house. It will be made of plastic bricks, a lot of glass and metal. It will be a big house. There will be two bedrooms, a kitchen, a bathroom and a living room. The garden will be on the roof. It will be a round building, as a round shape means the building is very strong. It is also cheaper to make and easy to keep warm or cool. There will be a charger next to my house for my electric car. Tell me about your plan for your house in the future.

Yours.

Dareen

Test on unit 10

"Houses in the future"

Houses in the future will be different to our houses today. Houses will be made of plastic bricks, a lot of glass and metal. The garden will be on the roof because there won't be much space. There will be chargers for electric cars next to the house as all people will use electric cars in the future. Robots will do all the housework. People will get electricity from solar panels. Drones will bring food and parcels to houses.



⊙ General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Sea animals"

There are a lot of animals that live in the sea. Some sea animals are dangerous like sharks. The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life. A stingray is a big, flat fish. When it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water. A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it. Some sea animals are poisonous and sting when you touch them like jellyfish.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

From : hussien66@yahoo.com

to mazenmezo@yahoo.com

Subject : nature reserves

Dear Mazen,

How are you? I want to reply to your question why we must do and mustn't do in the nature reserves. We have nature reserves to help our birds, plants and animals. Many animals live there so we must be careful about what we do. We mustn't make a lot of noise. Noise makes animals feel frightened. We mustn't leave the road through the reserve because there are animals and birds living in the plants next to the road. We mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. We must take all our rubbish with us when we leave.

Yours.

Hussien

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A story you like"

Santiago was an old fisherman. He didn't catch a fish for a very long time. One day, he found a big fish at the end of the fishing line. The fish was stronger than Santiago. He could pull it to the boat. The sharks came and ate the fish. When Santiago returned to his home on the beach, he found the fish was only a skeleton. The other fishermen saw how big the fish was and knew that he was brave to catch it. They respected Santiago more than eyer.

Test on unit 11

From :omarfarid@gmail.com

16 sfady40@gmail.com

Subject : planting trees

Dear Fady,

How are things with you? I want to tell you about the importance of trees and how we can plant them. We plant trees to keep our environment clean. Trees make the air healthy. There are many steps to plant a tree. First, wash the plastic pot and dry it. Second, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot. Press your finger to make a hole and put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place. Water it every day but don't give it too much water. When the tree grows too big for the pot, plant it in a bigger pot, or in the ground. Let's plant a tree in the garden together.

Yours,

Omar



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Marine biologist"

A marine biologist is a person who studies the plants and animals in the ocean. A marine biologist must be good at science and loves the ocean. The ocean is full of interesting animals and plants. A marine biologist sometimes goes around coral reefs and sometimes tests water from the ocean in the laboratory. This job needs working a lot of time on the computer and writing the results of the tests. His researches help to protect the plants and animals in the ocean.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

**sadekfares@gmail.com

subject your plan for the future

Dear Sadek,

How are you and your family? I'm excited to tell you about my plans for the future. I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I want to learn to play the guitar. And before I finish my school, I want to design a video game!

In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I think I'll be a businessman. It's an interesting job. A businessman is a person who works in an office and goes to meetings. I want to travel to another country and get married one day. I want to have two children. Tell me about your plans for the future.

Yours,

Baher

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : nourqueen@yahoo.com

76 :mayaregy@gmail.com

Subject : your dream job

Dear Mayar,

How are you and your family? I'm happy to send you this email. I want to tell you about my dream job. My uncle has got a very interesting job. He is an engineer. An engineer is a person who designs machines and engines. My uncle designs engines for planes. I like his job so much. I'd like to be an engineer one day. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard to achieve my dream. I want to get a good job and do many projects. What about you?

Yours,

Nour

Test on unit 12

"Traditional jobs in Africa"

Traditional jobs and skills are still important in Africa. People started making pottery thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops and some in their own homes. If you go to Fayoum, a city in Egypt, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and adults can learn this skill. There is a different skill in Kenya, people make jewellery. You can see colourful jewellery in markets all over the country.

Listening Texts

Unit 7

Lessons 1 & 2

Dad likes sports. He is very good at swimming. Mum loves cooking. She makes delicious salads. My sister likes making things.

Lessons 5 & 6

My father drove us to the park on Saturday. It took an hour to go two kilometres. Traffic was terrible because there were so many cars.

Test on unit (7)

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story. Robinson was a sailor. One day his ship sank because there was a really terrible storm. He swam to a nearby island.

February Test

I'm Bassant. I'm 12 years old. Yesterday was my birthday. My family took me by car to the museum. We saw statues there. In the evening, we went to the funfair.



Lessons 3& 4

The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge and it opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island.

Lessons 5 & 6

We had a wonderful holiday in Luxor. The Valley of the Kings in Luxor is one of the most popular places for tourists. We went there early because that is the quietest time.

Test on unit (8)

The British Museum is in London. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year.



Lessons 1& 2

Eman is in Dahab with her family. This afternoon, they are going to go trekking in the mountains. Eman is going to try rock climbing.

Lessons 3 & 4

Yesterday, we went trekking in the mountains. It was sunny when we started, but when we got to the top we saw dark clouds.

Lessons 5 & 6

Maher is looking forward to seeing Karim. Karim is coming to Cairo from Alexandria tomorrow. Karim is coming by train.

Test on unit (9)

We're enjoying ourselves on holiday in South Africa. It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do. Yesterday was an adventure. Tomorrow the weather is going to be better.

General Exercises on units 7, 8 & 9

Ahmed likes sport. His favourite sport is football. He plays football twice a week with his friends at the club. He wants to be like Messi.



Lessons 1& 2

A car door is made of metal and the windows are made of glass. Expensive car seats are made of leather. Some car seats are made of plastic.

Lessons 3 & 4

In the future, robots will do the housework. To build houses, we will use plastic bricks. They will be cheap.

Lessons 5 & 6

I learned to ride a bike in 2013. We went on a holiday to the Red Sea in 2015. In 2018, we moved house. We live in Cairo now.

Test on unit (10)

Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El Mokawloon in 2010. Then, he moved to Switzerland to play for Basel.

March Test

Eman is in Dahab with her family. They're going to go trekking in the mountains. Eman isn't going to try rock climbing as it's too scary.



Lessons 1 & 2

A stingray is a big flat fish. It lives in the coral reef. If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of th water. A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it.

Lessons 3 & 4

We're going to visit a nature reserve today. We have nature reserves to help

our birds, plants and animals. We must be careful about what we do there.

Lessons 5 & 6

Santiago was an old fisherman. He didn't catch fish for a long time. One day, there was a big fish at the end of his fishing line.

Test on unit (11)

The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals. If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. It uses more than 20.000 teeth in its life.



Lessons 1& 2

Hana wants to be a marine biologist. A marine biologist studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it. She's good at science and she loves the ocean.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

It is an important part of Africa's culture to make baskets. In Ghana, there are a lot of women who make and sell baskets to earn money.

Lessons 5 & 6

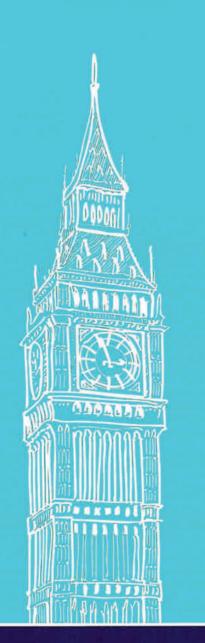
I've got a lot of plans for the future.

I want to learn to play the guitar next year.

I also want to design a video game!

4 Test on unit (12)

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer. He works in a factory. He designs machines and engines.





GUIDE

New Hello!

By a group of supervisors

كــــراســة المعـــاصر للمراجــعة والاخــتبـارات

A WEEK SOLUTION OF SOLUTION OF

الصـف الأول الإعـدادى الفصــل الـدراســى الثاني T st
Prep.
2024
SECOND TERM

PART ONE

Listening, Language Functions and Reading Comprehension

?. Listening

ا. نصوص الاستماع

على الطالب أن يستمع إلى نص حوالى (٢٥ - ٣٠) كلمة من الموضوعات الهامة من الكتاب المدرسي التي تساعد ق التعامل مع السؤال الأول وبعد الاســـتماع إلى النص يجيب الطالب على أربعة أســـئلة اختيــار من متعدد متبوعة بأربع اختيارات لكل سؤال.

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

_	_												
4		Listen and	choose	the	correct	ancwer	from	2	h		OF	d ·	,
		ristell alla	CHOOSE	ciie	COLLECT	allawel	HOIII	u ,	.,	-,	OI I		

.إد	ستماع في نهاية الكتاب	ابه الصحيحه إنصوص الا	بتمع إلى معلمك واختر الإج
B. 1. In ancient Egypt	, there weren't	any	
a. living rooms	b. kitchens	c. doors	d. bedrooms
2. People in ancien	t Egypt slept	*	
a. in bedrooms	2	b. in living roo	ms
c. on roofs	*	d. in kitchens	
3. Were there any t	aps in ancient l	Egypt ?	*
a. Yes	b. No	c. Not in the tex	kt d. Maybe
4. In ancient Egypt	, people got the	eir water from	**************
a. the Nile Valley		b. taps	
c. bottles		d. not in the te	ext
B. 1. When Omar was	twelve, he lear	ned to play the	•
a. piano	b. trumpet	c. guitar	d. violin
2. When Omar was	fourteen, he le	arned to play the	·
a. violin	b. piano	c. trumpet	d. guitar
3. Omar	music.		
a. hates	b. eats	c. dislikes	d. likes
4. What music doe	s Omar like ?		
a. Jazz music		b. Pop music	
c. Rock music		d. Traditional r	nusic

2. Language Functions

٢. الوظائف اللغوية

[راجع وتدرب في نفس الوقت] عرض لجميع الوظائف اللغوية بطريقة سهلة وشيقة متبوعة بتدريبات عليها للتمكن من حل السؤال الثاني في الورقة الامتحانية.

Set Book Questions with suggested answers

أُسئلة وردت بالكتاب المدرسي وإجاباتها المقترحة تساعدك على التعامل مع سؤال المحادثة :

▶1. Asking about the type of music someone likes:

السؤال عن نوع الموسيقى التى يحبها شخص ما :

Answers [.]

Questions [?]

- Classical / Jazz / Pop music الموسيقي التقليدية / الجاز / البوب
- What type of music do you like? ما نوع الموسيقي التي تحبها ؟ · When did you learn it?

متى تعلمتها ؟

- When I was 10.
 - عندما كنت في العاشرة من عمري.

٦. الحديث عن عطلة نهاية الاسبوع الخاص بك : : Talking about your weekend:

Questions [?]

- Answers [.]

- How was your weekend?
 - كيف كانت عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك؟
- What happened?

ماذا حدث؟

- It was terrible / great. كانت سيئة / رائعة.
- I dropped my mobile phone. / I went to the stadium.
 - أسقطت هاتفي الجوال/ذهبت إلى الاستاد.

3. Talking about measurements:

٣. الحديث عن القياسات :

يبلغ طوله ۲۲۰ کم.

Questions [?]

- How long is the Cairo -Alexandria Desert Road?
 - كم يبلغ طول طريق القاهرة الإسكندرية الصحراوي؟
- · How many people live in Cairo? كم عدد السكان الذين يعيشون في القاهرة ؟
- Answers [.]
- It's 220 kilometres long.
- More than 20 million people.

أكثر من ٢٠ مليون شخص.

• How much do you know about the Pyramids ? ما مدى معرفتك بالأهرامات؟	 The Great Pyramid of Giza is 146 metres tall. يبلغ طول الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة ١٤٦ مترًا.
• Have you ever visited / seen it ?	- Yes, I have.
هل سبق لك أن قمت بزيارته / رؤيته ؟	- No, I haven't.

٤. تقديم اقتراحات والرد عليها: : 4. Making and responding to suggestions:

Questions [?]	Answers [.]
- Why don't we go swimming ? لماذا لا نذهب للسباحة ؟	- Great idea. فكرة عظيمة - I'm not very keen on that. لست متحمشا لذلك.
- Shall we go mountain climbing ? ما رأيك بأن نتسلق الجبال؟	- I'm not sure. That sounds a bit scary. لست متأكدًا. هذا يبدو مخيف قليلًا.

▶ 5. Predicting the future:

٥. التنبؤ بالمستقبل:

Questions [?]	Answers [.]
• What are you going to do tomorrow ?	l'm going to visit my uncle. سأقوم بزيارة عمى.
• How do you think people will live in the future ? كيف تعتقد ستعيش الناس في المستقبل؟	- I think people will use electric cars. - I think there will be lots of solar panels. - أعتقد سيستخدم الناس سيارات كهربائية. - أعتقد سيكون هناك الكثير من الألواح الشمسية.
 What materials will the houses be made of? ما المواد الخام التي ستُبني بها المنازل؟ 	They will be made of plastic bricks. ستُصنع من قوالب طوب بلاستيكية.
• Do you think we will live on the moon ? هل تعتقد أننا سنعيش على القمر؟	I think it's not possible. أعتقد أنه غير ممكن. Oh. It's my dream. أوه. إنه حلمى.

▶ 6. Talking about how to plant :

٦. الحديث عن كيفية زراعة النبات:

Questions [?]



Answers [.]



• What should I do to plant a tree ? ماذا يجب أن أفعل لكى أزرع شجرة ؟	- First, find a plastic pot. Second, put some stones at the bottom of it. أولًا : أوجد إناء من البلاستيك. ثانيًا : قم بوضع بعض الأحجار في القاع.
• What should I do after that ? ماذا يجب أن أفعل بعد ذلك؟	- The next thing you do is to press your finger into the soil to make a hole. الشيء التالى هو أن تقوم بالضغط بإصبعك على الترية لعمل حفرة.
• How deep must the hole be ? كم العمق يجب أن تكون الحفرة؟	- It must be 2 centimetres deep. یجب أن یکون عمقها ۲ سم.
• Should I water it every day ? هل يجب أن أقوم بالرى كل يوم ؟	- Yes. But don't give it too much water. نعم ولكن لا تعطيها كثيرًا من الماء.

> 7. Describing and asking questions about jobs :

٧. وصف وتوجيه اسئلة عن الوظائف:

Quest	ions	[?]	





Questions [?]	Answers [.]
• Who is an architect ? من هو المهندس المعمارى ؟	- An architect is a person who designs buildings. المهندس المعماري هو شخص يقوم بتصميم المباني.
• Who is a writer ? من هو الكاتب؟	 A writer is a person who writes books or articles. الكاتب هو شخص يكتب الكتب أو المقالات.
• Who is a marine biologist ? من هو عالم الأحياء المائية ؟	- A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it.
	عالم الأحياء المائية هو شخص يدرس المحيط والنباتات والحيوانات التي توجد به.
• Who is a dentist ? من هو طبيب الأسنان؟	- A dentist is a person who looks after people's teeth. طبيب الأسنان هو شخص يقوم بالاعتناء بأسنان المرضى.

السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

عبارة عن حوار به خمس فراغات، وعلى الطالب أن يملأ كل فراغ ولذلك يجب على الطالب أن يقرأ الحوار أولًا بطريقة جيدة.

Exercise on Language Functions

• Complete the following dialogue:

1	Ahmed	and Samy are talking about types of music.
	Ahmed	: Hello Samy! Do you like music?
	Samy	: Hi Ahmed ! (1)
	Ahmed	: What kind of music do you like ?
	Samy	: (2)
	Ahmed	: (3)?
	Samy	: I like jazz music because it's nice and calm.
	Ahmed	: Do you like pop music ?
	Samy	: (4)
	Ahmed	: (5)?
	Samy	: Marvin Allstar is my favourite musician.
2	Dina as	ks Asmaa about her weekend.
	Dina	: Hi Asmaa! How was your weekend?
	Asmaa	: Hi Dina ! (1)
	Dina	: (2)?
	Asmaa	: I went to the museum.
	Dina	: Good. Was it quiet ?
	Asmaa	: (3)
	Dina	: Did you take photos of the museum?
	Asmaa	: (4)
	Dina	: (5)?
	Asmaa	: Great idea! Let's visit it together.



٣. قطع الفهم

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

وهو عبارة عن قطعة فهم ويجيب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة بأداة استفهام وثلاث اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال.

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Sami

I'm staying with my uncle in London! I travelled to his house by train. London is very big and the streets are always busy. My uncle says that some people in London are not friendly, but I like the people here. Today, we visited a museum. It has big windows, so the rooms are very light. Some people don't like museums, but this museum was very interesting for me.

Yesterday, we walked up a hill in a park. I saw all of London from there. There are some modern skyscrapers in London, but most of the buildings are low and not very tall.

Regards,

Ali

a. Choose the co	rrect answer from	a, b, c or d :	
1. Skyscrapers a	re veryl	ouildings.	
a. low	b. tall	c. small	d. tiny
2. The underline	d word " <u>here</u> " refer	's to	
a. London	b. Paris	. c. Cairo	d. Alexandria
3. The opposite	of the underlined v	vord " low " is	
a. small	b. tall	c. high	d. fast
b. Answer the fol	lowing questions	:	
4. What is the m	ain idea of the ema	il?	
5. What do you	think of living in Lo	ondon ?	
6. Where is Ali st	aying ?		

Vocabulary, Language, **Writing & Accumulative Tests**

& General Revision on Vocabulary

قم بحل اختبار على كل وحدتان من الاختيارات التراكمية

١. مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

Unit

Important Vocabulary

aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية	football stadium	ملعب كرة قدم
sports centre	مرکز ریاضی	bowling alley	صالة بولينج
funfair	مدينة الملاهي	museum	متحف
planetarium	القبة السماوية	exhibition	معرض
dolphins	دلافين	restaurant	مطعم
shopping	التسوق	nervous	عصبی / متوتر
school canteen	كانتين المدرسة / المقصف	together	معًا
swimming pool	حمام سباحة	opera	أوبرا
pop music	موسيقى البوب	traditional	تقليدي
terrible	فظیع / کریه	coconut	جوز الهند
opinion	رأى	closed	مغلق

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. We decided to play basketball at the sports
 - a. match b. wheel
- c. funfair
- d. centre
- 2. We had lunch together in the school
- (SB page 4) d. music room
- a. conteen 3. Yesterday, I went to my new school. I was quite
- b. library
- c. laboratory
- because

- it was my first day. a. expensive
 - b. nervous
- c. dangerous
- (SB page 4) d. funny
- 4. Let's go on the big wheel at the this weekend.
- (WB page 70)

- a. funfair
- b. museum
- c. stadium
- d. theatre

- a. cinema
- b. jungle

5. It was great at the Egypt won 2–0!

- c. opera
- (WB page 70) d. stadium

Unit

Important Vocabulary

bridge	کوبری	Russia	دولة روسيا
pyramid	هرم	deep	عميق
tower	برج	million	مليون

tunnel	ــ نفق	the Great Pyramid	الهرم الأكبر
further	أبعد	crowded	مزدحم
worse	أسوأ	suspension bridge	کوبری معلق
beautiful	جميل	dangerous	خطير
sunset	غروب الشمس	narrow	ضيق
achievements	انجازات	famous	مشهور
holiday	أجازة	valuable	ذو قيمة
the Grand Egyptian Mu	seum	treasures	كنوز
بر	المتحف المصرى الكبر	competition	مسابقة / منافسة
space	فضاء	tourists	سياح
entrance	مدخل	columns	أعمدة
fantastic	رائع	The Amazon	نهر الأمازون
expressions	تعبيرات		

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Tahya Masr goes over the Nile in Cairo. (WB page 77) a. Street b. Bridge c. Library d. Dam 2. The Cairo is the tallest building in Egypt. (WB page 77) b. Tower d. Citadel a. Station c. Museum 3. The Channel goes under the sea between England and France. (WB page 77) d. Jungle a. Tunnel b. Bridge c. Cave 4. We need to buy some water. This bottle is (WB page 78) b. bright c. empty d. expensive 5. Only people and bikes can go down that road because it's very (WB page 78) b. wide c. easy d. big a. narrow

Unit

9

Important Vocabulary

diving	رياضة الغطس	dentist	طبيب أسنان
kayaking	رياضة التجديف بالزورق	protect	يحمى
mountain biking	ركوب الدراجات على الجبال	railway line	خط سکة حدید
windsurfing	ركوب الأمواج	rock climbin	تسلق الصخور g
Mount Catherine	جبل سانت کاترین	sailing	الإبحار
tent	خيمة	trekking	المشى لمسافات طويلة في الجبال
journey	رحلة طويلة	zip lining	الانزلاق بالحبل
negotiate	يتفاوض	Bedouin	بدوی

rainy	ممطر .	activity	نشاط
fog	ضباب	argument	جدال
adventure	مغامرة	carefully	بحرص
cloudy	ملبد بالغيوم	keep warm	يحتفظ بالدفء
stormy	عاصف	challenge	تحدى
weather	طقس	complete	يُكمل

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can't go	today because the	ere's no wind.	(WB page 84)
a. climbing	b. windsurfing	c. biking	d. shopping
2. All you need to go	is a boat.		(WB page 84)
a. sailing	b. diving	€. climbing	d. trekking
3. I love bed	cause I'm good at sw	vimming under the	water. (WB page 84)
a. windsurfing	b. diving	c. sailing	d. climbing
4. When you go	, you start really	high, but you finish	on the ground.
	1		(WB page 84)
a. swimming	b. riding	c. sailing	d. zip lining
5. We sometimes go	for two day	s or more across the	e desert. (WB page 84)
a. diving	b. trekking	c. sailing	d. windsurfing

Unit

10

Important Vocabulary

cotton	قطن	wool	صوف
glass	زجاج	pencil case	مقلمة
leather	جلد	skirt	چيبة
metal	معدن	socks	جوارب
plastic	بلاستيك	statue	تمثال
stone	حجر	tablet	جهاز لوحى [تابلت]
wallet	محفظة	teaspoon	ملعقة صغيرة
roof	سطح	bricks	طوب
taps	حنفيات	oven	فرن
kitchen	مطبخ	bedroom	حجرة نوم
solar panels	ألواح شمسية	electric car	سيارة كهربائية
wind turbines	طواحين الهواء	driverless cars	سيارات بدون سائق
robot	إنسان آلي	culture	ثقافة
earthquake	زلزال	rectangular	على شكل مستطيل

disadvantages	عيوب	warm	دافئ
imagination	خيال	divide	يقسم

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A car door is made of (WB page 93) a. alass b. leather c. wood d. metal 2. Car windows are made of (WB page 93) b. cotton c. wool d. leather a. glass 3. Expensive car seats are made of (WB page 93) b. wool c. leather d. cotton 4. It was not outside, but it was nice and in my bedroom. (WB page 96) b. cold a. hot c. rainy d. cool 5. My mother wants to buy a new sofa, but I don't think we have for it in our living room. (WB page 96)

Unit

b. space

11

c. free

d. cotton

Important Vocabulary

a. money

coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	ocean	محيط
octopus	أخطبوط	sting	يلدغ
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	tail	ذيل
stingray	سمكة الراي اللادغة	planet	كوكب
sea turtle	سلحفاة بحرية	environment	بيئة
whale	حوت	recycle	يعيد تصنيع
dirty	قذر	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
view	منظر طبيعي	frighten	يُرعب/ يخيف
plastic pot	إناء بلاستيك	rules	قواعد
phone call	مكالمة هاتفية	soil	تربة
radio station	محطة إذاعة	local	محلي
gloves	قفازات	clear	واضح / صافی

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't throw away	those glass bottles. We	can them.	(WB page 101)
a. recycle	b. cook	c. cycle	d. bake
2. Trees are very goo	d for our becaus	se they give us clean o	ir. (WB page 101)
a. excitement	b. improvement	c. environment	d.equipment
3. We don't need th	at dirty piece of paper. '	You can put it with th	he
		<u>, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , </u>	(WB page 101)
a. notebooks	b. books	c. library	d. rubbish

Unit 12

Important Vocabulary

accountant	محاسب	computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر
architect	مهندس معماري	writer	كاثب
businessman	رجل أعمال	engineer	مهندس
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال	machines	آلات
scientist	عالِم	meetings	اجتماعات
photographer	مصور .	students	طلاب
engines	محركات	design	يصمم
buildings	مبانی	laboratory	معمل
sick	مريض	traditional	تقليدى
marine biologist	عالِم أحياء مائية	jewellery	مجوهرات
test	إختبار	colourful	ملون
Africa	قارة أفريقيا	basket	سلة
workshops	ورش	Ghana	دولة غانا
Kenya	دولة كينيا	illness	مرض
earn	يكسب [أموال]	cure	علاج
prediction	تنبؤ	exciting	مثير

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I love learning ab	out sea life. I want to be	a/an	(WB page 108)
a. artist	b. marine biologist	c. engineer	d. teacher
2. A/An is bi	gger than a sea.		(WB page 108)
a. ocean	b. pond	c. river	d. lake
3. The scientist did	a lot of tests in the		(WB page 108)
a. playground	b. stadium	c. laboratory	d. library
4. The shop had a lo	ot of cups, plates and oth	er	(WB page 110)
a. pottery	b. leather	c. wood	d. straw
5. My cousin is a/an	now. She was 18	last week!	(WB page 110)
a. baby	b. child	c. adult	d. kid

2. General Revision on Language

٢. مراجعة على أهم القواعد اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

Unit 7



الماضي البسيط:

a. Affirmative statements:

الجمل الخبرية المثبتة:

التصريف الثانى للفعل 🛨 🛮 الفاعل Subject

ex.: - He bought a new car last week.

b. Negative statements:

الجمل الخبرية المنفية:

Subject الفاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر

ex.: - He didn't buy a new car last week.

c. Past time expressions:

التعبيرات الزمنية الخاصة بالماضي البسيط:

We use past time expressions to say when something happened.

نستخدم التعبيرات الزمنية الخاصة بالماضي البسيط للإخبار عن متى حدث شيء ما.

ex.: - I went to the zoo last week / Sunday / month / year.

- I went bowling an hour / four days / five months ago.
- Ali saw his brother Abdullah yesterday.
- In 2013, Salma was born.

2. Asking questions (Yes / No questions / Wh questions):

توجيه الأسئلة (الأسئلة ب «هل» / الأسئلة بأدوات الاستفهام):

a-Yes, No question

السؤال بـ[هل] :

ex.: - Did you go to the park?

- Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

- Have you got a camera?

Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.

- Can she speak English?

- Yes, she can. / No, she can't.

b-Wh-question

السؤال بأداة استفهام :

ex.: - What are you doing now?

- I am reading a story.

- When do you go to school?

At seven o'clock.

- Where did Salma go yesterday?

- To the market.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. It was my birthday..... Saturday. (SB page 3) d. in c. last a. next b. ago 2. I a haircut two weeks ago. (SB page 3) b. had c. has d. have had a. have 3. I bowling last weekend. (SB page 2) d. went c. have gone b. goes a. go 4. He the bus to the city last Sunday. (WB page 71) b. take d. has taken 5. They the sports centre two weeks ago. (WB page 71) c. had visited d. visit b. visits a. visited Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 1. I[ride] on the big wheel last weekend. (SB page 2) (SB page 3) 3. Yesterday, it [were] my friend Dalia's birthday. (WB page 71) 4.[Do] you go to the park yesterday? (SB page 7) Unit صفات المقارنة والتفضيل : : [Comparative and superlative adjectives] قبل الاسم الموصوف - I live in a big city. - الصفة تصف الاسم وتأتى My city is big. بعد v. to be مقارنة الصفات Comparing adjectives 🚺 للمقارنة بين اثنين أو شيئين باستخدام الصفة القصيرة نستخدم : adj. (الصفة القصيرة + er ex.: - Cairo is noisier than the countryside. 🚺 للمقارنة بين اثنين أو شيئين باستخدام الصفة الطويلة نستخدم : more / less + adj. [الصفة الطويلة] than ex.: - The countryside is more relaxing than the city. 😈 عند المقارنة بين فرد / شيء ومجموعة باستخدام الصفة القصيرة نستخدم : the 🛨 adj. (الصفة القصيرة 🛨 ex.: - Cairo is the biggest city in Africa. 🚯 عند المقارنة بين فرد / شيء ومجموعة باستخدام الصفة الطويلة نستخدم : the most / the least | + | adj. [الصفة الطويلة] ex.: - The lion is the most dangerous animal.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. 33 My friend lives to the school than me.

 a. nearest b. near c. nearer d. as near

 2. 33 Cheese is for you than sweets.

 a. good b. as good c. better d. best

 3. 34 I think the blue dress is than the red dress.
- a. nice b. nicer c. nicest d. the nicest
- 4. WB The museum is usually crowded on Saturday than on Sunday.
 - a. more b. many c. the most d. most
- 5. WB My cousins felt after they moved to a new flat. (page 78)
 - a. happier b. happiest c. more happier d. most happiest

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 2. WB Adel is (tall) than Rami. (page 78)
- 3. SB Cairo is (crowded) than Aswan. (page 15)
- 5. WB I think the museum is the [good] place for a holiday. (page 79)

Unit 9

1. "be going to + inf." for future plans.

استخدام (be going to + inf.) للخطط المستقبلية.

We use (be going to) when we already know our plans for the future.

نستخدم (be going to) عندما نكون على دراية بخططنا للمستقبل.

ex.: - I'm going to visit Sinai.

- What are you going to do?

- Are you going to try rock climbing? - Yes, I am. - No, I am not.

2. Reflexive Pronouns:

الضمائر المنعكسة:

- تستخدّم الضّمائر المنعكسة : [۱] للتأكيد.

[٢] عندما يكون المفعول هو نفسه فاعل الجملة.

 I
 →
 myself
 You
 yourself yourselves

 He
 →
 himself
 We
 →
 ourselves

 She
 →
 herself
 They
 →
 themselves

 It
 →
 itself

ex.: - Soha painted the picture herself.

- Nobody helped me. I did it myself.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. 553 We going to go diving. (page 23) b. do a. am d. is c. are 2. 53 I am going to Sinai. (page 23) a. visits c. visited d. visiting 3. she go trekking this afternoon? (page 23) b. going a. go d. going to 4. 53 We enjoyed when we went sailing. (page 27) a. myself b. herself c. yourselves d. ourselves 5. SB Would you like to make a cup of tea? (page 27) a. yourself b. itself c. ourselves d. themselves Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 1. WB What are you going to [wears] tomorrow? (page 84) 2. WB Are you going to do your homework [last] evening? (page 84) (page 24) 4. WB Sara has a jacket to keep [myself] warm. (page 86) 5. WB [They] made the cake myself. (page 86) Unit 10 1. [be made of] to describe the material of an object. ا. تستخدم (be made of) لوصف المادة التي تُصنع منها الأشياء. ex.: - The chair is made of wood. - The cushions are made of cotton. - What is the bag made of? Using "will" and "won't" for future predictions. استخدام (will) و (won't) للتنبؤات المستقبلية. الاستخدام: Usage تستخدم "Will" عند التنبؤ بما سيحدث في المستقبل بدون دليل. ex.: - I will be late for school. • تستخدم "won't" عند التنبؤ بما لن يحدث في المستقبل بدون دليل. - I think we won't live on the moon. Formation : التكوين الفاعل Subject مصدر الفعل .will / won't + inf

ex.: - I think we will live in space stations in the future.
 - Electric cars won't use petrol in the future.

صيغة الاستفهام Interrogative a. Yes/No question: السؤال بـ «هل»: الفاعل subject ? مصدر الفعل .mf. Will ex.: - Will we have small electric cars in the future? No, we won't - Yes, we will. b. Wh - questions: السؤال بكلمة استفهام: will inf. ... ? subject Question word ex.: - Where will you go at the weekend? - To the funfair. 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. 573 The cushions are of cotton. (page 35) d. makes b. made c. making a make 2. 53 What your bag made of? (page 35) d. were c. is b. am a. are 3. 55 We will to the moon in the future. (page 38) d. goes b. going c. gone 4. 553 there be ordinary mobiles in the future? (page 38) d. Are b. Have c. Will a. Is 5. 55 Will there be electric cars in the future? (page 38) - Yes, there d. will c. is a. won't b. was Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 1. 55 There [was] be a swimming pool soon. (page 38) 2. 553 It will [been] made of wood. (page 38) 3. 53 No, we [will] . We will use land telephones. (page 38) 4. 553 What's your pencil case [make] of? (page 35) 5. WB They are [making] of stone. (page 99) Unit 11 الحالة الصفرية: 1. Zero conditional: الاستخدام: Usage تستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق: . To talk about facts: ex.: - If / When you add two and two, you get four.

```
Formation : التكوين
                      present Simple Tense
                                                 present Simple Tense
          If / when
                          زمن المضارع البسيط
                                                     زمن المضارع البسيط
   ex.: - If / When I don't know a word, I use my dictionary.
        Present Simple Tense
                                                 present Simple Tense
                                    if / when
            زمن المضارع البسيط
                                                     زمن المضارع البسيط
  ex.: - The game starts if / when you touch the screen.
  صيغة الاستفهام Interrogative
                                       • تستخدم أيضًا (if / when) في صيغة الاستفهام :
  ex.: - Do you feel ill if / when you eat too quickly?
      - What do you feel if / when you eat too quickly?
      - What happens if / when you eat too quickly?
2. must / mustn't + inf. مصدر الفعل:

    تستخدم "must" للإلزام والضرورة.

   ex.: - We must save our planet.

    تستخدم "mustn't" للمنع والتحريم للأشياء الغير مصرح بها.

   ex.: - We mustn't throw rubbish into the ocean.
3. "should & shouldn't" for advice :
       - إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام "should & shouldn't" بمعنى ينبغى أن / لا ينبغى أن.
  Formation : التكوين
                                should / shouldn't
                 Subject
  ex.: - You should study hard.
      - You shouldn't waste your time.
 صيغة الاستفهام Interrogative
a. Yes/No question:
                                                                السؤال بـ «هل»:
            Should
                           الفاعل subject
                                                 ? ... مصدر الفعل inf.
  ex.: - Should I take a ten-minute break?

    Yes, you should.

                                                 - No, you shouldn't.
```

```
b. Wh - questions:
                                                        السؤال بكلمة استفهام
                                                                  inf. ... ?
    Question word
                          should / shouldn't
                                                   subject
  ex.: - What should I do to learn new vocabulary?
1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 1. 😘 If you touch a jellyfish, it ...... you.
                                                                       (Page 45)
                                                             d. stinging
    a. sting
                       b. stings
 The octopus swims away fast ...... it's in danger.
                                                                      (Page 45)
                                                             d. when
                                          c. how
    a. what
                       b. where
 3. W When I ..... ill, I go to bed.
                                                                      (Page 100)
                                                             d. felt
                       b. feeling
                                          c. feels
    a. feel
 4. SB We ..... play games on roads.
                                                                      (Page 47)
                                                             d. have to
    a. must
                       b. should
                                          c. mustn't
 5. 53 You ..... share your ideas with others.
                                                                      (Page 49)
                                          c. shouldn't
                                                             d. mustn't
                       b. should
    a. can't
Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
 1. WB When it ...... [be] very cold, water turns to ice.
                                                                      (Page 100)
 2. WB When my grandfather is tired, he ...... [went] to bed.
                                                                      (Page 100)
 3. 55 We ..... [mustn't] save our planet!
                                                                       (Page 46)
 4. 53 The animals ...... [must] eat plastic. It is very bad for them. (Page 48)
 5. 1 We ...... (should) use plastic bags just once.
                                                                      (Page 47)
                                 Unit
 1. Relative pronoun (who):
                                                           ضمير الوصل (who):
                   - يمكننا الربط بين جملتين عن فاعلهما عاقل باستخدام ضمير الوصل [who]:
  ex.: - The teacher is a person. He teaches students.
       = The teacher is a person who teaches students.
   ex.: – A businessman is someone who works in an office.
                                                               السؤال المذيل:
 Question Tag :
  Formation : التكوين
                 ◄ السؤال المذيل بكون بمعنى [أليس كذلك؟]

    ◄ لابد أن يكتب بصيغة مختصرة وليست كاملة.

 , does not he? \Longrightarrow , doesn't he?
```

ex.: - She is clever, isn't she? - They aren't lazy, are they? Yes, she is. No, they aren't. - Mona speaks English, doesn't she ? - Hala wrote the lesson, c'idn't she ? - He has a black car, doesn't he? - He has written the lesson, hasn't he? - She never plays tennis, does she? - لاحظ إذا كانت (has / have) أفعال أساسية يكون السؤال المذيل لها باستخدام "does / do". - لاحظ الجملة المثبتة يجاب عنها بـ "Yes" والجملة المنفية يجاب عنها بـ "No". 3. The first conditional: الحالة الشرطية الأولى: Formation : التكوين present Simple Tense will ('II) + (inf.) subject won't + (inf.) زمن المضارع البسيط • تستخدم هذه الحالة عند احتمالية حدوث شيء في المستقبل. • لاحظ إذا وضعت [If] في بداية الجملة نضع (ۚ) بعد نهاية الجملة الأولى أما إذا جاءت في المنتصف لا نضع (ۗ إ). ex.: - If Adel studies hard, he will pass the test. - If it is windy tomorrow, they won't go to the beach. - You won't pass the exam if you don't study hard. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. 53 A pilot is a person flies a plane. (Page 55) a. who b. where c. when d. which 2. WB Hany is the boy lives next door to me. (Page 107) a. which b. where d. when 3. WB She wants to be a marine biologist,she? (Page 108) a. does b. isn't c. don't d. doesn't 4. WB Your name is Nawal, it? (Page 108) b. isn't d. is 5. 53 You won't forget to phone me, you? (Page 57) a. will b. are d. do Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 1. WB Mohamed Salah is a footballer [when] scores a lot of goals. (Page 107) 2. WB Mr Gamal is the teacher [where] teaches us maths. (Page 107) 3. WB It is cold in England, [is] it? (Page 108) 4. WB Your grandfather lived in a big city, [doesn't] he? (Page 108) 5. WB She never speaks French, (doesn't) she? (Page 108)

- يستخدم السؤال المذيل للتحقق أو التأكد من شئ تعرفه.

م. أهم الفقرات الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني Important Paragraphs and Emails

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

يكتب الطالب موضوعاً إنشائياً أو رسالة بريد إلكتروني من حوالي ثمانين كلمة ويعتبر هذا السؤال من الأسئلة التي تحتاج إلى مزيد من التدريب ولذلك نقدم لك نماذج للموضوعات الإنشائية ورسائل البريد الإلكتروني الهامة في المنهج كما يمكنك مراجعة موضوعات أخرى بإجاباتها النموذجية في نهاية كتاب الشرح.

Model Paragraph 1

"A new house"

Last month our family moved to a new house in Cairo. The house is big and has a nice garden. I liked it very much. My family planted some trees and flowers in the garden. I went to buy a new school uniform for my new school. People there were nice and kind. I made many new friends in the school. My best friend is called Ahmed. He was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen. I was very happy.

Model Paragraph 2

"Your last weekend"

My last weekend was fantastic. I went to Ahmed 's house on Sunday and we played football in the park. It was a lot of fun. We had lunch together. It was delicious. In the afternoon, we went to the sports centre. We played tennis. There was a really big swimming pool. We swam in it. We had a nice time at the sports centre. In the evening, we went shopping. I bought a T-shirt and shoes for my young sister.

Model Paragraph 3

"The Tahya Masr Bridge"

Tahya Masr Bridge is the world 's widest suspension bridge. It opened in Cairo in May 2019.

More than 4.000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016 and they finished it in 32 months later.

The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

Model Paragraph 4

"A wonderful holiday"

We had a wonderful holiday in Egypt. We visited the Valley of the Kings in Luxor. It is one of the most popular places for tourists. We saw many of them there. The place is quiet in the early morning but it gets busier later during the day. The biggest place there is the Karnak Temple. There's a nice and quiet place called Habu Temple. It has columns similar to those at Karnak, but it is less crowded. I liked it most.

Model Email 5 -

From: tahani20@gmail.com

to : ghadanagy@yahoo.com

Subject: a story I read

Dear Ghada,

How are you and your family? Do you like reading stories? Last month, I read a story. It is called Robinson Crusoe. Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor. His ship sank because there was a bad storm. Crusoe swam to a nearby island, but there were no other people there. He walked along the beach, but he saw nobody. He thought that he was alone. He found a fish and ate it. He looked for a cave to sleep in. He found a coconut on the beach. It was delicious. He wrote a diary of what happened to him. I think it is an exciting story. You can borrow it.

Yours, Tahani

Model Email 6 -

From: tamerbro@yahoo.com

70 : nabileid@yahoo.com

Subject: an adventure

Dear Nabil,

How are you doing? I'm very excited today to write to you about my adventure! I'm in Dahab with my family. There's so much to do here. This afternoon, we're going to

go trekking in the mountains. I'm not going to try rock climbing. It's too scary. Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing in the morning. In the afternoon, we're going to go diving. We're not going to go kayking. There is no time.

See you soon.

Yours,

Tamer

Model Email 7

From: omarfarid@gmail.com

To: fady40@gmail.com

Subject: planting trees

Dear Fady,

How are things with you? I want to tell you about the importance of trees and how we can plant them. We plant trees to keep our environment clean. Trees make the air healthy. There are many steps to plant a tree. First, wash the plastic pot and dry it. Second, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot. Press your finger to make a hole and put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place. Water it every day but don't give it too much water. When the tree grows too big for the pot, plant it in a bigger pot, or in the ground. Let's plant a tree in the garden together.

Yours,

Omar

4. Accumulative Tests

اختبارات تراكمية

Units 7&8

A. Listening

	A. LISTE	ining	
1 Listen and cho	ose the correct an	swer from a, b,	c or d:
	ستماع في نهاية الكتاب].	ابة الصحيحة (نصوص الا	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإج
1. They went to th	e museum by	······ •	
a. car	b. train	c. plane	d. bus
2. Bassant is	years old.		
a. ten	b. twenty	c. twelve	d. twenty-two
3. They saw	in the museum.		
	b. statues	c. tips	d. studies
4. They went to th	e in the ev	ening.	
a. museum	b. home	c. funfair	d. aquarium
(C)	B. Language	Functions	
Complete the formula			
	tef about his visit to		
	d you go yesterday		
Hamdy: (1)			
Atef : (2)			
Hamdy: I went wi			
Atef : (3)			
Hamdy: We saw tr		3 ×	
Atef : Did you s		-	
Hamdy: Yes, (4)			
	njoy your time ther	e 7	
Hamdy: (5)	. y-y your time there	.	
, (0)	*		

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Doctors are important because they care about people. Doctors are the people who help others get **better** when they get sick. They find out what is wrong with people when they are sick. Doctors help sick people by giving them the right medicine. **They** work in hospitals and clinics.

Doctors are very helpful. To be a doctor, you have to go to university. You should be good at science. You also should like helping others. You should be kind and helpful. If you are not kind and patient, people will not love you.

	rrect answer from	MALES SECTION REPORT THE RESIDENCE OF THE CONTRACT OF THE CONT	
 The underling 	ned word "They"	refers to	
a. doctors	b. patients	c. nurses	 d. universities
2. If you aren't	a kind doctor, per	ople willyo	ou.
a. love	b. hate		d. respect
3. The opposit	e of the underline	d word "better" is .	
a. normal	b. serious		d. well
b. Answer the fo	llowing question	s:	
4. Why do you	think doctors are	very important?	,
	ole title to the pas		
	d you do to be a d		
). Vocabular	y & Structure	3
			× ×
	rrect answer fro		
	stars when we go		al mlamatarium
a. museum		c. aquarium	d. planetarium
	y people in this ci		d. crowded
	b. free		a. crowded
	expensive than		d. least
	b. more		u. least
		English or maths?	d. interest
	b. subject		u. interest
	a dangerous sea b. dolphin		d. elephant
	and all the		u. elephant
	b. fires		d. statues
	vorried about the		u. statues
	b. Were		d. Do
	person in th		
a. rich		c. richest	d. as rich
		part in the art	
			d competition

10. I asked my moti	her to remind me	my home	work.
a. with	b. by	c. for	d. of
5 Complete the s brackets: 1. She didn't	(arrived) earl best) than his frie (less) int	y last meeting. nd. eresting.	f the word(s) in
	E. Wi	riting	
6 Write a paragra	ph of about EIC	GHTY (80) words o	n:
		our weekend ?"	
		9&10	
	A. List	tening	
Listen and choo		nswer from a, b,	ord:
	نماع في نهاية الكتاب].	نابةُ الصّحيحة (نصوص الاسن	
 Eman is in Hurghada She is with her 	b. Dahab	c. Siwa	d. Ras Shetan
a. teachers	The state of the s	c. family	d. cousins
 They are going t travelling Rock climbing is 	b. trekking	c. rock climbing	d. zip lining
a. interesting	b. exciting	c. boring	d. scary
_	B. Language	Functions	, .
2 Complete the fo Ali and Salim are to	llowing dialog	ue:	
Ali : Do you kno	w Mohamed Sal	ah ?	
Salim: (1) Ali: (2)	·		
Salim: He was bor			
Ali : (3)		b)	
Salim: He plays in	England for Live		
Ali : Did he win	the African Footh	paller?	

Salim: (4) : What do you think about his character? Salim: (5) C. Reading Comprehension Read the following, then answer the questions: Marwan is a very **smart** boy in the third grade. He always remembers his homework and does well on all of his tests. Last Sunday, he woke up late and quickly left his house. When he arrived at school, he noticed that his homework was not in his school bag. Marwan was upset because his teacher, Mrs Maha, gets angry when students don't do their homework. He started to get worried but he decided to be brave and apologize to his teacher and tell her he won't do that again. Mrs Maha wasn't angry as she knows that Marwan is a good student. a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : a. Marwan's brother b. Marwan's cousin c. Marwan d. Marwan's friend 2. Mrs Maha becomes when her students forget their homework. a. bored b. proud c. angry d. excited 3. The underlined word "smart" means b. proud a. happy c. clever d. polite b. Answer the following questions: 4. Why did Marwan leave his house guickly? 5. What is the main idea of the passage? 6. Why do you think Mrs Maha wasn't angry with Marwan? D. Vocabulary & Structure Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: They went across Sinai. a. tricking b. picking c. joking d. trekking a. floated b. sank d. built you going to study French? b. Have a. Will d. Are c. Did

4. Is there	rice in the bag?					
a. many	b. few	c. any	d. some			
5 are sma	all planes withou	t pilots.				
a. Drowns	b. Drones	c. Tunnels	d. Tools			
6. Ali, please behav	*					
a. myself		c. themselves	d. himself			
	•	ns about the future.	*			
a. play	b. steal	c. make	d. take			
8. He looked at the	to see i	if he was injured.				
a. sand		c. cupboard	d. medal			
9. In villages, peop						
a. bins	b. fans	c. ovens	d. curtains			
10. We must	other people.					
a. respect		c. learn	d. spend			
Complete the se						
brackets:	entences with t	ile collect form o	tile word(s) iii			
1. There will	(been) holida	evs on the moon				
			olf)			
2. Hatem and Ramy went shopping by (himself).						
3 Ha is going to	(cnont) a	wook in Dahah				
3. He is going to	1,11,20					
 He is going to Most furniture 	(make) c	of wood.	* .			
	1,11,20	of wood.	*			
4. Most furniture	(make) c	of wood. iting	n:			
4. Most furniture	E. Wr ph of about EIG	of wood. iting GHTY (80) words o	n:			
4. Most furniture	E. Wr ph of about EIG	of wood. iting	n:			
4. Most furniture	E. Wr ph of about EIG	of wood. iting GHTY (80) words o	n:			
4. Most furniture	E. Wr ph of about EIG	of wood. iting GHTY (80) words o	n:			
4. Most furniture	e. Wrong ph of about EIG	of wood. iting iHTY (80) words of sports in Egypt"	n:			
4. Most furniture	e. Wrong ph of about EIG	of wood. iting GHTY (80) words o	n:			
4. Most furniture	e. Wrong ph of about EIG	iting iHTY (80) words of sports in Egypt"	n:			
4. Most furniture	ph of about ElG "Adventure s Units A. List	of wood. iting GHTY (80) words of sports in Egypt" 11 & 12				
4. Most furniture	make) of E. Wrong ph of about EIG "Adventure statement of the correct at the corr	iting iting iHTY (80) words of sports in Egypt" 11 & 12 cening nswer from a, b, c	or d:			
4. Most furniture	E. Wr E. Wr ph of about Eld "Adventure s "Adventure s A. List se the correct a تماع في نهاية الكتاب].	iting iting HTY (80) words of sports in Egypt" 11 & 12 ening nswer from a, b, o	or d:			
4. Most furniture. 6 Write a paragra 1 Listen and choo 1. Santiago was a/a	E. Wr E. Wr ph of about ElG "Adventure s "Adventure s د List عداع في نهاية الكتاب]. an man.	iting iting iHTY (80) words of sports in Egypt" 11 & 12 ening nswer from a, b, of short side of sports in Egypt	: or d : استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإج			
4. Most furniture Write a paragra Listen and choo 1. Santiago was a/a a. old	E. Wr ph of about Eld "Adventure s "Adventure s د List عد the correct a الماع في نهاية الكتاب. الماع في نهاية الكتاب. b. young	iting iting iHTY (80) words of sports in Egypt" 11 & 12 cening nswer from a, b, of the sports in Egypt c. happy	or d:			
4. Most furniture Write a paragra Listen and choo 1. Santiago was a/a a. old 2. Santiago worked	Ph of about Eld "Adventure s "Adventure s List se the correct a الماع في نهاية الكتاب. man. b. young d as a/an	iting iHTY (80) words of sports in Egypt" 11 & 12 cening nswer from a, b, of the sports in Egypt c. happy	: or d : استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ- d. weak			
4. Most furniture Write a paragra Listen and choo 1. Santiago was a/a a. old 2. Santiago worked a. sailor	E. Wr ph of about ElG "Adventure s" "Adventure s" "A. List se the correct a أيماع في نهاية الكتاب. man. b. young das a/an	iting iHTY (80) words of sports in Egypt" 	: or d : استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإج			
4. Most furniture Write a paragra Listen and choo 1. Santiago was a/a a. old 2. Santiago worked a. sailor 3. Santiago didn't d	Units A. List عادة الكتاب المسالة الكتاب المسالة الكتاب المسالة الكتاب المسالة الكتاب المسالة الكتاب المسالة	iting iHTY (80) words of sports in Egypt" 11 & 12 cening nswer from a, b, of the substitution of the subs	: or d : استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ- d. weak d. fisherman			
4. Most furniture Write a paragra Listen and choo 1. Santiago was a/a a. old 2. Santiago worked a. sailor 3. Santiago didn't d a. 18	Units A. List عدم المحافظة الكتاب المحافظة الكتاب المحافظة الكتاب المحافظة الكتاب المحافظة	iting iHTY (80) words of sports in Egypt" 	: or d : استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ- d. weak			
4. Most furniture Write a paragra Listen and choo 1. Santiago was a/a a. old 2. Santiago worked a. sailor 3. Santiago didn't d	Units A. List عدم المحافظة الكتاب المحافظة الكتاب المحافظة الكتاب المحافظة الكتاب المحافظة	iting iHTY (80) words of sports in Egypt" 11 & 12 cening nswer from a, b, of the substitution of the subs	: or d : استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ- d. weak d. fisherman			

B. Language Functions

	D. Language ranctions				
2	Complete the following dialogue :				
	Yara and Sally are talking about their future jobs.				
	Yara: What would you like to be?				
	Sally: (1)				
	Yara: Why would you like to be a dentist?				
	Sally: (2)				
•	Yara: Wonderful. You should study hard to be a dentist, shouldn't you?				
	Sally: Yes, of course. (3)?				
	Yara: I want to be an engineer.				
	Sally : Great. (4)?				
	Yara: The engineer designs machines.				
	Sally: (5)				
3	C. Reading Comprehension				
	Read the following, then answer the questions: A marine biologist is a person who studies the plants and animals				
	in the ocean. A marine biologist must be good at science and loves				
	the ocean. The ocean is full of interesting animals and plants. A marine				
	biologist sometimes goes around coral reefs and sometimes tests				
	water from the ocean in the laboratory. They spend a lot of time on the				
	computer writing the results of tests. Their researches help to protect				
	the plants and animals in the ocean. It's an exciting job but sometimes				
	it's hard when the weather is terrible. It's not nice to go out on a boat for				
	a dive when there's a storm.				
	a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :				
	1. The underlined word "exciting" is the opposite of				
	a. terrible b. interesting c. boring d. hard				
	The marine biologists do researches to help marine				
	a. birds b. animals c. insects d. sports 3. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to				
	a. studies b. researches				
	c. marine animals d. marine biologists				
	b. Answer the following questions :				
	4. What's the main idea of the passage?				

		t use the computer	
6. Do you thin Why not?	nk a marine biolog	gist's job is an easy o	or a hard job ? Wh
	D. Vocabular	y & Structure	
	orrect answer fro		
1. We went	around the co	oral reefs.	
a. cycling	b. trekking	c. driving	d. diving
Paper and gla	ss are easy to		•
a. recycle	b. kill	c. disappear	d. taste
Mr Atef is a go	ood teacher	helps me a lot.	
a. whose	b. how	c. who	d. which
4. He hi	s exams, so he wa	s pleased.	,
a. felt	b. missed	c. passed	d. lost
5. She has a car,	she ?		
a. don't	b. isn't	c. hasn't	d. doesn't
6. We have	to save anima	ls, birds and plants	from danger.
a. parks	b. circus	c. nature reserv	es d. aguarium
7. You must	rubbish in the	e bin.	
a. puts	b. put	c. putting	d. are putting
8. I two	tickets for watchir	ng the new movie.	
a. sold	b. watched	c. booked	d. pulled
		helping the environ	ment.
a. rule	b. roll	c. road	d. role
	e to do ex	operiments.	
a. pool	b. bookshop	c. library	d laboratory
Complete the	sentences with	the correct form o	f the word(-)
in brackets:	sentences with	the correct form o	i the word(s)
	/\		
1. She	(uses) the internet	to do the project, o	didn't she ?
2. If ne	(play) well, he wil	l win.	
3. YOU	(must) be late for	school.	
4. If you	(heats) water, it I	boils.	
. 8	E M	riting	0
Muito			
Write a paragr	apn or about Ele	GHIY (80) words (on :

DAY

4

1. General Exercises collected from SB & WB

ا. تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات.

Unit 7

Exercise Based on Vocabulary Student's Book & Workbook • Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. I saw a/an about dolphins in the aquarium. (SB page 2) d. match a. funfair b. exhibition c. sports centre 2. It three hours to move from our house in Cairo to Alexandria. d. lost b. took a. made c. gave (SB page 4) (SB page 4) 3. We had lunch together in the school d. uniform a. laboratory b. library c. canteen 4. What of music do you like ? - Jazz. (SB page 6) a. colour b. type c. subject d. age 5. One day a ship because there was a really terrible storm. a. thanked b. sank c. thought d. passed (SB page 8) a. funfair b. aquarium d. planetarium (WB page 70) c. bowling alley 7. The balls are very heavy at the alley. (WB page 70) b. planetarium d. stádium c. bowling a. aquarium 8. What activities should they for Ismail's birthday? (WB page 71) a. make c. take d. give b. do 9. I like, but it is difficult to open them! (WB page 73) b. apples c. coconuts d. oranges 10. A/An is the person who travels on ships or boats for a job. b. sailor d. engineer a. vet c. nurse (WB page 76) Exercises Based on Language Student's Book & Workbook 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: a. tomorrow b. next week c. ago d. since

	2. Did you go a. do	to the park? Yes, I	c. am	(SB page 7) d. does
	3. I watched a a. next wee	filmlt v	2 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 -	(WB page 74) d. last night
	4 t	ype of music does h	ne like ? He likes pop m c. Whose	usic. (SB page 7)
	5y a. Did	ou got a new school b. Do	ol bag ? No, I haven't. c. Have	
2	Complete the	e sentences with	the correct form of th	ne word(s)
	in brackets:			
		am (did) tl	_	(SB page 5) (WB page 70)
			e my team lost 5 - 2.	(SB page 9)
		the beach		(WB page 74)
		Uni	Control of the Contro	
1	Exercise Bas	ed on Vocabu	ary Student's B	ook & Workbook
•	Choose the cor	rect answer from	a, b, c or d:	
			ock Tower in Saudi Arab	ia ? - It's 601 m
	a. deep	b. long	c. high	d. many
		_		(SB page 13)
	2. My friend lives	to school	ol than me. He goes to s	Alcoholing Control
	a. heavier		c. nearer	
				(SB page 15)
	3. The best time	to cross the Tahya M	Masr Bridge is at sunset,	for a beautiful
	of t			(SB page 16)
	a. space	• · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		d. view
	4. It's important t	to be polite when yo	ou your opin	ion. (SB page 18)
	a. make	D. take	c. give	
			Egypt's most valuable .	
	display.	ore than 160.000 of		(SB page 19)
	display. a. pleasures	b. treasures	c. measures	(SB page 19) d. pressures
	display. a. pleasures 6. The 6 th Octobe	b. treasures er Bridge	c. measures the two Nile banks.	(SB page 19) d. pressures (WB page 77)
	display. a. pleasures 6. The 6 th Octobe a. cuts	b. treasures er Bridgeb. takes	c. measures the two Nile banks. c. links	d. pressures (WB page 77) d. opens
	display. a. pleasures 6. The 6 th Octobe a. cuts	b. treasures er Bridgeb. takes	c. measures the two Nile banks.	(SB page 19) d. pressures (WB page 77)

8.1 two hours in Al-Azhar Park.		(WB page 82)
a. spent b. saved	c. gave	d. did
9. What's your opinion of a spo	ort every week?	(WB page 80)
a. making b. doing		d. giving
Francisco Based on Language	Student's Box	ok & Workbook
Exercises Based on Language	Student's bot	JK & WOLKDOOK
Choose the correct answer from a,	b, c or d :	,
1. Cairo is than Aswan .		(SB page 15)
a. crowded	 b. most crowded 	
c. more crowded	d. the most crowde	ed
2. Mountain climbing is spo	rt of all.	(SB page 17)
a. dangerous	b. more dangerous	
c. most dangerous	d. the most danger	ous
3. A lion is than a horse.		(WB page 82)
a. stronger	b. strongest	-
c. strong	d. the strongest	9
4. The Nile is river in the wor		(SB page 21)
a. long b. the longest		d. longest
2 Complete the sentences with the c		word(s)
in brackets:	offect form of the	Word(3)
	ou can think of ?	(SB page 18)
1. What is the (better) book y		
2. Adel is tall, but Rami is(tall		(WB page 78)
3. Ice skating is (safest) than s		(SB page 17)
4. The (bigger) place we wen	t to was the Karnak	
-		(SB page 20)
Unit	9	
Exercise Based on Vocabulary	Student's Bo	ok & Workbook
 Choose the correct answer from a, b 		*
1. On his way down, Tamerov		(SB page 26)
a. took b. fell	c. made	d. gave
2. It's to respect older people.		(WB page 115)
a. difficult b. important	c. ugly	d. unimportant
3. Imad diving last year.	-5.7	
J. IIIIau uiviily last year.		(SB page 23)
a. made b. went	c. gave	(SB page 23) d. took

4	a narrow boat.	sport or a hobby whe	ere one or two peop	le travel in (WB page 120)
		b. Kayaking	c. Trekking	d Swimming
5		igh, but you finish or		
		b. driving		
E	xercises Base	d on Language	Student's Bo	
		rect answer from a		
		to trekkin		(SB page 23)
	a. going	b. goes		d. go
	2. The birds sleep	in caves to protect.	from eagl	
	a. myself	b. ourselves	c. themselves	d. yourselves
		when we we		(SB page 27)
		b. themselves	c. ourselves	d. myself
•	4. I'd prefer			(WB page 88)
	a. playing	3 3	c. plays	d. to play
	5. I'd rather			
	a. playing	+	c. plays	d. to play
2		entences with the	correct form of the	e word(s)
	in brackets:			
	1(Who:	se) about going to th	e park ?	(SB page 29)
	2. What	(is) you going to wea	r tomorrow?	(WB page 84)
	3. Mona drew	(himself) a pic	ture.	(SB page 31)
	4. We're really enjoy	oying (herse	elf) on our holiday.	(WB page 25)
	*	Unit	10	
E	xercise Based	on Vocabulary	Student's Bo	ok & Workbook
o CI	hoose the correc	t answer from a, b	, c or d :	
1.	The is n	nade of glass and pla	stic.	(SB page 35)
	a. curtain	b. cup	c. television	d. sofa
	The are			(SB page 35)
	a. televisions	b. tables	c. cushions	d. lamps
	design			(SB page 38)
	a. Teachers	b. Doctors	c. Carpenters	d. Architects

	iture house	like?	(SB page 42) d. make
a. put	b. take	C. IOOK	(WB page 93)
5. The is	b. dress	c jumper	d. knife
a. shoe			(WB page 94)
	ed to cook food or		d. TVs
a. Fridges			
	I to the ground after		(WB page 96)
a. achievement	b. earthquake	c. space	d. description
Exercises Base	ed on Languag	e Student's B	ook & Workbook
1 Choose the co	rrect answer from	a, b, c or d :	
1. What	the things in the	photos made of?	(SB page 34)
a. am	b. is	c. are	d. was
2. I think we will	under th	ne sea.	
a. lived	b. live		d. lives
3. Will she	a garden on th	ne roof?	(WB page 95)
a. has			d. have
		biles in the future?	(SB page 38)
a. is			d. were
		beach for your holida	(SB page 39)
	b. won't be		d. will have
2 Complete the	sentences with th	e correct form of th	e word(s)
in brackets:			
1. The wall	(are) made of st	tone.	(SB page 35)
Carried and Carrie		n) like in the future?	(WB page 98)
	vill (took) o		(SB page 39)
	de (up) wo		(WB page 93)
4. My Dea 13 max	ac (ap) ***		
	Unit	11	
Exercise Base	d on Vocabula	Student's B	ook & Workbook
	ect answer from a		in the ecoan
		angerous sea animals	d. lizard
a. dolphin	b. turtle	c. shark	
			(SB page 45)

	2. The	c. jellyfish into its shell. c. takes tect it. c. fly o around the sun.	(SB page 45) d. whale (SB page 45) d. makes (WB page 100) d. turtle (WB page 101) d. plans
\	Exercises Based on Language	Student's Bo	ook & Workbook
F	Choose the correct answer from a	, b, c or d :	
	1. We water if it rains. a. get b. got 2. When it is very cold, water	c. getting into ice. c. turned c. saves h others. b. shouldn't d. don't have to c. do	(SB page 45) d. gets (WB page 100) d. turn (SB page 46) d. saving (WB page 102) (SB page 50) d. doing
4	in brackets :	correct form or the	e word(s)
	1. When I'm hungry, I (had) so 2. Leila feels ill if she (travel) o 3. Why must we (cleaned) the 4. You (mustn't) listen to other	on a boat. e beaches ?	(SB page 45) (WB page 106) (SB page 52) (WB page 102)
	Unit	12	
5	Exercise Based on Vocabulary	Student's Bo	ok & Workbook
0	Choose the correct answer from a, b	, c or d :	
	An engineer is a person who a. plays b. acts		d. cooks

	It's not nice to go	out in a boat fo	or a when there	es a storm.
	a. diver	b. driver	c. ride	d. dive
				(SB page 56)
	3. You should	hard to pa	ss your exams.	(SB page 59)
		b. make		d. give
- 12	4. It's important to	your	time well.	(SB page 61)
	a. play	b. plain	c. plan	d. plant
	5. The's	job is to look aft	er people's teeth.	(WB page 107)
	a. vet	b. scientist	c. engineer	d. dentist
	6. Mariam got the	of her	test. She did very well!	(WB page 108)
			c. result	d. visit
	Exercises Base	ed on Langu	age Student's Bo	ook & Workbook
4	11			•
1	Choose the co	rrect answer fr	om a, b, c or d:	
	1. A businessma	n is a man	works in an office ar	nd goes to
	meetings.			(SB page 55)
	a. whose		c. which	d. when
	2. Sara wants to	be a marine bio	logist, she ?	(WB page 108)
	a. isn't	b. doesn't	c. does	d. didn't
	3. If I don't work	hard, I	pass my exams.	(SB page 59)
	a. won't	b. will	c. would	d. could
	4. Where will yo	u live if you	a good job?	
	a. get	b. got	c. gets	d. getting
	5. You like your	job, yo	ou?	(SB page 57)
	a. doesn't	b. do	c. don't	d. didn't
2	Complete the	sentences with	the correct form of th	e word(s)
	in brackets:			
	1. A nurse is a pe	erson (v	when) looks after sick peo	ple. (SB page 55)
-			esn't) live in a big city, did l	
		lay, (isn'		(SB page 57)
			o if you take a holiday?	(WB page 113)

2. End of Term Practice

إختبار نهاية الفصل الدراسي من كتاب التدريبات.

40				
1 Liste	n and cho	ose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c or o	d:
	لكتاب].	س الاستماع في نهاية ا	غتر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص	استمع إلى معلمك وا-
1.Wh	at does the	woman want to k	ouy?	
a. <i>F</i>	A newspape	er	b. A new bag	
C. A	new phor	ne	d. Some photogr	aphs
2.The	thing she d	ecides to buy is		
a. l	arge and ex	kpensive	b. small and expe	ensive
C. S	mall and cl	neap	d. large and chea	р
3. Wha	t does the	assistant ask the w	oman about ?	
a. F	ler name	b. Her job	c. Her hobbies	d. The price
4. The	woman is a			
a. p	hotograph	ner .	b. painter	
c. jo	ournalist		d. doctor	
2 Com	plete the f	ollowing dialogu	ie:	
Tarek	: You're go	oing to go to univ	ersity in September, ar	en't you ?
Ali	: Yes, but English.	(1)	l go to university, I war	nt to improve my
Tarek	: How are	you going to do t	hat ?	
Ali			g to travel to England to a language school.	in the summer
Tarek	-		SA to learn English? Ir In English is easier.	n my
Ali	: I'm not (4 to Londo		t's expensive to go the	ere. I'd rather go
Tarek	: You went	t there before, did	n't you ? (5)	was it there?
Ali	: It was gre	eat. It was really in	nteresting.	

Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are many beautiful mosques, but perhaps the most unusual is the Great Mosque in Mali, Africa. It is not made of bricks like most mosques. It is made of something called mud. This is the brown soil you often find at the bottom of a river. It is very soft in water. If you dry it, it becomes very hard. The building is usually very strong, but there is a problem. People must put new mud on the building every year. If they don't, it will collapse when it rains! There are always enough people to do this because the people who help get respect for their work.

	a. Choose the	correct answer fr	om a,b,c or d:			
	1. When it is dry, mud becomes					
	a. soft		b. hard and st	rong		
	c. difficult	to use	d. very old			
	2. What do y	•				
	a. fall dow	n ·	b. get bigger			
	c. disappe	ar	d. turn to wat	er		
	3. The under	lined word "It" r	efers to			
	a. mud		b. Africa			
٠	c. Mali		d. The Great N	Nosque in Mali		
b. Answer the following questions:						
	4. What is the	main idea of the	e passage ?			
5. Do you think we should keep ancient buildings? Why? Why n						
	6. What is un	usual about the (Great Mosque in Mal	17		
4	Choose the co	rrect answer fro	ma,b,cord:			
	 Most window 	s are made of				
	a. wool	b. glass	c. cotton	d. paper		
	2. You can usual	ly pa	per, so don't throw it	away.		
	a. recycle	b. cycle	c. heat	d. hit		

	3. We are going t	o go acre	oss Sinai.	
	a. trekking	b. tricking	c. fishing	d. swimming
	4. We decided to	play basketball at the		. •
	a. match	b. wheel		d. centre
	5. The teacher as	ked the students to v	vork in pairs and	a quiz.
	a. throw	b. do	c. make	d. let
	6. The story is int	eresting,		
	a. does	b. doesn't	c. isn't	d. is
		to the moon		
		b. are going to go		d. going
		than the r		
		b. more noise		d. noisiest
		ly enjoy		
		b. herself		d. himself
		the park ten minutes		
	a. since	b. then	c. ago	d. next
5	Complete the se	entences with the co	orrect form of the	word(s)
	in brackets:			
	1. If I feel tired, I	usually(goe	es) to bed.	*
	My uncle is a sailor; he (work) on a big ship. A doctor is someone (which) looks after sick people.			neonle
		: (has) a she		ocopic.
	4. Willer arminals	(Has) a site	ii oi a taii :	
6	Write a paragra	ph of Eighty (80) wo	ords on .	
		"How to keep a be	each clean"	
	 Start with a top 	ic sentence.		
	· Write details on	how to keep a beac	h clean.	
	· Write a short co			
	7	***************************************		
	-	***************************************		***************************************

5,6&7

20 Governorates Exams

٢٠ اختباراً من المحافظات المختلفة طبقاً لأحدث تعديلات مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣ - ٢٠٢٤

1 Cairo Governorate

Mataria Directorate

A. Listening

_	
1	Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب]. 1. Hussein is a d. thief a. sailor b. baker c. fisherman 2. Hussein goes to the sea on a d. steamer a. boat b. ship c. yacht 3. He lives by the a. river b. pond c. ocean d. sea 4. His son helps him. d. often b: sometimes a. always c. never

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Ola meets a tourist from America in Cairo.

Ola : Welcome to Egypt. Where do you come from?

Tourist: (1)?

Ola : (2)?

Tourist: Yes, I like Egypt.

Ola : (3)?

Tourist: I will stay here for two weeks.

Ola : What places will you visit in Egypt?

Tourist: (4)

Ola : I hope you enjoy your time in Egypt.

Tourist: (5)

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are different useful jobs in our society. Teachers help students to learn different subjects. Now, they use technology to make subjects **easy** and interesting. They do modern training to be excellent teachers. We must respect **them**. Doctors are important. They work day and night to help people who are ill. Doctors help sick people get better by giving them the right medicine. They work in hospitals and clinics. Doctors

should be kind and helpful to win people's love. Engineers also help us a lot. They help to build houses, schools, hotels, hospitals and factories. Really, engineers help to build modern Egypt.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

	1 makes school subjects easy and interesting.					
	 Technolog 	gy b. Medicine	c. Building	d. Egypt		
	2. The underlined word "easy" means					
٠			c. simple			
3. The underlined word "them" refers to						
	a. engineers	b. teachers	c. doctors	d. carpenters		
	b. Answer the following questions:					
		passage about ?				
	. What is the passage about .					
	5. Who help to build modern Egypt ?					
	6. Why do you think doctors' work is important?					
	D.	Vocabular	y & Structure	В		
1	Choose the corre	ect answer from	a, b, c or d :	18		
	 She went bowli 					
			c. yesterday			
			oon in the future.			
			c. lived			
			n roads. It is dange			
	a. must	b. mustn't	c. should	d. has to		
	4. I went with my family to the where we go on the big wheel.					
	a. funfair	b. aquarium	c. stadium	d. cinema		
	5. How wide is the across the river?					
	a. pyramid	b. sunset	c. bridge	d. fridge		
			because there is no			
	 a. windsurfing 	b. trekking	c. zip lining	d. diving		
	7. Most houses us			ke bread and cakes.		
	a. cooker	b. roof	c. tap	d. oven		
			into the rive	er.		
	a. desert	b. water	c. rubbish	d. tents		
	9. The teacher was	s angry because	the students were	very		
	a. nice	b. noisy	c. sunny	d. funny		

	to the railway stat b. boat	ion to take the c. ship	d. train			
Complete the se	entences with the c	orrect form of the	word(s) in brackets:			
1. The rabbit is	(fast) than	the turtle.				
2. You both mus	st behave	(themselves).				
3. What about	(go) for a v	valk by the Nile?				
4. My bag is ma	de (off) g	ood leather.	i.			
	E. Writing					
6 Write a paragra	ph of about EIGH	TY (80) words on	:			
*	"A fantas	tic day"	*			
***********************	***************************************					

2 Giza Gove	rnorate	South Giza I	Directorate			
			. 2			
	A. List	ening				
1 Listen and choo	ose the correct an	swer from a, b, c	or d:			
	لاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].	نابة الصحيحة (نصوص اا	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإج			
1. It was Ali's						
a. wedding	b. barbecue	c. birthday	d. holiday			
2. The weekend	was		# E			
a. fantastic	b. boring	c. tiring	d. terrible			
3. They visited a/	an afte	er they went to th	e funfair.			
a. cinema	b. theatre	c. aquarium	d. museum			
4. They came bac	ck home in the	······································				
a. morning	b. evening	c. afternoon	d. night			
	B. Language	Functions				
2 Complete the fo	ollowing dialogue					
	e talking about Tal		4.8			
	nis picture ?	,				
Rami : (1)		*				
0, 0	?		÷			
	Tahya Masr Bridge	0				

	Ali : (3)	?		
	Rami : It is in Cair			
	Ali : Is it a long	Bridge ?		
	Rami : (4)			
	Ali : Can peopl			
	Rami : (5)			
	C.	Reading Cor	nprehension	
3		ing, then answer t		
				vill use solar energy.
		e robots at home. Ho		
		house. They will cle		
		dren and drive parer		
		erson at home will		
	go to school any	more. They will have	ve lessons on their	computers every
	day. I think peopl	e will use electric b	ouses and trains w	ith robot drivers.
	a. Choose the co	rrect answer from	a,b,cord:	
	1. The underlin	ned word <u>"their"</u> re	efers to	
. 18.5	a. parents	b. children	c. things	d. robots
	2	will drive buses an	d trains in the futu	
	a. Drivers	b. Computers		d. Children
		, students will lear		
	a. home	b. school	c. playground	d. streets
		llowing questions		
	4. What is the n	nain idea of the pas	ssage ?	
	E What will rob	oots do in the futur	~ ²	
		ke to live in the fut		0
	D.	Vocabulary	& Structure	
4	Choose the corre	ect answer from a	b, c or d:	
		has a lot o		
		b. library		d. uniform
	2. A lion is	than a horse.		
	a. strongest	b. the strongest	c. strong	d. stronger
	3. We enjoyed	when we	went sailing.	
	a. himself	b. themselves	c. ourselves	d. myself

	1 I think we will	under 1	he sea				
	a. live	b. lives	c. lived	d. living			
	The state of the s	has got eight leg					
		b. octopus	2012 CONT. THE RESERVE BY SERVED AND ADDRESS OF THE RESERVED ADDRESS OF TH	d. whale			
		s of the statues in the					
	a. stadium	b. aquarium	c. funfair	d. museum			
	7is	a water sport.					
	a. Trekking	b. Rock climbing	c. Diving	d. Football			
	8. We can't sail be	ecause there is no	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••				
	a. wind		c. snow	d. cloud			
		are made of		2			
		b. glass		d. paper			
		of the kings is on	7	The second secon			
	a. Bridge	b. Nile	c. River	d. Valley			
5	Complete the ser	ntences with the cor	rect form of the wo	rd(s) in brackets:			
	1. We must	(keeps) our bed	Irooms tidy:				
	2(You	will) help me?					
	3. She is going	(cut) her hai	ir.				
	4. Yesterday, I	(play) footba	II.				
		E. Writ	ina				
C	Weite - neverse						
O	write a paragra	ph of about EIGHT		-			
		"A place you	visited"				

			••••••	•••••••			
		r					
3	Alexandria	Governorate	East Direct	ctorate			
				ر ي			
		A. Listening					
Company of the last							
1	Listen and choo	se the correct ans	wer from a, b, c or	d:			
1		se the correct ans الاستماء في نماية الكتاباً					
1		الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب]	الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص				
1		الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب] mily travel to Siwa	الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص				
1	1. How did the fa a. bus	الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب] mily travel to Siwa b. plane	الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص 	استمع إلى معلمك واختر d. car			
1	1. How did the fa a. bus	الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب] mily travel to Siwa أ b. plane do during the long	الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص 	استمع إلى معلمك واختر d. car			

	3. When did Nora get up?			
	a. At 5 am. b. In the evening	g. c. At noon.	d. At 7 am.	
	4. Who did Nora have breakfast wit			
	a. Her friends	b. Her cousins		
	c. Her family	d. Her grandmot	ther	
	B. Language	Functions		
2	Complete the following dialogue			
	Rania and Yousra are talking about		Pridao	
	Rania : Hello, Yousra. Did you go t			
	Yousra: (1)	.o The fallya Masi D	nage:	
	Rania: Did you like it?	9		
	Yousra: (2)			
	Rania : (3)?			
	Yousra: No, it's not old.	3		
	Rania : (4)?			
	Yousra: It was opened in 2019.			
	Rania: Does it really have a glass	floor and you can s	ee the river under	
	your feet ?	noor and you can s	ce the fiver dilder	
	Yousra: (5)			
	C. Reading Co	mnrehension		
3	Read the following, then answer			
	Nadia's working day starts very	[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[t 5:30 than has	
	breakfast with her husband. She us			
	gets to school at 7 o'clock and leave			
	o'clock to prepare lunch. Her husba			
	at 4:30 and they have lunch togeth			
	notebooks while her husband water			
	stay home. They don't go out becau			
	weekends, Nadia and her husband	often see some frie	nds, go shopping	
,	or go to the cinema.	a la manda		
	Choose the correct answer from Nadia is a/an	ia, b, c or a:		
	a. engineer b. teacher	c. housewife	d. student	
	2. The underlined word "they" re			
	a, friends	b. students		
	c. Nadia and her husband	d. notebooks		
	3. When does Nadia get home af		' - At	
	a. 3 o'clock b. 5:30			

		sband go out in the e		
The second secon		and spend their weel		
). Vocabular	y & Structure		
Choose the cor	rect answer from	ma,b,cord:		
1. Solar	are used to p	produce electricity us	ing the sun.	
a. drones	b. brooms	c. panels	d. turbines	
2. We saw many	colourful fish at th	ie	14	
a. funfair	b. stadium	c. planetarium	d. aquarium	
Don't throw a	way those glass I	bottles, we can	them.	
a. recycle	b. cycle	c. plant	d. delete	
Cairo is a very	big	•		
a. country	b. city	c. village	d. tower	
5. I love	because I'm v	very good at swimmir	ng under the wate	
		c. cycling		
6. Ahmed used i	nis fishing	to catch this lar	ge fish.	
a. row	b. line	c. queue	d. square	
7. We must	people w	ho are older than us.		
		c. drive	•	
8. In my opinion	, science is the	school sub	ject.	
a. interesting		b. more interesti	ng	
c. interesting than		d. most interesti	d. most interesting	
9. We	going to move	to a new house next	Friday.	
a. be	b. is	c. are	d. being	
10. Mona didn't	buy this dress. Sh	ne made it	•	
a. yourself	b. herself	c. myself	d. itself	
Complete the se	ntences with the	correct form of the wo	ord(s) in brackets	
		nest) than Mount Kilin		
	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH	ich sweets. They are u		

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIG	HTY (80) words on ekend you had"	:
		-
4 Qalyoubia Governorate	Benha D	irectorate
A. List		,
Listen and choose the correct ar		
	جابة الصحيحة [نصوص الا	ً استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ
1. I likeb. winter	- coring	
2. I go there with	c. spring	d. fall
a. my friends b. my school	c. my parents	d my family
3. When a wave comes, I	The state of the s	d. my family
to the same of the	c. run	d. fill
4. On the beach, my brother likes t		200 - 0 1000
a. bag b. ball	c. bike	d. car
B. Language	Functions	*
Complete the following dialogue	e:	
Asmaa asks Eman about the bool	k she is reading.	
Asmaa: What are you reading?		
Eman :(1)		
Asmaa: (2) ?		
Eman : It's called "The Old Man an	nd the Sea".	
Asmaa : (3)?		
Eman : The main character is an o	ld man called Santi	ago.
Asmaa: What's his job?		
Eman : (4)		
Asmaa: Is it a good story?		
Eman : (5)		

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is a very beautiful country. Many tourists come to visit Egypt all year round. Egypt has very nice weather. In summer, tourists can go to Alexandria. They can see the lighthouse and enjoy the sea **there**. In winter, they can go to Aswan. They enjoy the warm weather there. There are many interesting things which tourists can see in Egypt. They can see the pyramids, the zoo and many museums in Cairo. Last Friday, my pen-friend Robert came from England to visit Egypt. He went to Aswan by train. He stayed at a nice hotel. He saw many temples and beautiful places.

	1. Tourists visit	rrect answer fron Egypt		
	a. in spring	b. in summer	c. all year round	d. in winter
	2. Robert is		w.:	
	a. Japanese	b. French	c. Egyptian	d. English
	3. The underlin	ned word "there" i	refers to	
	a. England	b. Cairo	c. Aswan	d. Alexandria
	b. Answer the fo	llowing question	s:	9
	4. Put a suitable	e title to the text.		
		pert see in Aswan		
	**			
	*	think tourists like		
	, D.	Vocabulary	& Structure	
4	Choose the corre	ect answer from	a, b, c or d :	
4	Section of the sectio	ect answer from a ne film because it		*
4	1. I didn't enjoy th	ne film because it		d. terrible
4	1. I didn't enjoy th a. exciting	ne film because it b. amazing	was č. funny	
4	1. I didn't enjoy th a. exciting	ne film because it b. amazing oung child, I really	was c. funny /like ch	
4	1. I didn't enjoy th a. exciting 2. When I was a yo a. am not	ne film because it b. amazing oung child, I really b. won't	waslike check c. didn't	ocolate.
4	1. I didn't enjoy th a. exciting 2. When I was a yo a. am not 3clir	ne film because it b. amazing oung child, I really b. won't most	was c. funny /like ch	ocolate.
4	1. I didn't enjoy th a. exciting 2. When I was a ye a. am not 3 clir a. Tree	ne film because it b. amazing bung child, I really b. won't hours is the most b. Mountain	waslike che c. didn't dangerous sport. c. Cave	ocolate. d. don't
4	1. I didn't enjoy th a. exciting 2. When I was a yo a. am not 3 clir a. Tree 4. I w	ne film because it b. amazing bung child, I really b. won't hours is the most b. Mountain	waslike che c. didn't dangerous sport. c. Cave I have another one.	ocolate. d. don't
4	1. I didn't enjoy th a. exciting 2. When I was a yo a. am not 3 clir a. Tree 4. I w a. dislike	ne film because it b. amazing oung child, I really b. won't mbing is the most b. Mountain ith your opinion. b. agree	waslike che c. didn't dangerous sport. c. Cave have another one. c. disagree	d. don't
4	1. I didn't enjoy th a. exciting 2. When I was a ye a. am not 3 clir a. Tree 4. I w a. dislike 5. The lion is	ne film because it b. amazing oung child, I really b. won't mbing is the most b. Mountain ith your opinion. b. agree	waslike che c. funny c. didn't dangerous sport. c. Cave have another one. c. disagree s than the dog.	d. don't

	6. People sleep i	n wher b. pools	they go camping. c. holes	d. palaces
		ved who	en we went sailing. c. themselves	d. myself
	8. In winter, peo	ple wear heavy clot	hes to	warm.
	a. have	b. take	c. keep	d. make
	9. He is a famous	s writer because he	has ide	eas.
	a. busy	b. fast	c. expensive	d. creative
	10. Some people	e like listening to m	usic on their	
	a. gloves	b. posters	c. headphones	d. leaflets
5	Complete the se	ntences with the co	rrect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:
	1. You	mustn't) listen to yo	our teacher's advice	2.
		ause) I am hungry, I		
		Ahmed going to fl		
		(are) helpful		¥
	,	E. Wri	The second secon	
	147 %			
0	Write a paragra	aph of about EIGH		
	*	"A trip to a fai	nous place	
5	Sharkia G	overnorate	East Zagazig	Directorate
		0.11-4		
		A. List		
1	Listen and cho	ose the correct an		
		لاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].	جابة الصحيحة (نصوص ال	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ
	1. Mona wanted	to buy a new		I alasta amanda
	a. bag	b. phone	c. car	d. photograph
	2. The thing Mo	na decided to buy		
	a. good		c. expensive	d. modern
		asked Mona about		d the a time a
	a. her job	b. the price	c. her name	d. the time
		an		d mkataawambar
	a. painter	 assistant 	c. doctor	d. photographer

B. Language Functions

		. Lunguage	runctions	
2 c	omplete the foll	owing dialogue :	1	
	hmed asks the to			
	hmed: Is this you		-, -	
To	ourist : (1)	l vi	sited it before.	7
Α	hmed : (2)	?		
To	ourist : I visited th	ne Egyptian Muse	eum and Giza Pyran	nids.
	hmed : (3)			
To	ourist : I will stay	for two weeks.		
	hmed: Will you v			
To	ourist : (4)	*******************************		(347)
Α	hmed : Have a nie	ce time.		
To	ourist : (5)			
	C.	Reading Con	nprehension	
3 R	ead the followin			
			ge called Deir el-M	edina The
pe	277.7.7.5		e Valley of the King	
			made of bricks an	
m	ade of wood. The	people painted t	heir houses white,	with red doors.
Th	ne house had a kit	chen. There was	usually an oven in i	t. The house had
			bedrooms. People	usually slept on
	e roof because it			
a.	Choose the corr			
		f " means		
			b. the living room	
	c. the bedroor	X-7	d. the valley	
		ouses were paint		F 1
	a. white	b. red and white		d. red
	a. oven	b. brick	ers to	d. door
h	Answer the follo		C. Kitchen	u. door
	4. Give a suitable			
* .		**************************************	-	
	5. How many hou	ises were there in		
	6. Do you think th	ne ancient people	were clever ? Why	/Why not ?

D. Vocabulary & Structure

Choose the corr	rect answer fro	ma,b,cord:	
1. A car door is m	nade of		
a. cotton	b. wood	c. metal	d. stone
2. They can't go	tod	ay because there is	no wind.
a. biking	b. diving	c. trekking	d. windsurfing
31 a	am very hungry,		
			d. And
4. Don't swim in	the sea when it	islt is \	ery dangerous.
a. sunny	b. warm	c. stormy	d. hot
			d. deep
	-	•	
			d. coconuts
			d. were
			T. A. A.
		1.5	d. less
all the state of t			
Complete the ser	ntences with the	correct form of the	word(s) in brackets:
1. Would you like	to make	(himself) a cup of	f tea ?
2. When you cros	ss a road, you	(mustn't) lool	k left and right.
3. Can your best	friend ((speaking) English w	vell ?
4. How about	(goes) to	the park ?	
	E. W	riting	
Write a paragra			
Write a paragra			•
	our em	, nominent	
	***************************************	*******************************	
			,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	1. A car door is ma. cotton 2. They can't goa. biking 3	1. A car door is made of a. cotton b. wood 2. They can't go tod a. biking b. diving 3. I am very hungry, a. Although b. Because 4. Don't swim in the sea when it a. sunny b. warm 5. To be means not ta a. calm b. noisy 6. I like b. figs 7. Will there electric a. are b. be 8. A has a hard shell a. turtle b. stingray 9. My grandfather was a a. teacher b. player 10. This is the popula a. more b. least Complete the sentences with the 1. Would you like to make 2. When you cross a road, you 3. Can your best friend 4. How about (goes) to the control of the contro	2. They can't go b. diving c. trekking 3. I am very hungry, I don't want to eat a a. Although b. Because c. So 4. Don't swim in the sea when it is l. It is a. sunny b. warm c. stormy 5. To be means not to be quiet. a. calm b. noisy c. safe 6. I like b. figs c. bananas 7. Will there electric cars in the future? a. are b. be c. is 8. A electric cars in the future? a. turtle b. stingray c. whale 9. My grandfather was a electric cars in the library 10. This is the popular book in the library

6 Menofia Governorate

Shibin Elkom Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- 1. What is good for our health?
 - a. Housework b. Work
- c. Homework
- d. Exercise
- 2. What does exercise do to our heart? It makes it
 - a. stop beating b. beat slower
- c. beat faster
- d. sleep

- 3. What is exercise good for ?
 - a. Our ears
- b. Our eyes
- c. Our brains
- d. Our fingers
- 4. How does exercise help our brains? We think
 - a. clearly
- b. happily
- c. faster
- d. slower

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Mona and Dina are talking about music.

Mona: Do you like classical music, Dina?

Dina :(1)......

Mona: (2)?

Dina: I last went to a concert last year. It was fantastic.

Mona: Have you got a ticket for the concert on Saturday?

Dina :(3)

Mona: (4)?

Dina : Yes, you can come with me. Are you happy about that?

Mona: Yes, I'm! It's fantastic. I hope you will enjoy your time.

Dina : (5)

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Today was a <u>terrible</u> day! My baby brother woke me up at 5 a.m.! I am so tired now. I went to the kitchen for breakfast, but we had no milk or bread. So mum asked me to go to the shop, but <u>it</u> was closed because it was only 6:30 a.m.! Then, I tried to do my maths homework but I lost all my work because my laptop stopped working. Although we planned to have a barbecue in the afternoon, it was very windy. We couldn't have it! I hope tomorrow is a better day!

	a. Choose the c	orrect answer fron	n a, b, c or d:	
	1. The underl	ined pronoun " <u>it</u> " r	efers to	
	a. the shop	b. breakfast	c. barbecue	d. laptop
	2. They plann	ed to have a	in the after	noon .
	a. laptop	 b. barbecue 	c. baby	d. shop
	3. The underl	ined word "terrible	" means	
	a. nice	b. good	c. easy	d. bad
	b. Answer the fo	ollowing question	s:	*
		ble title to the pass		
		k the writer was ha		•
	4		5 6 6	
		is brother wake hir		

		Moonbuleer	9 Christian	
		. Vocabulary		•
1		rect answer from a		
		is a man who work		
		n b. dentist		d. teacher
		because I'm go		
		b. diving		
		ne of eight		
		b. plans		d. planets
		has eight legs.		
		b. octopus		d. turtle
	series and the street of the street of	t about the Earth a		The state of the s
		n b. museum		d. aquarium
		can fly, but it does		1 1
	a. space		c. plane	
		fell to the ground a		
	a. wind	b. snow	-	d. earthquake
		tallest pe		/.
		b. the		d. the least
		e this car. It drives		
		b. yourself		
	10. When you	away pla	astic, it stays in the	e environment for
	years.			
	a. throw	b. throwing	c. threw	d. throws

5	Complete the se	entences with the co	orrect form of the	word(s) in brackets:
	1. Will there	(are) electric	cars in the future	?
		lve. Which year		
		is usually		
	on Sunday.		(
		't like the book,	(and) Hove	ed it
	ii iviy sister didi			
		E. Wr		
6		aph of about EIGH		
		How you spent yo	ur last weekend	"

7	Gharbia G	iovernorate	Fact Tanta	Directorate
Į.	Gliarbia	lovernorate	Last lailte	Directorate
		A. List	ening	
				0.12
	Listen and cho	ose the correct an	swer from a, b, c	or d :
			ابة الصحيحة [نصوص ا	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإج
	 Marvin is a far 	mous	2	
	 a. musician 	b. player	c. writer	d. teacher
		many beautiful	•	
	a. plays		c. songs	d. novels
	He learned to	play music when h	e was	
	a. ten	b. twelve	c. twenty	d. twenty-two
	4. He plays the	in a jazz	band.	
	a. piano	b. guitar	c. trumpet	d. drums
	*	B. Language	Functions	
2	Complete the f	ollowing dialogue		
	·	re talking about Ta		· ·
		d you go last week	100	
	Hadi : (1)		•	
		Tahya Masr Bridge	,	
	Hadi : (2)		ti.	
	Fadi : (2)			

			arron in
Fadi: (4) Hadi: It opene	ts floor made of?		
	C. Reading C	omprehensio	n
Read the follo The British A world. It opene About six millid largest collection important obje in 1802. The wr	wing, then answer Museum in London d in 1759 and now on visitors go there on of Egyptian objects is the Rosetta S iting on the stone		c museum in the million objects. useum has the One of its most at the museum tanguages. This
1. "Hierogly a. status 2. The under a. visitors c. Egypt 3. London is a. museun	lined word "there'	c. temple refers to b. Italy d. the British M in Europe. c. country	
4. What is the	main idea of this	passage?	
5. Do you thi	nk museums are w	onderful ? Why ?	
6. When did t	he Rosetta Stone a	arrive at the British	Museum ?
). Vocabulary	& Structure	
The same of the sa	rrect answer from		
a. hot 2. Who	b. sunny cook your mea	al this evening?	d. snowy
a. will go	b. would go	c. going to	d. is going to

	3. A reserve is an area of land where animals and plants are protected.					re		
	a. future		b. culture		c. nature		d. research	
	4. The birds	sleep	in caves to pi	rotect		from e	agles.	
	a. myself						d. yourselves	
	5. What will	your f	uture house.		like ?			
	a. put		b. take		c. look		d. make	
	6. Earth is or	ne of e	eight	th	nat go aroun	d the s	sun.	
	a. plants		b. planets		c. planes		d. plans	
	7. If I don't w	ork h	ard, I	p	ass my exam	٦.		
	a, will		b. would		c. could		d. won't	
			ns and plane				•	
	a. populat	ion	b. energy		c. transport		d. weather	
	9. My mothe	er	me c	of my h	nomework.			
	a. reminde	ed	b. remembe	ered	c. forgot		d. repeated	
	10. Let's		good time	e toge	ther.			
	a. spendir	ng	b. spends		c. spent		d. spend	
5	Complete th	e sent	ences with th	ne cori	ect form of t	he wo	rd(s) in bracke	ts:
	1. I'd prefer		(playing) t	ennis.				
	The second of th		(bette			ol?		
			ard to					
			nany) inform		The second second		9)	
				Writ				
6	Write an en	nail of	about EIGH	TY (8)	n) words :			
						avouri	te sport. Your	
			l your email a				Contraction of the Contraction o	
			ress is mahm				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	F				- A			$\overline{}$
	_							
					-			

	***************************************			***********				
	***************************************						•••••	*****

8 Dakahlia Governorate

East Mansoura Directorate

A. Listening

1	Listen and choose	the correct answer	from a, b, c or d:

		لإجابة الصحيحة إنصوص الاس	ستمع إلى معلمك واختر ا
1. Eman is in	•		
a. Hurghada		c. Siwa	d. Ras Shetan
2. She is with her	•		
a. teachers	b. friends	c. family	d. cousins
3. They are going	to go	in the mountains.	
a. travelling	b. trekking	c. rock climbing	d. zip lining
4. Rock climbing	is fo	r Eman.	
a. interesting	b. exciting	c. boring	d. scary

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Mazen: (5)

Mazen tells Amr why he didn't come to the party yesterday.

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

New technology means that forms of communication are changing all the time. For example, think about how phones have developed over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages.

Now phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are using their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our **facial** expressions before **they** send a message!

a. Choose the c	orrect answer fr	om a, b, c or d:	
 The underl 	ined word " <u>they</u>	refers to	
a. message	es b. phones	c. people	d. scientists
2. Phones are	able to understa	and people's	now.
a. shapes	b. forms	c. voices	d. messages
3. The underl	ined word "facia	"means for the	
a. brain	b. arm	c. hand	d. face
b. Answer the f	ollowing question	ons:	
4. What is the	best title for the	passage?	
	•	messages on pho	
		ill know what we tl	
	Manadada		
Pa		y & Structur	•
	rect answer from	ne sun, it	water
a. became		c. becoming	
Later Courses	ne opposite of "		d. becomes
		c. unknown	d. modern
		you were absent y	
	b. where		d. how
4. A/An	is the way in	to a building, such	as a door or a gate.
	b. entrance		d. artićle
5. Tourists learn Egypt.	a lot about Ancie	ent Egyptian	when they visit
	b. culture	c. future	d. picture
			ople first used a long
	b. Popular	c. Amazing	d. Terrible
	The second secon	her students. Which	
a. Have	b. Compare		
8. Can I borrow	•	ed to make a/an	
			d. text message
	rice in the		
	b. few		d. some
10. The	is the top par	t of the Earth, whe	re we stand.
		c. plant	

5	Complete the sentences with	h the cor	rect form of the	word(s) in brackets:
	1. The ten o'clock bus left ter	n minute	es (pas	t).
	2. There weren't (so	me) wo	men in the part	у.
	3. It is cold in England in wir	nter,	(be) it ?	
	4. If the weather becomes co	old, wate	er (turn	ed) into ice.
	*	E. Writ	ing	
6	Write a paragraph of abou	t EIGHT	Y (80) words or	n: *
			house"	
			•••••	••••••
9	Beheira Governora	te	El-Rahmaney	ya Directorate
				,
	A	. Liste	ning	
1	Listen and choose the corr	ect ansv	ver from a, b, c	ord:
		_		استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجا
	1. Where does your uncle liv	e?-In		
	a. Alexandria b. Tanta	.:- 2 A+	c. Cairo	d. Aswan
	Where did you have a picrAl Azhar Park b. the zoo		c. the school	d. home
	3. What game did you play?		C. the school	d. Home
	a. Tennis b. Footba		c. Games	d. Basketball
	4. What did Ali ride ? - A			
	a. horse b. donkey	/	c. bike	d. motorbike
	B. Lang	uage	Functions	
2	Complete the following dia	alogue :		
	Ahmed and Ali are talking	about m	usic.	
	Ahmed: Do you like music,	Ali?		
	Ali : (1)			
	Ahmed : (2)	?		
	Ali : I like pop music.			
	Ahmed : (3)			
	Ali : Yes, I can play musi	ical instr	uments.	

	Ahmed: What instrument do you	like to play ?	
	Ali : (4)		
	Ahmed : Who taught you how to	play the piano ?	
	Ali : (5)		
	C. Reading Co	mprehension	
3	Read the following, then answer	the questions:	
	I'm Dina. It was my birthday last with my mum and sister, and we say a lot. In the evening, I wanted to go wanted to go to his favourite restay to the restaurant. We went there for And two days ago, on Sunday, we have	aw some old statues o to the funfair, but r urant. I love my brot our months ago for h	. We learned my brother her, so we went his birthday, too!
	closed. So, we took a bus to the aq was fantastic, I saw a shark!		
	a. Choose the correct answer from	n a, b, c or d:	
	Dina's family went to the a. aquarium b. restaurant 2. Dina saw a at the	on Sunday, l	d. funfair
	a. whale b. turtle	c. snake	d. shark
	The underlined word "there" a. aquarium b. restaurant		d. funfair
	b. Answer the following question	s:	
	4. When was Dina's birthday?	*	
	5. What did Dina see at the muse		
	6. Why didn't she go to the funfa	ir?	
_	D. Vocabulary		9
4	Choose the correct answer from	a, b, c or d :	
	1. At night, we can see a lot of	STATE OF THE PROPERTY OF THE P	
	a. stairs b. suns 2. Always make a of w	c. moons	d. stars
	a. plane b. plan 3. Hagar's wearing her	c. plain	d. pain
	a. newer b. newer than		d. the newest

*	a. damage	b. protect	ces where animals	live. d. destroy
	5. Our journey is o	going to b. taking		d. took
	6 is a	natural material t	hat is made from t	trees.
	AND THE PARTY OF T	b. Wood		d. Metal
	a. will go	b. are going to g		d. going
	8. Trains are made		- briele	d mostal
			 c. bricks o do all the houses 	d. metal
			c. rulers	d. robots
		ockis b. windsurfing		d. diving
5	Complete the sen	tences with the co	rrect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:
	1. When we arrive	ed, it (is) v	ery windy.	
		now(of) I	(himself).	
		(are) this book ma		
		E. Wri		*
	· ·			
6	Write a paragrap	h of about EIGH	TY (80) words on:	
6	Write a paragrap	oh of about EIGHT A famous!	TY (80) words on : s place"	
6	Write a paragrap			
6	Write a paragrap			
6	Write a paragrap			
6	Write a paragrap			
6	Write a paragrap	"A famous		
10	Kafr El-Sheikh	"A famous Governorate A. Liste	El-Hamoul D	irectorate
10	Kafr El-Sheikh	"A famous Governorate A. Liste se the correct ans	El-Hamoul D oning wer from a, b, c o	irectorate
10	Kafr El-Sheikh Listen and choos	"A famous" Governorate A. Liste se the correct ans الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب	El-Hamoul D عامی El-Hamoul S عام wer from a, b, c oi إجابة الصحيحة [نصوص	irectorate
10	Kafr El-Sheikh Listen and choos .[a	"A famous" Governorate A. Liste se the correct ans الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب to trekking in the r	El-Hamoul D ening wer from a, b, c or إجابة الصحيحة (نصوص mountains ?	irectorate r d:
10	Kafr El-Sheikh Listen and choos .[. 1. When did you g a. Yesterday	"A famous" A. Liste Se the correct ans الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب trekking in the r b. Tomorrow	El-Hamoul D ening wer from a, b, c or إجابة الصحيحة (نصوص mountains ? د Last week	irectorate
10	Listen and choos 1. When did you g a. Yesterday 2. What was the w a. Cloudy	"A famous "A. Liste "A. Liste و the correct ans الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب trekking in the r b. Tomorrow reather like when y	El-Hamoul D ening wer from a, b, c or إجابة الصحيحة (نصوص mountains ? د Last week	irectorate r d:
10	Listen and choos 1. When did you g a. Yesterday 2. What was the w a. Cloudy 3. Did you get the	A. Liste الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب o trekking in the r	El-Hamoul D wer from a, b, c or إجابة الصحيحة [نصوص mountains ? د Last week you started ? د Sunny	irectorate r d: استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا d. Now d. Snowy
10	Listen and choos 1. When did you g a. Yesterday 2. What was the w a. Cloudy 3. Did you get the	A. Liste هو the correct ans الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب trekking in the r b. Tomorrow reather like when y b. Rainy top?	El-Hamoul D wer from a, b, c oi إجابة الصحيحة [نصوص mountains ? د Last week you started ?	irectorate r d : استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا d. Now

B. Language Functions

_	B. Lun	guuge	runctions	
2	Complete the following d	lialogue :	*	
	Dina and Mona are talking	_		*
2	Dina : There's a concert no	ext Saturo	lay.	*
	Mona : (1)		•	
	Dina : I like classical musi-	c. It's my f	avourite.	
	Mona : (2)			
	Dina : I last went to a con	cert last y	ear.	
	Mona: How did you get a			urday?
	Dina : (3)			
	Mona: Can I come with yo			
	Dina : (4)		ou happy about th	at?
	Mona : (5)		,,,	
3	C. Readi	na Con	prehension	*
3				
	Many traditional houses		-	av. many modern
	houses are also round. Why			
	shape means the building			
	an earthquake or strong wi	inds. Also,	heavy snow or rain	n will fall from the
	roof. A round house is also			
	inside a round building tha			
	Finally, a round building us			eaper to make.
	Also it has more space insid			
	a. Choose the correct answ		. [1] - [1]	
	 The underlined prono 			
	a. roof b. eartho			g d. rain
	2. It is inside			9
	a. noisy b. quiet			d. very cold
	3. A round house has me			ar and a second
	a. wind b. rain		c. an earthquake	d. space
	b. Answer the following q			
	4. Give a suitable title for	this passa	age.	
	5. Why is a round buildin	g cheape	to build ?	
	6. When is it important fo	or houses	to be strong ?	
	D. Vocab	ulary &	& Structure	
4	Choose the correct answer			19
	1. A/An has eig		-,	
	a. snake b. octop		c. coral reef	d. turtle

2. When yo	ou leave	ice in the sun, it	water.	
a. becar	me .	b. become	c. becomes	d. becoming
3. You		study for the test.		
a. has to)	b. must	c. mustn't	d. can't
4. Most wi	ndows a	are made of		
a. wool		b. glass		d. paper
			ne sports	
		b. wheel		d. match
		than the		
	4		c. more noise	d. noisiest
		means not to be		
The second secon		b. cheap		d. expensive
	7.	looks fun		
		And the second s	c. climbing	
	7.0	we saw a	of a very old an	imal. Its bones
were ve		10		Of control of
	COMPLETE IN	b. sand		d. star
		sign new buildings		1
		b. Teachers		d. Architects
-			ect form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
		(fast) than a train.		
		ustn't) follow the ti		
		t to keep (
4. Noha m	oved to	Cairo (nex	ct) week.	
		E. Writi	ng	
Write an e	email of	about EIGHTY (80) words :	*
			intastic day you ha	d Your name is
			anour2@yahoo.cor	
		ma.egy@yahoo.co		n. roar mena s
From	:			
То	:			*
Subject	:			
		•••••		

-				

				1

Damietta Governorate Damietta Directorate A. Listening Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب]. a. earth b. ground d. moon c. star trees keeps our air healthy. b. Climbing c. Selling d. Planting a. Buying 3. Throwing rubbish is for our planet. a. safe b. healthy c. dangerous d. good 4. We should help to our planet. d. draw

B. Language Functions

c. plant

Complete the following dialogue:

a. save

b. throw

Adel and Mohsen are talking about an important achievement.

: What do you think of the Tahya Masr Bridge? Adel Mohsen: (1) Adel :(2)? Mohsen: Yes, it's very long. : (3)? Mohsen: They started building it in 2016. : Do people walk across it? Adel Mohsen: (4) : Let's go and see it. Adel

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mohsen: (5)

Although Karim and Ramzy are twins, they are different in some ways. For example, Karim's favourite hobby is playing football. He plays it with his friends at school and in a club near their school. He also watches football matches on TV at home after finishing his homework. On the other side, Ramzy is very interested in music. He plays it in a band at school. At home, he likes listening to music on the radio or plays the guitar. Their parents help **them** study hard for school and also let them enjoy their hobbies.



			i a, b, c or a:		
	1. How are Ka	arim and Ramzy diff	ferent ?		
	a. In their h		b. They have dif	ferent classes.	
*	c. In their s	chools.	d. With their frie		
	2. The underl	ined pronoun "ther	n" refers to	············ •	
		b. their parents			
		·······•			
	a. some pe	ople who play a spe	ort together	5 - 3	
	b. some pe	ople who have the	same sport		
		ople who play musi			
	d. some pe	ople who cook tog	ether		
	b. Answer the fo	ollowing questions	:		
	4. Where does	Karim play footbal	1?		
	5. What do yo	u think of Karim and	d Ramzy's parents	?	
				······	
	6. What is the	main idea of this pa	issage ?		
	·				
	D	. Vocabulary	2. Structure		
	_	· voodsoldidi y	OF SELECTION		
1	Chaosa the cor	act anguar from a	h a aud.		
4		rect answer from a			
4	1. You can see pla	anets and stars at th	ne	d francoin	
4	1. You can see pla a. museum	anets and stars at th b. planetarium	ne c. aquarium	d. funfair	
4	1. You can see planta. museum 2. It's a great	anets and stars at th b. planetarium for me to v	ne c. aquarium vin this strong play	/er.	
4	1. You can see plants a. museum 2. It's a great a. ship	anets and stars at the b. planetarium for me to who challenge	ne c. aquarium vin this strong play c. check	/er.	
4	1. You can see plants a. museum 2. It's a great	anets and stars at the b. planetarium for me to who challenge to the biggest sea	ne c. aquarium vin this strong play c. check animal.	er. d. chip	
4	1. You can see plana. museum 2. It's a great	anets and stars at the b. planetarium b. planetarium for me to whom b. challenge b. whale	ne	/er.	
4	1. You can see plana. museum 2. It's a great	anets and stars at the b. planetarium b. planetarium for me to whom b. challenge is the biggest sea b. whale designed or	ne	ver. d. chip d. hill	
4	1. You can see plana. museum 2. It's a great	b. planetarium b. planetarium for me to w b. challenge is the biggest sea b. whale designed or b. writer	ne	ver. d. chip d. hill d. accountant	
4	1. You can see plana. museum 2. It's a great	anets and stars at the b. planetarium b. planetarium b. challenge is the biggest sea b. whale b. whale b. writer b. writer	ne	d. chip d. hill d. accountant	
4	1. You can see plana. museum 2. It's a great	b. planetarium b. planetarium b. challenge is the biggest sea b. whale b. writer g sea animals where b, stadium	c. aquarium vin this strong play c. check animal. c. hole ur villa last year. c. dentist n we went to the c. planetarium	d. chip d. hill d. accountant d. cafe	
4	1. You can see plana. museum 2. It's a great	b. planetarium b. planetarium b. challenge b. challenge b. whale b. whale b. writer g sea animals when b. stadium r Bridge is the wide	ne	d. chip d. hill d. accountant d. cafe lge in the world.	
4	1. You can see plana. museum 2. It's a great	b. planetarium b. planetarium b. challenge b. challenge b. whale designed or b. writer g sea animals wher b. stadium r Bridge is the wider b. suspension	c. aquarium vin this strong play c. check animal. c. hole ur villa last year. c. dentist n we went to the c. planetarium st	d. chip d. hill d. accountant d. cafe lge in the world.	
4	1. You can see plana. museum 2. It's a great	b. planetarium b. planetarium for me to w b. challenge is the biggest sea b. whale b. writer g sea animals when b. stadium r Bridge is the wides b. suspension d	c. aquarium vin this strong play c. check animal. c. hole ur villa last year. c. dentist n we went to the c. planetarium st	d. chip d. hill d. accountant d. cafe lge in the world. d. information	
	1. You can see plana. museum 2. It's a great	b. planetarium b. planetarium b. challenge b. challenge b. whale b. whale b. writer g sea animals wher b. stadium r Bridge is the wide b. suspension d	c. aquarium vin this strong play c. check animal. c. hole ur villa last year. c. dentist n we went to the c. planetarium st	d. chip d. hill d. accountant d. cafe lge in the world. d. information d. good	
	1. You can see plana. museum 2. It's a great	b. planetarium b. planetarium for me to w b. challenge is the biggest sea b. whale b. writer g sea animals when b. stadium r Bridge is the wides b. suspension d	c. aquarium vin this strong play c. check animal. c. hole ur villa last year. c. dentist n we went to the c. planetarium st	d. chip d. hill d. accountant d. cafe lge in the world. d. information d. good	

9. Do you know	w what cushions .	made	of?
a. do	b. are	c. was	d. have
10. When I	up early,	I feel fresh.	
a. get	b. gets	c. got	d. getting
5 Complete the	sentences with th	e correct form of th	ne word(s) in brackets:
1. My uncle Sa	my húrt	(themselves).	
사용하다 시간 아이들은 아이를 받는데 없다.		(go) to buy	a new bag.
	(health		
4. You must		your hands before	eating food.
	E. I	Writing	
6 Write a parag	raph of about El	GHTY (80) words	on:
	"Your la	st weekend"	

		THE NAME OF STREET	2
12 Ismailia	Governorate	Ismailia	Directorate
	A. Li	istening	*
1 Listen and ch	oose the correct	answer from a, b,	cord:
	ماع في نهاية الكتاب].	الصحيحة (نصوص الاست	ستمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة
1. What is the	widest bridge in t	he world ?	
a. 6 th of Octo		b. El-Waraq l	
	ican bridge		Masr bridge
			ore than n d. four men
		and C. four millio	n u . four men
a. At sunset	oest time to cross	b. At sunrise	* ×
c. At night		d. In the earl	
	loor made of ?		,
a. Stone	b. Ceramic	c. Glass	d. Iron
	B. Langua	ge Functions	3
	The second secon		
2 Complete the		gue:	i e
•	following dialog	gue : the Great Pyramid	in Giza.

Fareeda: (1)		(**)		
Rana : (2)		?		
Fareeda: It is in	Giza.			
Rana : (3)		?	* 5.	
Fareeda: It is 13	9 m high.			
Rana : When	did you visit it?	,	×	
Fareeda: (4)				
Rana : What o	lo you think of it	t ?		
Fareeda: (4)				
C	Pending C	comprehens	ion	
Section 10 Section 1 Section 1	The second secon	The state of the s		
Read the follow	_	· ·		
			have a small toy	
			t day in our toy sh	
			ere to help my da	
			ildren play with the hould watch the t	
		일 경영 통령이 아픈 경험을 보면 하다. 그리고 있는데 대투어를 받았다고 있다.	ny children from n	
			toys. It is always no	
			children. Little girl	
			play with the toy	
			ne, but I like going	
the shop and hel		3 d bit tilling for i	ne, but time going	9 10
a. Choose the co			Annual Land	
	-	his father in the		
	b. dislikes		d. enjoys	
	tore " means a			
•	b. toy		d, kid	
	years			
a. 12	b. 3	c, 30	d, 13	
b. Answer the fo	llowing question	ons:		
	he passage talk			
	assan help his fa			
		ord "there" refer	to ?	

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4	Choose the corre	ect answer from a	, b, c or d :	
	1. The weather	fine this	morning.	
	a. was	b. did	c. are	d. does
	2. There were the old museu		000 of Egypt's valua	ble treasures in
	a. the most	b. the more		d. more
	3. We	work hard to pass	our exams.	1
			c. won't	a. must
	4. I didn't like the	film. It was really		
	a. good		c. wonderful	d. fantastic
	5. Students must	follow their schoo	l	III N
	a. roles		c. holes	
	6. Scientists test v	vater from the oce	an in the	• •
	a. laboratory	b. library	c. playground	d. museum
	7. Our train went	through a	in the mounta	in.
		h	C tunna	d hut
	8. We should look	our h	nistorical places.	
	a. IIIC			d. at
	9. Crossing roads	is for	old people.	
	a. dangerous	b. flat	c. poisonous	d. crowded
	10. My father sen	t me a/an	which contains	a new camera.
	a. email	b. letter	c. parcel	d. post
5	Complete the ser	itences with the co	rrect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets :
	1. Nour put on a	hat to protect	(yourself).	100
	2. We didn't go to	school (although) it was Fri	day.
	3 The table	(be) made of	wood.	(#
		(visiting) the p		
**		E. Wri		
6	Write a paragra	ph of about EIGH	TY (80) words on :	1961
	Write a paragra	"A sport		

Fayoum Governorate

Fayoum Directorate

	A. LIST	tening	
Listen and choo	se the correct ar	nswer from a, b, c or d	:
	ستماع في نهاية الكتاب].	در الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الا	استمع إلى معلمك واخت
1. Where is Mona	a ? In	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
a. Dahab	b. Aswan	c. Ras Mohamed	d. Cairo
2. Mona is with			
a. her father		b. her family	
c. her friends		d. her cousin	
	joing to try?		
a. Mountain cl	imbing	 b. Rock climbing 	
c. Cycling		d. Zip lining	
	to go trekking th	is	
a. afternoon	b. evening	c. morning	d. night
	B. Language	e Functions	
2 Complete the fo	ollowing dialogu	e:	
Ali and Samy are	e talking about th	neir future jobs.	
Ali : What wo	uld you like to be	?	
Samy: (1)			
Ali : Why wou	ld you like to be a	dentist?	
Samy: (2)	•		
Ali : Wonderfu	ul. You should stud	dy hard, shouldn't you	?
Samy: Yes of cor	urse. (3)	?	
Ali : I want to	be an engineer.		
		?	
Ali : The engir	neer designs macl	nines.	
Samy: (5)			

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why? There are lots of reasons. A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle or a square.

Finally, a round building uses fewer materials and less time, so it is cheaper to build it. <u>It</u> also has more space inside. A round building is easier to heat and to keep warm. People prefer to live in a round house because it is comfortable. How fantastic!

a. Choose the	correct answer fi	rom a, b, c or d:	
1. It is	inside a ro	und house.	
a. noisy	b. quiet	c. bad	d. very cold
2. It is impor	rtant for houses to	o be strong when th	nere is
a. wind	b. rain	c. an earthqua	ke d. all of them
3. The under	rlined pronoun "I	<u>t</u> " refers to	
a. roof	b. round build	ding c. rain	d. snow
b. Answer the	following questi	ons:	
	e best title for this		
5. What's you	ur opinion about i	round houses?	
		which means "not o	

*	D. Vocabular	ry & Structur	е
4 Choose the co	rrect answer fro	m a, b, c or d :	
1. Tourists go to	Hurghada to see	e coral	
a. roofs	b. reefs	c. leaves	d. beliefs
2	oanels produce el	lectricity using the s	un.
a. Moon	b. Wind	c. Sky	d. Solar
3. To be	means not t	o be dangerous.	
a. near	b. cheap	c. deep	d. safe
4. People put	on wir	ndows to protect the	em from the sun.
a. lamps	b. scarfs	c. curtains	d. cushions
I like playing	football,	I don't like playi	ing tennis.
	b. and		d. so
	is a tall narrow b		
a. tour	b. tower	c. bridge	d. pyramid
	nich job he wants		
	b. play		d. make
My friend live	es to	the school than me.	
a. near	b. nearer	c. nearest	d. as near

		p in caves to prote		
			c. yourselves	d. itself
		ill, I go to be		1.64
	a. feel	b. feels	c. felling	d. felt
5	Complete the se	entences with the c	orrect form of the v	word(s) in brackets:
	1. I am going	(try) diving	next weekend.	
		(listening) to		
) there any food in		
	4. My bed is	(make) of wo		
		E. Wr	iting	
6	Write a paragr	aph of about EIGH	ITY (80) words on	:
		"A sport	you like"	
×				
				<u> </u>
			*	
				70 7 7
14	Beni Suef	Governorate	Beni Suef D	Directorate
		A. List	enina	
1	Listen and cho	ose the correct an		ord:
				استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإج
	1. Where did yo	u go last weekend		
	a. To Tanta	b. To Aswan	c. To Giza	d. To Siwa
	2. How did you	-		
	a. By car	b. By train	c. By bus	d. By taxi
		get up that day?		
	a. At 6 p.m		c. At 5 a.m	d. At 5 p.m
	4. How was the a. Terrible	b. Fantastic	c. Horrible	d. Bad
	a. Terrible			u. bau
		B. Language		
2		ollowing dialogue		
		g Basma about he	r life.	
	Habiba : Hello,			*
				1
	Habiba: (2)			

\$5,6_&7

	Basma: I was b	orn in Tanta.	*	
	Habiba: When	did you start scho	ool?	
			*	
	Habiba: (4)		1 1	
	Basma: Yes, I le	arnt to ride a bik	e.	
	Habiba: When	?	*	
	Basma : (5)			
		. Reading C	omprehensi	on
3	Read the follow	ving, then answe	er the questions	
			[1] [1] [1] [1] [1] [1] [1] [1] [1] [1]	Masr Bridge" opene
	in Cairo in May 2	019. It is 67.36 m	eters wide and 54	0 m long. More than
		•		ing it in 2016. They
*				sses the Nile's Warraq
				d. Many people enjo
			cross the bridge i	u can see the river
		orrect answer fro	_	s at suriset.
			people he	loed to build the
	suspension		people ne	iped to build the
	a. four thou		b. forty thous	sand
	c. four hun		d. hundred th	
		has a		
	a. metal	b. glass	c. paper	d. wool
	3. The underli	ined word "starte	ed" means	
	a. began	b. stopped	c. ended	d. finished
	b. Answer the fo	ollowing questio	ns:	
	4. What is the	main idea of the	passage?	
	- M I			
	5. What does t	he bridge cross?		
	6. When did th	ne Egyptians finis	h building the wo	orld's widest
	suspension		J	
	D	. Vocabular	y & Structu	re
1	Choose the cor	rect answer from	n a, b, c or d :	
	1. Judy felt very	after	she was ill, but sh	ne is better now.
	a. friendly	b. strong	c. weak	d. keen

	2. You	take wate				
	a. can't	b. must	c. mus	stn't d. s	shouldn't	
	3. Car windo	ows are made of .	·····••			
		b. sand			glass	
		ure, there will be				
102		anels b. rockets			robots	
35		nts to				
	a. make	b. do	c. resp	ond d. t	try	
		jacket to keep				
	The second secon	b. herself			yourself	
		is something				
	a. house	b. palace	c. tent	d. t	tint	
	8. Engineers	are people who				
	a. design	b. write	c. buy	d. s	sell	
		to buy some more		ottle is		
	a. empty	b. crowde	d c. full	d. d	old	
	10. Maher liv	ves tl	he beach.			
	a. from	b. with	c. by	d. i	n	
5		he sentences wit	th the correct f	orm of the wor	rd(s)	
	in brackets:	:	×			
	1. If we don't water plants, they (died).					
		(went) o		iday.		
		(swims)?				
	4. Did you do	o this by	. (herself) ?		7	
			. Writing			
6	Write an em	nail of about EIG	HTY (80) word	ls:		
	To your frien	nd Mazen to tell h	nim about your	day at school. Y	our name	
		your email addre				
	email addres	ss is mazen30@g	mail.com.			
	From :					
	To :					
	The second secon					

15 Minia Governorate

Minia Directorate

d. Kuwait

A. Listening

Listen and ch	oose the correct a	nswer from a, b,	cora:
	لتماع في نهاية الكتاب].	ة الصحيحة (نصوص الاس	ستمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابا
1. There are	famous place	s in the world.	
a. few	b. many	c. a few	d. a little
2. China is fam	ous for the Shangh	nai	
a. Bridge	b. Tunnel	c. Tower	d. Stadium
3 com	e from all over the	world to visit the	Great Pyramid.
a. Patients	b. Doctors	c. Pilots	d. Tourists

B. Language Functions

c China

Complete the following dialogue:

4. Al Hamra Tower is in

Dina asks Leila about her weekend in Alexandria.

Dina: Good morning.

a Cairo

Leila: (1).....

Dina: Where did you spend your weekend?

b. Giza

Leila: The weather was fantastic.

Dina: What kind of food did you eat there?

Leila: I swam in the sea.

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dolphins are very intereseting animals. They look like fish, but they aren't fish. Fish can live under water, but dolphins cannot. They can stay under water for a long time, but they have to come out of the water to breathe air. Fish lay eggs, but dolphins give birth to babies. Dolphins have big mouths, and lots of small sharp teeth. They use their teeth for catching fish to eat. Everyone likes dolphins because they are **clever** and learn to do many things fast. They can jump high in the air. Some dolphins have been learnt to pull a boat.

	a. Choose the	correct answer fro	ma,b,cord:	
	 The under 	lined word "clever	" means	
	a. lazy	b. ugly	c. intelligent	d. happy
	2. Dolphins	can hig	gh in the air.	
	a. swim	b. jump	c. throw	d. walk
	3. Dolphins l	ook like	•	
	a. fish	b. snakes	c. monkey	d. giraffes
	b. Answer the f	following question	ns:	
		main idea of the p).	
	5. What do do	olphins use their sh	narp teeth for?	
		dolphins? Why?	***************************************	
). Vocabulary	& Structure	
4		rrect answer fron		7
		n the	,,	
	a. hole	b. dust	c. air	d. soil
	2 d	on't we go kayakin		
	a. What	b. Why	c. When	d. Where
	San Market	to build a wa	1000	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	a. breaks		c. ovens	d. taps
		means not to	be quiet.	
		b. dangerous		d. noisy
		nusic is sometimes		,
	a. Rock	b. Quiet	C. Stone	d. Wall
	6 th		Ahmed's going to le	
	a. At	b. In	c. On	d. Of
	7.1	on the big wheel.		
	a. rode	b. saw	c. did	d. heard
*	8. There weren't	mobil	e phones in 1900.	
	a. some	b. an	c. a	d. any
	9. Tennis is less of	dangerous	football.	•
	a. then	b. than	C. this	d. that
	10. When you cr	oss a road, you	look left a	nd right.
	a. must	b. shouldn't		d. mustn't

5 Complete the sent	ences with the co	rrect form of the wo	ord(s) in brackets:
1. Will there	(are) electric ca	ars in the future?	
2 (Is) you	the tallest boy in	your class?	
		esday (to	morrow).
To the second se		(himself) a cup of t	
•	E. Wri	-	
2011/16-2-1-1-1-1			•
write a paragrap		ITY (80) words on	•
	"Famous place	s in Egypt	
16 Assuit Gov	vernorate	Assuit Dire	ctorate
Assuit do	- Ciliorate	/ Sait Dire	THE PARTY OF
	A. Liste	enina	
1 Listen and choo		swer from a, b, c	or d :
		إجابة الصحيحة (نصوص	
1. Where is the Va		ر با بالمحتول المحتول المحتول ا	.,- ,,
a. In Aswan	b. In Luxor	c. In Minia	d. In Assuit
2. Who likes to vis		C. III WIII II	G. III I I I I I
a. Guides	b. Thieves	c. Engineers	d. Tourists
3. When do you p			d. Todrists
a. In the mornir		b. In the afterno	on
c. At night	ig	d. In the evening	
	efer that time ?- A	s it is	
	b. the noisiest		d. the highest
a, the quickest	b, the holsiest	c, the quietest	a, the mghest
	B. Language	Functions	
2 Complete the fo	llowing dialogu	e:	
		weekend in Alex	andria.
Ahmed : Good m			
	a second		

Ahmed: (2)	?		
Hassan: I spent	it in Alexandria.		
Ahmed: How wa	as the weather?		
Hassan: (3)	·······		
Ahmed: Fantast		?	
Hassan: I ate fish	1.		
Ahmed: What el	se did you do?		×
Hassan: (5)			
C	. Reading C	omprehensi	on
		er the question	
She took her campictures. She saw a turtle. She saw a turtle. She and a shark. Her fithinks they are cushop. There were a. Choose the co	era to the aquar twenty - five dif She saw an octor avourite sea anir ute and friendly. small whales on rrect answer fro	ium. She was rea ferent types of fis pus and a stingra mals were the wh She bought a pic the picture albu	ay. She was so happy. dy to take a lot of sh. She saw a whale. y. She saw a jellyfish hales because she ture album at the gift m. What a good day!
1. Basmala love	es aı	nimals.	
a. forest		c. sea	d. wild
	ourite kind of fi	sh was the	
a. whale	b. stingray	c. octopus	d. turtle
	-	ey " refers to the	
a. turtles	b. sharks	c. whales	d. octopuses
b. Answer the fol	lowing question	ns:	
4. What is the p			
5. How many ty	pes of fish did sh	ne see at the aqua	arium ?
6. Why does Bas	smala like whale	s ?	

D. Vocabulary & Structure

		The state of the s		
4	Choose the corr	ect answer fro	om a, b, c or d :	
^	1. Mariam writes	what happens	to her every day in a	
			•	d. dairy
9	2. We had lunch t	ogether in the	school	*
			c. uniform	d. canteen
	3."a			
	a. Ovens		c. Taps	
	4. Most students	are usually	just before	exams.
			c. tiring	
	the state of the s	The second secon	ert, I always stay in a	3
	a. villa		c. flat	
	6. Computers and	d mobile phone	es are examples of	
			c. sports	
	7. I love going	in the	e river. It's usually ve	ry exciting!
			c. biking	d. lining
	8.1 b			daoina
		b. gone		d. going
	9. It was terrible			d. but
	a. although			d. but
	10. Our son	b. is		d. was
5	Complete the ser	ntences with th	e correct form of the	word(s) in brackets
	1. A: When did y	ou visit the mu	seum ? B : Two days	(last).
	2. My bed is mad			
	3. Ahmed is the			
			to clean our house.	
		- 1	etnidin a	
	T		Writing	
6	Write a paragra		IGHTY (80) words	on:
			ourite sport"	
	***************************************	2000-000-000-000-000-000-000-000-000-00	400-100 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11	

17 Qena Governorate

Nag Hammadi Directorate

A. Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

	(ستماع في نهاية الكتاب].	جابة الصحيحة إنصوص الا	ستمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ-
1. The boy is ca	illed		
a. Yunis	b. Samy	c. Ali	d. Gamal
2. He can	high.		
a. live	b. jump	c. drive	d. talk
3. He lives in	······••		
a. Cairo	b. Aswan	c. Alexandria	d. Qena
4. His favourite	sport is		
a. squash	b. volleyball	c. basketball	d. football

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Soha is asking Dina about her visit to the funfair.

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name's Nader. I like reading very much. I read an interesting story called "Gulliver's Travels". It is about a clever man. His name was Lemuel Gulliver. He was born on a large farm in England. He loved the sea and always wanted to work on a ship. His dream became true and he worked with some sailors as a doctor on a big ship. He had many adventures. He saw many places and met a lot of people. Some of those people were friendly and helped him. They gave him food and drink, but some of them were **terrible** and unkind to him.

	e correct answer fro		
a. swim	ng	b. working on a s d. fishing	
		ole" means	
a. very	good b. very bad	c. very beautiful	d. very kind
3. A bad d	ream is something.		
a. you e	eat b. you drink	c. you want	d. you don't love
b. Answer th	ne following question	ons:	
4. What kir	nd of story is "Gullive	er's Travels"?	,

	vas Lemuel Gulliver		
		ulliver loved the sea?	
***************************************	D. Voogbuler	n. 9. Structure	
		ry & Structure	4
A STANSBURG COUNTY AND THE WAS TO SERVE THE STANSBURG OF	correct answer fro		
1. I like coco	nuts, but it is difficul	t to them	
a. open	b. ate	c. do	d. cycle
2. We must	our envi	ronment.	
a. fail	b. lose	c. protect	d. damage
3. Is she goir	ng to roo	ck climbing this afterr	ioon?
a. do	b. play	c. try	d. build
4. Some hou	ses fell to the groun	d after the	•
a. earthqu	ake b. space	c. roof	d. environment
5. Judy felt v	ery afte	r she was ill, but she i	s better now.
a. strong	b. happy	c. weak	d. big
6. Robinson	Crusoe arrived	the island on	14 th December.
a. in	b. to	c. on	d. with
7. A	is a person who	shows a place to tou	rists.
		c. teacher	
		n people you don't ag	
	b. should		
		he 6 th October Bridge	
	h more long	c. the longest	d longer

TEL-MOASSER	Exams	

	10. A pilot is a pers	son f b. where	lies a plane. c. when	d. which
5	1. How (i	s) your last birtho this car. It drives (is) electric ca	rs in the future ?	ord(s) in brackets :
		E. Wr	iting	
6			HTY (80) words on and in the past"	· ·
•		-		
18	Sohag Gov		Sohag Dire	ectorate
1	Listen and choo	A. List		ard.
1	1	se the correct ar	nswer from a, b, c	
1	.[‹	se the correct ar لاستماع في نهاية الكتاب	nswer from a, b, c o إجابة الصحيحة (نصوص ا	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا
1	1. What is the mos	se the correct ar لاستماع في نهاية الكتاب t dangerous sea b. The shark	nswer from a, b, c o إجابة الصحيحة [نصوص ا animal in the ocear c. The stingray	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا ?
1	1. What is the mos a. The octopus	se the correct ar لاستماع في نهاية الكتاب It dangerous sea b. The shark n does shark have	nswer from a, b, c o إجابة الصحيحة [نصوص ا animal in the ocear c. The stingray	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا ? a d. The turtle
1	1. What is the mos a. The octopus 2. How many teeth a. 2 thousand	se the correct ar الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب It dangerous sea b. The shark n does shark have b. 20 thousan	nswer from a, b, c و إجابة الصحيحة [نصوص ا animal in the ocear c. The stingray	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا ? d. The turtle d. 2 hundred
1	1. What is the mos a. The octopus 2. How many teeth a. 2 thousand	se the correct ar الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب It dangerous sea b. The shark n does shark have b. 20 thousan ngray do when it	nswer from a, b, c و إجابة الصحيحة [نصوص ا animal in the ocear c. The stingray e ? d c. 20 hundred	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا ? d. The turtle d. 2 hundred ming ?
1	1. What is the most a. The octopus 2. How many teeth a. 2 thousand 3. What does a stir	se the correct ar الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب It dangerous sea b. The shark n does shark have b. 20 thousan ngray do when it	nswer from a, b, c و إجابة الصحيحة [نصوص ا animal in the ocear c. The stingray e ? d c. 20 hundred knows a shark is co	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا 1 ? d. The turtle d. 2 hundred ming ?
1	1. What is the most a. The octopus 2. How many teeth a. 2 thousand 3. What does a stir a. It goes under c. It swims fast	se the correct ar الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب It dangerous sea b. The shark n does shark have b. 20 thousan ngray do when it water	nswer from a, b, c و إجابة الصحيحة [نصوص ا animal in the ocear c. The stingray e ? d c. 20 hundred knows a shark is co b. It goes into co	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا a ? d. The turtle d. 2 hundred ming ? ral reefs f water
1	1. What is the most a. The octopus 2. How many teeth a. 2 thousand 3. What does a stir a. It goes under c. It swims fast	se the correct ar الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب It dangerous sea b. The shark n does shark have b. 20 thousan ngray do when it water	nswer from a, b, c و إجابة الصحيحة [نصوص ا animal in the ocear c. The stingray e? d c. 20 hundred knows a shark is co b. It goes into co d. It jumps out of	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا a ? d. The turtle d. 2 hundred ming ? ral reefs f water
1	1. What is the most a. The octopus 2. How many teeth a. 2 thousand 3. What does a stir a. It goes under c. It swims fast 4. How many legs a. 2 legs	se the correct ar الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب It dangerous sea b. The shark n does shark have b. 20 thousan ngray do when it water does an octopus	nswer from a, b, c و المحيحة الصوص ا إجابة الصحيحة الصوص ا animal in the ocear c. The stingray e? d c. 20 hundred knows a shark is co b. It goes into co d. It jumps out of have?	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا a ? d. The turtle d. 2 hundred ming ? ral reefs f water
1	1. What is the most a. The octopus 2. How many teeth a. 2 thousand 3. What does a stir a. It goes under c. It swims fast 4. How many legs a. 2 legs	se the correct ar الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب It dangerous sea b. The shark h does shark have b. 20 thousan ngray do when it water does an octopus b. 4 legs	nswer from a, b, c of special companies of the stingray animal in the ocean c. The stingray of	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا a ? d. The turtle d. 2 hundred ming ? ral reefs f water
1	1. What is the most a. The octopus 2. How many teeth a. 2 thousand 3. What does a stir a. It goes under c. It swims fast 4. How many legs a. 2 legs	t dangerous sea b. The shark have b. 20 thousan gray do when it water b. 4 legs Language	nswer from a, b, c of special companies of the stingray animal in the ocean c. The stingray of	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا a ? d. The turtle d. 2 hundred ming ? ral reefs f water
1	1. What is the most a. The octopus 2. How many teeth a. 2 thousand 3. What does a stir a. It goes under c. It swims fast 4. How many legs a. 2 legs Complete the following the most are completed to th	t dangerous sea b. The shark have b. 20 thousan gray do when it water b. 4 legs Language Ilowing dialogure talking about	nswer from a, b, c of special companies of the stingray animal in the ocean c. The stingray of	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الا a ? d. The turtle d. 2 hundred ming ? ral reefs f water

	Asem: (2)	?		
	Nabil: In a sport	s centre.		
	Asem: (3)	?		
	Nabil: With my	friends.		
	Asem: What did	you enjoy doing t	there?	
	Nabil: (4)			
	Asem: Is there a	swimming pool?		
	Nabil: (5)			
	C	. Reading Co	mprehension	N _i
3	Read the follow	ving, then answe	er the questions:	
	Last week, we	travelled from Ca	iro to Aswan to vis	it my uncle's family.
	My father bough	t the tickets at Ra	mses Station. My n	nother carried our
	sandwiches. My	brother and sister	carried our bags. 7	he train left Cairo
	at eight o'clock p	m. I met many pe	ople from many co	ountries who came
	to visit Luxor and	l Aswan. We enjoy	ed the view from t	the window. We saw
	the Nile and ther	e were lots of boa	ats on it. We arrived	at Luxor at nair
				there at ten o'clock
			s. It was a wonderf	ui journey.
		orrect answer from		
	Secretary Control of the Control of	ought		1.4
	a. 3	b. 4	c. 5	d. 6
		ny on		
	a. cousins	b. tourists	c. friends	d. boats
	3. We went to	Aswan to visit ou	r	
	a. relatives	b. grandfather	c. neighbour	d. friends
	b. Answer the fo	ollowing question	ns:	
	4. Where did f	ather buy the tick	ets?	
	5. When did th	ney arrive in Aswa		-;
	6. What did th	ey see on the Nile	?	
	D	. Vocabulary	& Structure	3
4		rrect answer from		
	1. The balls are v	ery heavy at the		
	a. funfair	b. aquarium	c. stadium	 d. bowling alley

	2. To be	means not t	o be with other peo	ple.
	a. alone	b. only	c. orphan	d. quiet
	3. Which pyramic	d is 1	the Great pyramid o	or the Red pyramid?
	a. tall	b. taller	c. taller than	d. tallest
	4. Yesterday, we.	trek	king in the mounta	in.
	a. had	b. made	c. went	d. did
	5. To	is to get rid of w	hat you do not nee	ed.
			c. throw away	
	6. We should use	par	nels to produce elec	tricity.
	a. solar	b. space	c. sun	d. metal
	7. Many houses f	ell to the ground	after the	
		b. wind		d. snow
	8. Hossam thinks	zip	looks fun.	
	a. lining	b. diving	c. sailing	d. swimming
	9. These pieces o	f cake	from eggs.	
	a. is made	b. is making	c. are made	d. are making
	10. My little brothe			
	1954 NEW 1971 AND 1		c. takes	-
5				word(s) in brackets:
	1. If water is 100 (C, it (bo	iling).	
			cars in the future?	
	3. Ali and I hurt			
	4. How (tall) is the Cairo	- Alexandria desert	road?
_		E. W	riting	
6	Write an email o	f about EIGHTY	(80) words:	(8)
	To your friend Ma	ayar to tell her he	ow we can save the	environment. Your
			ldress is rawanmoh	
	Your friend's ema	il address is may	aradly@gmail.com	
	From :			
	То :		•••••	
	Subject :			
	***************************************	***********		

		***********		-

Aswan Governorate Aswan Directorate A. Listening Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب]. 1. The Cairo Tower took years to build. b five d. three a. six 2. There is a nice at the top. a. hotel c. bridge d. restaurant b. square 3. It stands next to the d. lake b. mountain c. Nile 4. At night, the on the tower change. b. floors c. places d animals a. colours **B.** Language Functions Complete the following dialogue: Mohamed and Tarek are talking about music. Mohamed: What're you listening to, Tarek? : (1) Mohamed: What music do you like? Tarek : (2) Mohamed: But rock music is very loud. : Yes, you are right, but I like it. Tarek

C. Reading Comprehension

: Yes, I usually play the guitar. (4)?

Read the following, then answer the questions:

: (5)

Mohamed: I can play the violin. Let's practise together.

Mohamed : (3)?

A desert is a very dry place. It has very little rain. Some deserts are sandy. Some deserts are rocky. Other deserts have mountains. In the desert, it is very hot during the day and very cold at night. Sometimes you can find water underground. It can be very windy in the desert, too. In sandy deserts, the wind blows the sand and makes big shapes like mountains. People often travel in the desert on camels. These animals can drink a lot of water very quickly and **they** don't need to drink for a very long time because they **store** water in their bodies.

Tarek

Tarek

	a. Choose the co			
			ney" refers to	
*	a. shapes	b. camels	c. people	d. mountains
	2. The verb "st	tore" means		
	a. keep	b. spend	c. buy	d. lose
	3. The weather	er at night is		
	a. rainy	b. windy	c. hot	d. cold
	b. Answer the fo	ollowing question	ons:	
		main idea of the		
	5. What are the	e kinds of the de	eserts ?	
		to go on a trip to	the desert? Why?	
_	D		y & Structure	
4	Choose the cor	rect answer fro	om a, b, c or d :	
	1. It was great at	the	My team won $2 - 0$.	
19	The second secon		c. aquarium	d. funfair
	2. I don't like this			
~		b. fantastic		d. amazing
			e all the students we	
	a. tall	b. quiet		d. old
	4. We can't sail be			d. wind
		b. sun		a. wind
			in the mountains. c. diving	d. swimming
	a. trekking			_
	a. rock	and the second s	o in when we go can c. oven	d. tap
			to build the	
	_	b. leather		d. wool
	8. The River Nile			G. Troo.
	a. longer		c. longest	d. less long
	9. I am going to			
		b. visited		d. visit
	10. We			
			c. shouldn't	d. would

6 Write a paragraph of about "A	(from) wood(yourself) wa) than trains. k yesterday. Writing t EIGHTY (80) word school trip"	ds on :
20 Luxor Governorate	e Luxo	r Directorate
A.	Listening	
1 Listen and choose the corre	ect answer from a	, b, c or d :
		استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة ال
a. Queens b. Kings	c. Pupils	d. People
 It's one of the most popular tourists farmers 	r places for c. engineer	
3. We went early because that	-	
a. busiest b. quietest		
4. It gets busier	c. later	d. late
B. Langu	age Function	S
2 Complete the following dia		
Karim and Noor are talking	about Tahya Masr E	Bridge.
Karim: What is this picture?		
Karim : (2)		
Noor : It is called Tahya Ması		
Karim : (3)		
Noor: It is in Cairo.		8
Karim : Is it a long bridge?		

	Noor : (4)				
	Karim : Can peop	le walk across it?			
	Noor : (5)				
	c.	Reading Co	mprehension		*
3	Read the follow	ing, then answer	the questions:		
	Read the following, then answer the questions: I love using technology. My family members love using technology, too. My brother Ali is playing chess online. He is winning at the moment. I am doing my computer studies homework. After finishing my homework, I play video games. It is my favourite hobby. Usually, I play them on my laptop. My mother is looking at a website for information about 3 D printers. My sisters, Hala and Sama are taking selfies. They are sending one of their photos to my grandmother on her mobile phone. My dad is sending an e-mail to my uncle who lives in England.				
	a. Choose the co		a, b, c or d: y" refers to	- <u>.</u>	
	a. family me		b. Ali and his mo		
	c. Hala and S		d. Ali's parents		
		uncle lives in			
	a. Egypt	b. England	c. Canada	d. France	
		of the underline	d word "online" is .		
	a. offline	b. line	c. online	d. internet	
	b. Answer the fol	lowing questions	5:		
	4. Give a suitab	le title to the pass	age.		
			king at a website ?		
		think about techr			
		Vocabulary	& Structure		
4	Choose the corr		_		
			s ago. My hair was :		
			c. suggestion		
			ou started a new so		
	a. feels	b. felt	c. feel	d. feeling	
				-	89

	3. There a	re man	/	. object	s in the mus	eum.		
	a. dirty		b. valuable	!	c. cheap		d. ugly	
	4. Everest	is	mour	ntain in	the world.		3,	
	a. high		b. higher		c. highest		d. the high	est
	5	is a	kind of wat	er spor	t.			
	a. Trekk	ing			b. Mountair	biking	g	
	c. Sailin	_			d. Zip lining		9	
			eé					
	a. yours	selves	b. themselv	ves	c. ourselves		d. myself	
	7. There w	ere a lo	t of tradition	al hous	es in the	•••••		
	a. mom				c. past		d. present	
	8. In the fu	uture, p	eople will use	e a	that	flies w	ithout a pile	ot.
	a. taxi		b. robot		c. drone		d. boat	
			protect			birds.		
			b. resorts				d. reserves	
			ter, it	······································				
	a. boils		b. starts		c. pollutes		d. freezes	1
5	Complete	the sent	tences with t	he corre	ect form of th	ne wor	d(s) in brack	ets:
			(hot) than				-,-,	
			(slee					
			e (b				N.	
			e piano ? – Y			+		
~	*** **			Writin				
6	Write an e	email of	about EIGH	ITY (80) words:			
	lo your fri	end Fari	d to tell him	about	famous place	es in E	gypt. Your n	ame
	email add	na your	email addre ridfady@yah	ss is ma	aherman@ya	hoo.co	om. Your frie	end's
	Citian addi	1633 13 16	inulauy@yar	100.001	1.			
	From	:					4	
	То	:						
	Subject	:						
-	***************************************							
	***************************************	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	·····	•••••				
	***************************************	***********	**********					
	***************************************	•••••	-					



For Al-Azhar students & Inclusive students

تم تعديل الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣ / ٢٠٢٤

جزء خاص لطلاب الازهر الشريف وطلاب الدمج

7.	Sample Tests for Al-Az	har students	ا. اختبارات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف
1	Al-Azhar Al-Sharif	Ве	heira Zone
1	Listen and choose the corre	ect answer from a	, b or c :
	ع في نهاية الكتاب].	صحيحة (نصوص الاستماء	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة ال
	1. Mariam is going to arrive in		
	a. 4th January b. 28th June		
	2. She is going to visit the Kar		
	a. Pyramids b. Nile	c. Temple	
	,	•	
2	Supply the missing parts in		
	. Marwa and Jana are talking o	about Tanya Masr E	sriage.
	Marwa : Hi Jana.	2	
	Jana : Hi Marwa. (1)		asr Bridge
	Marwa: I went to enjoy the v		asi briage.
	Marwa: It took 32 months to		
	Jana : Do you know that it		t suspension bridge?
	Marwa : (3)		
2			
<u></u>	Choose the correct answer		
	1. We learned a lot about the		
		c. planetar	
	2. The museum is usually		
	a. crowded	b. more cro	
	c. most crowded	d. the mos	t crowded
	3. We are going to go		
	a. tricking b. fishing		
	4. I hope we to th	e moon in the futu	re.
	a. will go b. are goin	g to go c. going	d. went
	5. The birds sleep in caves to	orotect	from eagles.
	a. ourselves b. yourselv	res c. themselv	ves d. itself

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Last weekend, I watched a TV programme about Robinson Crusoe Island. The author of Robinson Crusoe, Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a real sailor called Alexander Selkirk spent four years alone there.

Defoe wrote about Robinson Crusoe after hearing about this man. However, Robinson's adventures were different to Mr. Selkirk's. Crusoe spent a lot longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was a lot hotter than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe Island. Life is easier now. The nearest land, Chile, is about 24 hours away by boat. Soon, they are going to build a new school and hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe didn't have!

a.	Answer	the	foll	owing	questions
----	--------	-----	------	-------	-----------

1. When did h Island ?		orogramme about Rob	
2. What does 'have"?	"Those" refer to	in "Those are things th	at Crusoe didn't
3. How long d		lkirk spend on the islar	
b. Choose the c	orrect answer fr	om a, b, c or d:	
4	. is the nearest la	and to Robinson Cruso	e Island.
a. Egypt	b. Chile	c. Brazil	d. London
5. Life on the	island now is	than before.	
a. harder	b. easier	c. more difficult	d. much harder
Reorder the wo	rds to make cor	rect sentences:	

5 Re

1. can - planet - save - How - we - our? 2. are - cotton - Cushions - of - made. 3. is - a marine - biologist - Who?

.....

weekend, – went – the club – Last – we – to.

6			vironment aroun	nd us"
_				
2	Al-Azha	ar Al-Sharif	Min	ia Zone
1	Listen and ch	oose the correct	answer:	
*		تماع في نهاية الكتاب].	ة الصحيحة (نصوص الاس	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة
	1. You can plan	t a	•	
	a. nut	b. plum	c. tomato	
	2. Trees help to	keep our	healthy.	
	a. land	b. air	c. sky	a contract of
_	Mazen and Zey Mazen: What's Zeyad: (1) Mazen: (2) Zeyad: My fav Mazen: (3)		? Iohamed Salah.	
3		orrect answer of		
		tired when it's la		d faoling
	a. feel		c. felt	d. feeling
		the m		d. above
	a. in	b. on	c. at	u. above
	a. stone	made of b. leather	c. glass	d. wool
				u. woor
	a. myself	hat to protect b. herself		d. himself
			oldest member	
	a. the	A Committee of the Comm	c. an	d. some

<u> </u>		*
Read the following, then answer Plastic is everywhere! We use it for problem is, plastic stays in the environmental try to use other materials like peasier to recycle. We mustn't throw at a. Answer the following questions: 1. Why is there a lot of plastic in the	or many differe onment for a version a version of the comment for a version of the comment of th	nt things. The ery long time. We because they are
2. Which two materials are easier	to recycle than	plastic ?
3. Do we use plastic for many thin		
b. Choose the correct answer:	* .	
4. We throw away rul	bbish.	
a. should b. must	c. mustn't	d. have to
5is hard to recycle. a. Plastic b. Paper	c. Glass	d. Wool
5 Reorder the words to make correct	t sentences :	
1. strong – houses – Round – are.		
2. like – be – an architect – to – <u>I'd</u> .		1
3. ago – year – What – was – it – year	rs – four ?	
4. Sinai – visit – am – 📗 going – to.		
6 Write a paragraph of five(5) sent	ences on :	
"Reading		
	••••••	

Write a paragraph of five(5) sente "Reading "Reading "ALA-bay ALSbayif		

Sharkia Zone

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

أستمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- 1. We should help our planet.
 - a. take
- b. make
- c. save
- d. give

	2. We keep the air	healthy by plantin		4
	a. trees		c. earth	d. sun
2	Supply the miss	ing parts in the fo	ollowing dialogue	:
		talking about the		¥
		ou spend your wee	ekend?	
	Mai : I went to t			. 1
	Dalia : (1)	(2	
	Dalia : I stayed at	home to watch a f	oothall match	~
	Mai : What aho	ut going to the star	dium together next	t weekend ?
	Dalia : (3)			
3	Choose the corr	ect answer from a	a, b, c or d :	
	1. To	means to use some	ething again.	
	a. keep	b. cycle	c. write	d. recycle
	2. You mustn't	too many	sweets.	
	a. eats	b. ate	c. eat	d. eating
,	3. Tennis is less da	ngerous	football.	
	a. this		c. then	d. than
			match, were	
	a. she	b. they		d. it
		car doesn't use		d almatoia
_	a. electronic	b. electrician	c. electricity	d. electric
4			answer the ques	2
	그래에 집중하다 얼마 (이 원론이 되었다면 그 없어요요)		y because they car	
			n the right medicir	
	They work in hos	pitals and clinics. If	ney are very helpfu	i. In order to be
	a good doctor, yo	bu have to join the	university and be g nt. If you are not kir	nd and nationt
	people will not like		it. If you are not kil	id and patient,
	•	in the second se		
		llowing questions:		
		itable title for the p		
		you do to be a goo		
		think doctors are v	ery important ?	3

	b. Choose the correct	answer from	m a, b, c or d:		
	4. If you aren't a kin	d doctor, pe	ople will	you.	
;	a. love b. h	ate	c. admire	d. respect	
	5. The opposite of t	ne underline	ed word "better" is	·······•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	
	a. normal b. se	erious	c. worse	d. well	
5	Reorder the words to	make corre	ct sentences :	*	
	1. was - the - alone - <u>(</u>	rusoe – isla	nd – on.		
	2 -btt 11				
	2. about – meeting – H	ow – weeke	na – next ?	#:	
	3. must – our – planet	- safe – We -	- keep.	***************************************	
	4. most – active – Salm	\underline{a} – the – is –	girl.		
6	Write a paragraph of	five(5) sen	tences on :		
	"Your dream job"				
		•••••			

	Al-Azhar Al-S	harif	Oaluubia	7	
4	Al-Azilai Al-S	ıllarıl	Qalyubia	Zone	
1	Listen and choose th	e correct ar	nswer:		
			لإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص اا	استمع إلى معلمك واختر ا	
	1. The Red Sea was				
	a. amazed b. su	ırprised	c. boring	d. amazing	
	2. I wanted to try	but tl	here was no time fo	r that.	
	a. climbing b. se	rving	c. windsurfing	d. trekking	
2	Supply the missing p	arts in the	following dialogue	e:	
	Mona and Dina are tal				
	Mona: Do you like clas	sical music,	Dina ?		
	Dina : (1)				
	Mona: (2)				
	Dina: I will go to a cor		reek.		
	Mona: (3)			*	
	Dina: Yes, I have the t	ickets.			

3	Choose the corre				
	1. Yesterday, we had				
	a. theatre	b. stadium	The state of the s	d. aquarium	
	2. Today, the weath			d. the coldest	
	a. as cold	b. coldest		d. the coldest	
	3. Behave			d. themselves	
	a. himself		c. yourself		
			en you plan your ho	d, related	
	a. active	b. creative	c. voluntary	d. related	
	5. If youa. touched	b. will touch	c. touches	d. touch	
		The state of the s	Complete Street Street	u. touch	
4	Read the following	ig, then answe	r the questions :	_	
9	We have a lot of	great projects a	nd achievements in	Egypt, so	
	we should be prou-	d of our country	One of the newest	and greatest	
	achievements is the	e Tahya Masr Bri	dge. It's the world's v	widest	
	suspension bridge.	More than 40.0	00 people helped to	build it. Work	
	began in May 2016	. It opened in M	ay 2019. It is 67.36 m	on the Island	
	Many people onio	and, More than	100.000 people live the bridge. It has a g	lass floor so you	
	can soo the river ur	der vour feet T	he best time to cross	the bridge is at	
	curset for a beauti	ful view of the c	ity. It's really a great	project.	
	sunset, for a beautiful view of the city. It's really a great project.				
	a. Answer the following questions:				
	1. Why should we be proud of our country?				
	2. What is the best time to cross the bridge ?				
	3. What can you	see when you w	alk on the bridge?		
	b. Choose the cor				
	4. The underline		The state of the s	1.11-1	
	 a. The bridge 	The state of the s	c. Egypt	d. Helwan	
	5. The bridge ha			d. deser	
	a. plastic	b. stone	c. brick	d. glass	
5	Reorder the word	s to make corre	ct sentences :		
	1. will – diving – ar	ound - I - go - r	eefs – coral.		
	2. Egypt – pyramid	s – are – many –	There – in.	19	

3. the – sunny	- <u>Yesterdày,</u> - weat	ner – was.	
4. like – around	d – house – in – live	– <u>We 'd</u> – to.	
6 Write a parag	•	ntences on : ces in Egypt"	*
5 Al-Azh	ar Al-Sharif	Fayou	m Zone
Listen and ch	oose the correct a	nswer from a, b,	cord:
	ستماع في نهاية الكتاب].	بة الصحيحة (نصوص الا	ستمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجا
	is going to try wind	surfing	•
a. next week		b. in the aftern	
c. tomorrow		d. this evening	9
	going to go		
a. rock climb		b. kayaking	
c. mountain	biking	d. diving	
Supply the m	issing parts in the	following dialog	gue:
Tamer asks his	friend Tarek about	his favourite hobi	by.
	your favourite hobl	oy?	
Tarek : (1)			
	did you start playing	g music ?	
Tarek: (2) Tamer: (3)		100	
	aying the trumpet.	*	9
	errect answer from		×
	the to g	get water.	
a. roof	b. brick	c. oven	d. tap
and the second s	ne stars when we go		
APPENDING TO THE PERSON OF THE	b. planetarium		d. aquarium
	rubbish in		
a. put	b. are putting	c. puts	d. putting

,				
	a. Tower	b. City		ro. d. Tunnel
	5. We can't sail be a. snow	cause there is no . b. wind	c. rain	d. fog
4	Amr was a farm town and work the restaurant and be same time, he beg built a school to to a. Answer the following	ner who worked of ere, but he coulding gan to wash the of gan to sell vegetal each people who lowing questions	n answer the quest on a farm. He wanted of read or write. He dishes and clean the bles. Amr succeeded couldn't read or write went to the town?	d to live in the worked in a floors. At the d in his work. He te.
		r do in the town ?		
	3. Why did Amr	build a school?		
		······••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	c. doctor the restaurant. c. painting	d. vet
5	Reorder the wor			
	1. is – than – safer	– <u>Ice skating</u> – sk	iing.	
	2. do – are – <u>What</u>	– going – we – to	?	
	3. a picture – Saln	na – herself – drev	V	2
	4. clean – the bea	ches – must – <u>Wh</u>	<u>y</u> – we ?	
6	Write a paragra	D. Wri ph of five(5) sen		
			l place you know"	

2. A Sample Test for Inclusive Students

٦. اختبار لطلاب الدمج

Cairo Governorate

Zaiton Directorate

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

Samy asks Ramy about an adventure story.

Samy, What are you doing?

Ramy : I am (1) a story.

a. playing b. reading c. working d. driving

Samy : Do you like reading?

Ramy : Yes, I (2)

a. does b. is c. doing d. do

Ramy: What types of stories do you like?

Samy : (3)

a. Adventure b. Comic c. Sports d. Musical

Samy : What is it (4)?

a. call b. calls c. called d. calling

Ramy: It is called "The Old Man And The Sea".

Samy: Who is the main (5)?

a. doctor b. farmer c. character d. dentist

Ramy : The fisherman, Santiago, is the main character of this story.

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ali wants to be an engineer. An engineer is a person who designs machines. His father is an engineer. He designs computers for cars. His mother is a doctor. She works in a big hospital. She looks after sick people. His sister wants to be a doctor like her mother. She likes to help people. His brother wants to be a teacher of English.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ali wants to be a/an

a. doctor b. teacher c. engineer d. farmer

2. His brother likes to teach

a. English b. Arabic c. math d. science

3. His mother works in a big

a. factory b. shop c. school d. hospital

4. An engineer is a person who machines.

a. designs b. builds c. makes d. plays

	5. Ali's father desi	gns computers for	•			
		b. doors		d. cars		
	6. Ali's sister likes	to help	•			
		b. people		d. cows		
3	Choose the corr	ect answer from	a, b, c, or d :			
	1. What	cheese made fr	om?			
	a. am	b. is	c. are	d. were		
	2. I am going to	Sinai.		-		
	a. visit	b. visits	c. visited	d. visiting		
		football?				
	a. play	b. plays	c. played	d. playing		
			morrow ? Yes, she v			
		b. Do		d. Are		
		than She				
		b. taller		d. small		
4		ect answer from		-		
		d wear school				*
	a. form	b. uniform	c. reform	d. inform		
		g a short		5		
		b. story		d. tables		
		weekend and				
*		b. bad		d. terrible		
		is footba		al maletane		
		b. meal	c. sport	d. subject		
	5. Electric cars use		- under al	d		
		b. oil		d. water		
		n the to		d tou		
	a. tap	b. tape	c. top	d. toy		
		s a difficult task or		d challong	^	
	a. station		c. suggestion	d. challeng	е	
		ctise a sport in a sp	c. centre	d. alley		
	a. aquarium					_
2			ollowing scramble	ea sentence	Sto)
	iorm a meaning	ful paragraph fro How to plai				
	1 Finally put the	pot outside in a w			1	١
		The second secon	arri piace.		()
	2. First, fill the pot	•			()
	3. After that, water		with soil		()
	4. Then, plant the	seed and cover it	WILLI SOII.		()

-Quick-Look

An hour before the Exam

تمكن من مراجعة منهجك في ساعة واحدة قبل الامتحان

أهم الأفكار المتكررة في الامتحانات السابقة والتي تعتبر من أهم مواضع الامتحانات.

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

1	Listen and choose	the correct answ	wer from a, b,	c or d :
معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).				
	A. 1. What's Moham a. A footballer	ed Salah's job ? b. An engineer	c. A teacher	d. A farmer
		hamed Salah born b. Fayoum		d. Gharbia
	 Which team die Zamalek 	d Mohamed Salah b. Ahly		otball for ?
	4. When did Salal a. 2019	b. 2017	c. 1992	d. 2010 (East Tanta – Gharbia 2022)
	B. 1. Eman is in a. Hurghada		c. Siwa	d. Ras Shetan
	2. She is with her a. teachers		c. family	d. cousins
*	3. They are going a. travelling	to go	in the mountai	ns.

A. Listening

السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

d. scary

(Fayoum - Fayoum 2023)

d. zip lining

c. boring

B. Language Functions

A. Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer asks his friend Tarek about his favourite hobby.

Tamer: What's your favourite hobby?

4. Rock climbing is for Eman.

b. exciting

Tarek : (1)

c. rock climbing

a. interesting

Tamer: When did you start playing music?

Tarek : (2)

- Tamer	: (3)?		
Tarek	I like playing the trur	mpet.	
Tamer	: Why do you like it?		-
Tarek	: (4)		
Tamer	: (5)?		
Tarek		to play the trumpet. He is a	
	musician.	(El Ba	sateen - Cairo 2022)
		about the Tahya Masr Bri ou go to The Tahya Masr Brio	
Yousra	: (1)		
Rania	: Did you like it ?		
Yousra	: (2)		
Rania	: (3)?		
Yousra	: No. It's not old.		
Rania	: (4)?		
Yousra	: It was opened in 201	9.	
Rania	: Does it really have a under your feet ?	glass floor and you can see	the river
Yousra	: (5)	(Eas	st - Alexandria 2023)
		ف ميقة الامتحان	.4.H#H .H4H

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A. There are lots of jobs in our life. There are farmers who work in fields. There are carpenters who work in workshops. There are mechanics who work in garages. Among all of these jobs, the doctor's work is the most difficult and is more important than other jobs, because it is concerned with people's lives. There are many kinds of doctors who deal with different kinds of patients. The children's doctor deals with children who are ill. The eye's doctor deals with people whose eyes are ill, etc. In many times, the doctor doesn't sleep at night if someone calls him to see a patient. We should respect all doctors.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

		ed word " patients b. healthy	-	d. strong
	3. We must	our docto	ors.	* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
	a. sink	b. respect	c. hate	d. prevent
b.	Answer the fol	lowing questions:	*	
	4. Where does a	carpenter work?		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	5. Why do you t	hink a doctor can't	sleep at night	t ?
	6. What's the ma	ain idea of the pas	sage ?	
	***************************************			(El Rahmaneya – Beheira 2022)
a.	68 houses. The doors were may with red doors in <u>it</u> . The house People usually	walls of the house ide of wood. The p . The house had a e had a living room	es were made eople painted kitchen. There n, but there we because it was	the Kings. There were of bricks and the their houses white, was usually an oven eren't any bedrooms. s very hot at night.
		of" means		
	a. the top of	a building	b. the living r	oom
	2. The doors of	houses were paint	ed	•
	a. white	b. red and white	c. wood	d. red
		ed pronoun " <u>it</u> " ref		
	a. oven	b. brick	c. kitchen	d. door
		lowing questions		
•	4. Give a suitab	e title for this pass	age.	
ļ	5. How many ho	ouses were there in		
(6. Do you think	the ancient peopl	e were clever	
				(East Zagazig - Sharkia 2023)

السؤال الرابع في ورقة الامتحان

D. Vocabulary & Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A. 1. You can see planets and sta	ars in the (Sadat – Menoufia 2022)
a. museum b. planeta	ium c. aquarium d. funfair
2. People put on window	s to protect them from the sun. (Fayoum 2023)
a. lamps b. scarfs	c. curtains d. cushions
3. A/An designs machir	nes and engines. (Benha – Qalyoubia 2022)
a. teacher b. account	ant c. engineer d. sailor
4. A is something you sle	ep in when you go camping. (Beni Suef 2023)
a. house b. palace	c. tent d. tint
5 your friends ready for t	he exam last week ? (East Tanta – Gharbia 2022)
a. Was b. Did	c. Were d. Do
6. We use to build a wa	(Minia 2023)
	c. ovens d. taps
In winter, people take hot	drinks to keep warm.
	(Al Gomrok – Alexandria 2022)
	c. ourselves d. themselves
	ns to her every day in a (Assuit 2023)
	c. diary d. dairy
9. We are going to goi	
	c. diving d. swimming
	she? (East Mansoura – Dakahlia 2022)
	c. does d. hasn't
	roads. It is dangerous. (Mataria – Cairo 2023)
	c. should d. has to
Don't throw away those gla	ss bottles, we can them.
	(East – Alexandria 2023)
	c. plant d. delete
	s than the dog. (Benha – Qalyoubia 2023)
a. the most b. the most	
	e exams ? (El-Hamoul – Kafr El-Sheikh 2022)
	c. doing d. to doing
	nd it can swim fast. (Zayed – Giza 2022)
a. whale b. jellyfish	c. octopus d. shark

	6. A is a tal	ll narrow buildin	g.	(El-Serw – Damietta 2022)
	a. tour	b. pyramid	c. bridge	d. tower
	7. They can't go	today bec	ause there is no	wind.
	a. biking	b. diving	c. trekking	d. windsurfing
			(Ed	ast Zagazig – Sharkia 2023)
	8. A jellyfish	you when you	ı touch it.	(Abnoub - Assiut 2022)
	a. stings	b. hides	c. covers	d. protects
	9. Some houses	fell to the groun	d after the	· (Ismailia 2022)
				d. description
	10. A can fly	, but it does not		pin El Kom-menoufia 2023)
	a. space	b. car	c. plane	d. drone
			ورقة الامتحان	السؤال الخامس في
5	Complete the sente	nces with the co	rrect form of the	word(s) in brackets:
	A. 1. What about	(go) for a	walk by the Nile	?
	2 (You			
	3. If the weather			
	4. The six o'clock t			
	B. 1. Mount Everest			-
	2. There 3. My bed is mad			ay.
	4. Hè is going to			`
		•		السؤال السادس في
			ورف احسان	السوال السادس في
_		E. Writ	ting	
6	A. Write a paragra			
		"Your Future	House" (East N	Mansoura – Dakahlia 2023)
1	B. Write a paragra	ph of about El	GHTY (80) wor	ds on :
		"Your last v	veekend"	(Damietta 2023)

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

Listening (Day 1)

- In ancient Egypt, there weren't any bedrooms. People slept on roofs. There weren't also any taps. So people got their water from the Nile Valley.
- Omar likes music. When Omar was 12, he learned the piano.
 When he was 14, he learned to play the trumpet. Omar likes jazz music.

Accumulative Tests

Test on Units 7 & 8

I'm Bassant. I'm 12 years old. Yesterday was my birthday. My family took me by car to the museum. We saw statues there. In the evening, we went to the funfair.

Test on Units 9 & 10

Eman is in Dahab with her family. They're going to go trekking in the mountains. Eman isn't going to try rock climbing as it's too scary.

Test on Units 11 & 12

Santiago was an old fisherman. He didn't catch a fish for 84 days. One day, he caught a big fish. He was happy but the sharks attacked the boat and ate the fish.

End of Term Practice

Woman : Hello. I'd like to buy a new

phone.

Assistant : Certainly. Which phone

would you like?

Woman : I like this one. It's small enough to go in my bag,

too. I hope it's not too expensive!

Assistant : No, it is a good price.

Excuse me, could you tell me what job you do?

Woman: Well. I'm a person who takes photographs for

a newspaper.

Assistant: Ah, you're a photographer,

aren't you?

Woman : That's right!

Listening Texts of Governorates Exams

Cairo Governorate

Mataria Directorate

Hussein is a clever fisherman. He gets up early. He goes to the sea on a boat. He lives by the sea with his family. His son always helps him. He likes his father's job.

2 Giza Governorate

South Giza Directorate

Ali's family had a fantastic weekend last week. It was Ali's birthday. They visited an aquarium after they went to the funfair. They came back home in the evening. They were very happy.

Alexandria Governorate

East Directorate

Nora and her family like to travel to Siwa in the summer holiday. They travel to Siwa by car. Nora likes to listen to music during the long journey. Nora gets up at 7 am and has breakfast with her family.

4 Qalyoubia Governorate

Benha Directorate

I like summer so much. I go to the beach with my family. I like swimming. When a wave comes, I jump up. My brother likes to play with his ball on the beach.

5 Sharkia Governorate East Zagazig Directorate

Mona went to a shop yesterday.

She wanted to buy a new phone. The thing she decided to buy wasn't cheap. The assistant asked her about her job. She told him that she works as a photographer.

6 Menofia Governorate Shibin El Kom Directorate

Exercise is very good for our health. It makes our heart beat faster. Exercise can help our brains to think well. It makes our brains think faster. You should do exercises every day.

7 Gharbia Governorate

East Tanta Directorate

Marvin is a famous musician. He writes many beautiful songs. They are very popular. He learned to play music when he was twelve. He plays the guitar in a jazz band. He is very clever.

8 Dakahlia Governorate

East Mansoura Directorate

Eman is in Hurghade with her family. She likes to visit Hurghada every year. They are going to go trekking in the mountains. Eman doesn't like rock climbing. It's scary for her.

9 Beheira Governorate

El-Rahmaneya Directorate

My uncle lives in Cairo. We have picnics in Al Azhar Park when we visit him. We like playing football. My brother Ali likes riding a horse. It's a beautiful place.

[] Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate

El-Hamoul Directorate

Last week, I went trekking in the mountains. It was very cloudy when we started. My brother and I could get the top and we saw dark clouds.

11 Damietta Governorate

Damietta Directorate

The Earth is our planet that we live on. We should keep our air healthy by planting trees. Throwing rubbish is dangerous for our planet. We should help to save our planet.

12 Ismailia Governorate

Ismailia Directorate

The Tahya Masr Bridge is the widest bridge in the world. More than four thousand people worked to build it. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset. It has a glass floor.

13

Fayoum Governorate

Fayoum Directorate

Mona is in Dahab. She is with her family. She is going to try zip lining. She is going to go trekking with her family in the morning as well.

14

Beni Suef Governorate

Beni Suef Directorate

I went to Aswan last week. I went by train with my friends. I was so excited, so I got up at 6 a.m. We enjoyed a lot. It was a fantastic weekend.

15

Minia Governorate

Minia Directorate

There many are famous places in the world. China is famous for the Shanghai Tower. Giza is famous for the Great Pyramid. Tourists come from all over the world to visit the Great Pyramid. Kuwait is famous for Al Hamra Tower.

16

Assuit Governorate

Assuit Directorate

The Valley of the Kings is a great monument in Luxor. Tourists like to visit it. I prefer going there early in the morning. It's the quietest time to visit this place.

17

Qena Governorate

Nag Hammadi Directorate

I have a pen friend from Qena. He is called Samy. He likes sports so much. He can can jump high. His favourite sport is basketball. He plays basketball three times a week.

18

Sohag Governorate

Sohag Directorate

The shark is the most dangerous sea animal in the ocean. It has about two hundred teeth. The stingray jumps out of water when it sees the shark coming. An octopus lives at the bottom of the sea. It has eight legs.

19

Aswan Governorate

Aswan Directorate

The Cairo Tower is amazing building in Cairo. It took five years to build. There is a nice restaurant at the top. The tower stands next to the Nile. You can enjoy the changing colours of the tower at night.

20

Luxor Governorate

Luxor Directorate

The Valley of the Kings is a great place in Luxor. It's one of the most popular places for tourists. We prefer going there early. It's quietest as it gets busier late.

Sample Tests for Al Azhar students

1

Beheira Zone

Mariam is going to visit Luxor. She is going to arrive in Luxor on 28th June. She is going to visit the Karnak Temple in Luxor.



Minia Zone

You can plant a nut or the seed of a fruit. Plant a tree. Trees help to keep our air healthy.

Sharkia Zone

We should help save our planet. We keep the air healthy by planting trees.

4 Qalyubia Zone

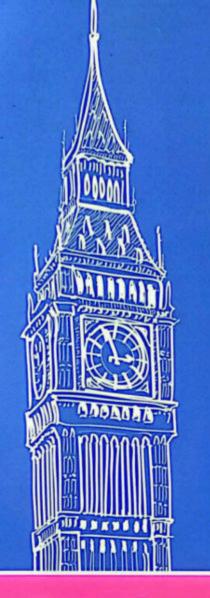
Last week, I went diving in the Red Sea. It was amazing. I wanted to try windsurfing, but there was no time for that.

5 Fayoum Zone

Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing in the morning. We're not going to go kayaking.

Quick Look "An hour before the Exam"

- A. Mohamed Salah is a great Egyptian footballer. He was born in Gharbia. He started playing football for Mokawloon team. He won the African player of the year in 2019.
- B. Eman is in Dahab. She is with her family. They are going to go trekking in the mountains. Rock climbing is exciting for Eman.





New Hello!

By a group of supervisors



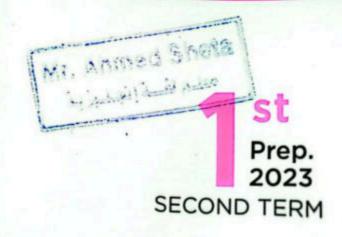
Teacher's

اهـــداء من ... سلسلة كتب المعاصر

ORGANIZER

Your Guide To Creative and Effective Teaching

اهـــداء من ... سلسلة كتب المعاصر



SECTION 2

Answers of The Main Book (1st Prep)

احابات كتاب الشرح المعاصر للصف الأول الإعدادى

Unit (7)

lessons 1&2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

· Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2. a. funfair 1. a. exhibition 4. b. nervous 3. c. Museum 6. a. closed 5. c. haircut

8. b. diary 7. c. planetarium

10. d. canteen 9. c. solution 12. b. aquarium 11. d. uniform

14. c. aged 13. d. stadium

15. c. went

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2. c. feel 1. a. moved 4. b. Did 3. c. ago 5, c, had 6. c. was 7. b. watched 8. c. visited 10. d. see

9. b. was

11. d. bought

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

(sat) 1. sit

(went) 2. go

3. did (was) 4. went (qo)

5. today (yesterday)

(do) 6. did

7. don't (wasn't)

(weren't) 8. didn't

9. took (take)

10. last (ago)

11. do (did)

12. see (saw)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2. c. salads 1. a. sports

3. c. sister 4. a. swimming

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I did.

I spent it in a sports centre.

3. Who did you go with?

4. I enjoyed swimming.

5. Is there a swimming pool?

3. Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d:

1. b. friendly 2. c. statues

3. d. funfair 4. b. stadium

5. c. make 6. b. canteen

7. d. planetarium 8. b. took

10. d. eat 9. b. swam

4. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. hurts (hurt)

(was) 2. is

(last) 3. next

(had) 4. have

(GLMORSSER

Answers of The Main Book

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answers.

lessons

3&4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

· Choose the correct answer from a.b.cord:

1. a. sailor

2. c. storm

3. b. jungle

4. d. opinion

5. c. adventure

6. a. sinks

7. b. terrible

8. c. voice

9. c. type

10. c. share

11. c. bad

12. b. island

13. c. interviewer

14. a. through

15. b. diary

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a. b. cord:

1. d. does

2. b. go

3. d. Did you

4. c. haven't

5. d. Why

6. a. often

7. a. ls

8. d. Which

9. a. Has

10. c. Whose

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. we

(she)

2. Where

(How)

3. likes

(like)

4. am

(am not)

5. haven't

(have)

6. Does

(Do)

7. Why

(How)

8. Who's

(Whose)

9. many

(much)

10. How

(What)

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. I like pop music.
- 2. No, I don't.
- 3. Do you like listening to songs?
- 4. I like to play the piano.
- 5. Who taught you to play the piano?

2. Choose the correct answer from a.b.cord:

1. a. adventure

2. a. music

3. c. rocks

4. c. nuts

5. b. write

6. b. opinion

7. d. musician

8. c. What

9. b. Who

10. c. Are

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. play

(to play)

2. Do

(Can)

3. studied

(study)

4. does

(has)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answers.

lessons

5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a. peppers

2. b. hotel

3. a. thoughts 4. c. Olive 6. d. woke 5. d. theatre 8. a. kind 7. c. writer 10. a. includes 9. d. terrible 11. b. tired 12. c. windy

14. b. working 13. c. on

15. b. have 16. d. for

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a.b.c or d:

1. a. My father 2. c. Saturday 3. d. an hour 4. c. terrible

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Yes, I do.
- 2. What type of music do you like?
- 3. Can you play musical instruments?
- 4. I play the piano.
- 5. My father.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a. Olive 2. b. hope 3. b. windy 4. d. kind 6. b. stayed 5. c. concert 8. a. although 7. b. remind 10. b. took 9. b. was

4. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. is (was) 2. get (got)

3. Tomorrow (Yesterday)

4. go (went)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

STORES DESCRIPTION OF

Students' own answer.

Test

on Unit 7

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a. watching sports

2. b. science

3. c. 5

4. d. busy

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Me, too.

2. What kind of music do you prefer?

3. Who is your favourite singer?

4. Yes, I do.

5. It's kind of you. / Thank you.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. wife 2. a. Stop

3. c. the new wife

b. Answer the following questions:

4. The story of Cinderella.

No, because the woman was so wicked and cruel.

6. By the help of a magician woman.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. sinks 2. a. take

4. b. Traditional 3. a. terrible

6. b. Museum 5. b. decisions 8. b. watched 7. d. rode 9. a. did 10. b. because

CLMORSSER)

Answers of The Main Book

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. is (was) (went) 2. qo (but) 3. and 4. don't (haven't)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

February assessment

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2. c. twelve 1. a. car 4. c. funfair 3. b. statues

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I went to Al Azhar Park.

2. Who did you go with?

3. What did you see there?

4. Yes, I did.

5. Yes. We had a nice time.

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

a. Choose the correct answer from a.b.cord:

2. b. hate 1. a. doctors

3. c. worse

b. Answer the following questions:

4. I should be good at science.

5. Because they care about people.

6. Doctor's job.

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d. planetarium 2. d. crowded 3. b. more 4. b. subject 5. a. shark 6. c. sailors 7. b. Were 8. c. richest 9. d. competition 10. d. of

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. arrived (arrive) 2. best (better) 3. less (least) 4. didn't (aren't)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Students' own answer.

Unit (8)

lessons 1&2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2. b. crowded 1. c. Road 4. a. population 3. b. country 5. d. Bridge 6. a. empty 8. a. ancient 7. d. capital 10. a. visitors 9. a. tourists 11. c. links 12. b. Depth 14. c. give 13. d. tunnel

15. b. for

Exercises on (Language)

Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. c. more crowded 2. c. longer

3. d. higher 4. c. better 5. c. noisier 6. a. than

7. b. more useful 8. d. colder than

9. b. warmer 10. c. than

11. d. nearer

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. easy (easier)

2. longest (longer)

3. tallest (taller)

4. good (better)

5. strong (stronger)

6. nicest (nicer) 7. most (more)

8. far (further/farther)

9. most (more) 10. then (than)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Yes, of course.

2. How high is the Great Pyramid?

3. How many people live in Tokyo?

4. The Nile.

5. Thank you.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. the highest

2. b. Tower

3. a. worse

4. b. taller

5. a. traffic7. b. many9. b. crowded6. d. describe8. c. tourists10. c. longer

At Allered Shera

Read and correct the underlined words:

1. empty (emptier)
2. hot (hotter)
3. tall (taller)

4. beautiful (more beautiful)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

lessons

3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a. achievements 2. b. climbing 3. c. view 4. b. suspension

5. d. polite 6. b. floor

7. c. insect 8. b. expensive 9. a. wide 10. b. sunset 11. a. Dangerous 12. b. Ugly 13. b. across 14. d. with

15. d. of

Exercises on (Language)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a. widest 2. c. the biggest

d. the most difficult

4. d. the most expensive

5. c. largest 6. b. than

7. b. tallest

8. d. the most boring

9. d. the most exciting

10. b. best

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. busiest (the busiest)
2. least (less)

3. better (best) 4. more (most)

5. tall (the tallest)
6. fast (faster)
7. shorter (shortest)

8. most (the most)

9. further (furthest) 10. young (youngest)

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. widest 2. a. May 3. c. wide 4. c. Island

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

 1. d. dangerous
 2. c. give

 3. b. agree
 4. b. biggest

 5. c. more
 6. c. floor

 7. c. to
 8. a. like

9. c. opinion 10. c. protect

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. more (most)
2. much (many)
3. more (most)
4. good (better)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

lessons

5&6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. treasures
2. d. public
3. b. guidebook
5. d. welcomed
7. b. space
9. c. reviews
11. c. entrance
13. b. reason
14. a. to

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. Kings 2. a. tourists 3. b. quietest 4. c. later

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d. Hieroglyphics 2. b. objects

3. a. competition 4. a. guidebook

5. c. motorbike 6. c. oldest

7. b. valuable

8. b. most difficult 9. a. easiest

10. b. the highest

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. most (more)
2. fast (faster)
3. better (best)
4. quieter (quietest)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

rest on Unit 8

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. 1759 2. d. 6,000,000 3. a. London 4. b. 13 million

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I went to Tahya Masr Bridge.

2. It is in Cairo.

3. Is it old?

4. When did it open?

5. It's made of glass.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

a. Choose the correct answer froma, b, c or d:

1. a. the bridge 2. d. glass

3. b. Warraq

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Tahya Masr Bridge.

5. At sunset.

Because we have a lot of great projects and achievements.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

d. Bridge
 d. ugly
 d. b. Quiet
 d. treasures
 d. d. treasures
 d. d. treasures
 d. d. treasures

9. d. the nicest 10. d. easier than

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

high (higher)
 long (the longest)
 older (oldest)
 tallest (taller)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

Unit (9)

lessons

1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. tent 2. a. windsurfing

3. c. Rock climbing

4. b. trekking5. a. sailing6. b. diving7. b. adventure

8. b. scary 9. b. plans 10. a. Bedouins 11. a. guide 12. c. wind 13. b. went

14. b. try 15. b. On

Exercises on (Language)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. are going to 2. b. going 3. c. are 4. d. go

5. b. is going to 6. c. going to

7. c. is going to rain 8. b. are going to go

9. c. is going to 10. b. am

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. sleeping (sleep)
2. go (going)
3. yesterday (tomorrow)

4. has (is)
5. trying (to try)
6. bought (buy)

7. visit (to visit)
8. don't (am not)
9. Will (Are)
10. going (am going)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a. In Dahab.
- 2. c. With her family.
- 3. b. Rock climbing.
- 4. a. This afternoon.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. I am going to the desert.
- 2. Why are you going to the desert?
- 3. Do you think trekking is tiring?
- I'll take a bag, some foods and drinks.
- 5. I am going to try diving.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a. trekking 2. b. Sailing 3. c. exciting 4. b. zip lining

5. b. Bedouin

6. c. windsurfing

7. b. journey

8. a. 'm going to travel

9. d. are not going

10. b. Are

4. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. last (next)
2. sleeping (to sleep)
3. from (of)
4. go (going)

lessons

3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. railway
2. a. weather
3. a. article
5. b. challenge
7. b. mirror
9. c. foggy
11. c. keep
12. b. sunny
13. c. came
15. c. sounds

Exercises on (Language)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. ourselves

2. d. themselves

3. d. myself
4. c. herself
5. a. yourself
6. a. himself
7. b. herself
8. c. yourselves
9. b. themselves
10. b. herself
11. a. yourself
12. a. myself

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. yourself (ourselves) 2. on (by) 3. themselves (herself) (itself) 4. myself (yourself) herself 6. itself (themselves) 7. himself (herself) 8. with (by) 9. himself (yourself) (myself) 10. themselves

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a. Yesterday

2. c. Sunny

3. a. Yes, we did.

4. c. Dark clouds.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a. myself

2. b. yourself

3. b. herself

4. b. made

5. c. snow

6. b. wet

7. b. made

8. c. hurt

9. a. challenge

10. b. article

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. itself

(himself)

2. herself

(yourself)

3. herself

(itself)

4. themselves

(ourselves)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

lessons

5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. magazines

2. b. station

3. b. album

4. a. special

5. b. mistakes

6. b. visit

7. c. respect

8. c. sounds

9. b. Dear

10. a. forms

11. a. advantages

12. b. do

13. c. made

14. c. to play

15. c. looking

on lessons 5 & 6 **General Exercises**

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. Maher

2. b. Alexandria

3. c. Tomorrow

4. a. train

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Let's play basketball.

2. Yes, I am.

3. Yes, I do.

4. Where do you practise it?

5. How often do you practise it?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d. Emails

2. a. station

3. d. introduction

4. a. made

5. a. excited

6. b. forms

7. c. do

8. b. go

9. c. How about

10. d. themselves

4. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. see

(seeing)

2. playing

(to play)

3. in

(at)

4. spending

(spend)

Test on Unit 9

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. South Africa 2. a. tomorrow

3. a. Yes, there's.

4. b. an adventure

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm going to travel.

2. To Paris.



- 3. Are you going to travel alone?
- 4. How long will you stay there?
- 5. Thank you.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.b. hope

2. c. grandad

3. d. a, b & c

b. Answer the following questions:

- Karim's visit to his friend Maher.
- Maher's new home is by the beach.
- 6. Yes, I think so as the album has many photos of the family.

4. Choose the correct answer from a,b,cord:

1. c. guide

2. b. adventure

3. c. zip

4. c. trekking

5. b. skill

6. a. equipment

- 7. d. towel
- 8. d. myself
- 9. d. 'm going to
- 10. d. is she going to

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. doing

(do)

2. go

(going)

3. me

(myself)

4. flying

(fly)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.



Unit (10)

lessons 1&2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. bricks

2. c. ovens

3. b. tap

4. a. stone

5. b. wallet

6. d. paint

7. c. seats

8. a. Leather

9. b. Cushions

10. b. glass

11. b. Wool

12. d. roof

13. c. plastic

14. d. metal

15. b. away

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. is

2. d. wasn't

3. b. weren't

4. b. was

5. a. made

6. c. weren't

7. c. are

8. c. were

9. d. it's

10. a. weren't

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. were

(was)

2. make

(made)

3. were

(weren't)

4. When

(What)

5. aren't

(weren't)

6. Is

(Are)

7. some

(any)

8. is

(are)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a. metal 2. c. windows 4. a. plastic 3. a. seats

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. Metal 2. b. wood 3. c. ancient 4. d. Age 6. b. village 5. a. oven 7. a. leather 8. c. were 10, c, of 9. c. any

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. by (of) 2. is (are) 3. was (were) 4. were (weren't)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

3 & 4 lessons

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. Solar panels 2. b. electric 3. b. Driverless 4. d. accidents 5. a. drone 6. d. warm 7. c. materials 8. a. architect 9. c. teachers 10. c. special 11. c. cool 12. a. earthquake 13. b. igloo 14. b. keep 15. d. make

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, cord:

1. b. use 2. c. bring 3. c. will 4. b. get 5. c. be 6. b. won't 7. d. will 8. c. will 9. d. have 10. a. will 11. b. will 12. d. won't

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. being (be) 2. goes (go) (take) 3. took 4. been (be) 5. having (have) 6. Last (Next) 7. call (will call) 8. Do (Will) 9. happens (happen) 10, to build (build)

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. in the future

2. c. Robots 3. b. plastic

4. c. cheap

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I am an architect

2. What does an architect do?

3. I'm designing a new house.

the property was in

4. It will be on the roof.

5. Why ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. Yurt 2. a. electricity
3. b. sun 4. d. Rockets
5. b. earthquake 6. c. drone
7. a. chargers 8. c. will have
9. c. be 10. b. go

4. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. would (will)
2. have ('ll have)
3. goes (go)
4. to have (have)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. timeline
2. d. amazing
3. c. technology
5. a. won
6. c. Compare
7. d. shapes
9. c. country
11. a. born
13. b. Round
14. b. detail
15. b. moved

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. 2018 2. b. the Red Sea 3. a. Cairo 4. c. ride

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

a. imagination
 b. decided
 b. climb
 a. plan
 a. fun
 b. creative

7. a. in

8. c. will you have

9. c. will be

10. b. look

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. is (was) 2. had (have) 3. on (in) 4. on (down)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

Test on Unit 10

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a. Cairo

2. a. El Mokawloon

3. c. 1992

4. a. Basel

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. They are made of leather.

2. When did you buy them?

3. My mother.

4. Why ?

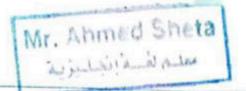
5. Sure.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. at the top 2. a. round

3. b. shapes



b. Answer the following questions:

- 4. Round houses around the world.
- Yes, I think so as we use few materials to build them.
- Heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. panels 2. a. amazing
3. c. modern 4. b. painted
5. c. work 6. d. Valley
7. a. oven 8. c. will
9. a. any 10. d. travel

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. used (use) 2. some (any) 3. is (are) 4. been (be)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

March

assessment

A. Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

b. Dahab
 c. family
 b. trekking
 d. d. scary

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Yes, I do.

2. Where was he born?

3. What team does he play for ?

- 4. Yes, he is.
- 5. I think he is kind.

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

a. Choose the correct answer froma, b, c or d:

1. c. Marwan 2. d. angry

3. c. clever

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Because he woke up late.

5. What happened to Marwan last Sunday?

Because she knew that Marwan is a good student.

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d. trekking 2. b. sank
3. d. Are 4. c. any
5. b. Drones 6. b. yourself
7. c. make 8. b. mirror
9. c. ovens 10. a. respect

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. been (be)
2. himself (themselves)
3. spent (spend)
4. make (made)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on:

Students' own answer.

Answers of The Main Book

Unit (11)

lessons 1&2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a.b.cord:

1. b. environment 2. b. whale 4. d. jellyfish 3. c. poisonous

5. c. turtle 6. d. tails

7. c. shark 8. c. rubbish

10. c. sting 9. d. teeth

11. a. planets

12. c. throw away

14. b. from 13. b. octopus

15. d. in

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d:

2. c. touch 1. b. go 4. c. watches 3. c. have 6. b. becomes 5. b. When 8. c. if 7. c. see

10. b. happens 9. a. melts

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. died (die) (When) 2. Where (turns) 3. turned (falls) 4. falling (boils) 5. boil (go) 6. going (eat) 7. eats

(when) 8. where

9. be (is)

(make) 10. made

Exercises on (Language)

a monsser

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2. a. do 1. b. mustn't 3. d. do 4. a. be 5. d. mustn't 6. a. put 7. c. should 8. a. mustn't 10. a. must 9. b. must

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

(make) 1. made (mustn't) 2. must (come) 3. came (play) 4. plays (mustn't) 5. must (must) 6. mustn't (clean) 7. cleaned (must) 8. mustn't 9. used (use) 10. shouldn't (should) 11. tidies (tidy)

on lessons 1 & 2 General Exercises

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I think it is the shark.

2. Where do sharks live?

3. What is a turtle?

4. Because it protects the turtles from danger.

5. No, it doesn't.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. planet

2. c. use something again

4. a. octopus 3. a. stings

5. b. environment

6. d. teeth 7. c. turtles 8. a. should 9. c. save

10. d. rains

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. felt (feel)
2. mustn't (must)
3. shouted (shout)
4. cleaned (clean)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

lessons

3&4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

 1. c. seed
 2. b. hole

 3. b. frighten
 4. a. soil

 5. c. reserves
 6. d. pay

 7. c. knives
 8. d. wash

 9. c. phone call
 10. d. healthy

 11. c. warm
 12. d. ground

 13. c. Fishing line
 14. b. Making

15. c. with

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. save 2. b. planet 3. a. Trees 4. b. air

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I went to a nature reserve.

2. I went by car.

- 3. What did you see there?
- 4. No, I didn't.
- 5. Why is this place important?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

b. soil
 b. reserves
 a. healthy
 b. hole
 c. seed
 d. Cover
 a. listen
 c. mustn't
 a. must

4. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. found (find)
2. sharing (share)
3. watered (water)
4. must (mustn't)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

b. writer
 d. snack
 a. headphones
 b. folded
 d. d. suggested
 b. brave
 a. role
 a. weak
 d. teach
 a. summarise
 d. skeleton
 a. fisherman
 d. snack
 d. suggested
 d. teach
 d. skeleton
 d. skeleton
 d. c. to pull

15. b. up

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a. fisherman
- 2. c. catch
- 3. c. One day
- 4. a. at the end of

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. I'm reading a story.
- 2. What is it about ?
- 3. It tells us about a brave fisherman.
- 4. Yes, he did.
- 5. Could he sell the fish at the market?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b. comments 2. b. Respect
- 3. d. Brave 4. c. tiny 6. c. gloves 5. a. weak
- 7. d. real 8. b. must
- 10. a. clean 9. d. mustn't

4. Read and correct the underlined words:

- (must) 1. mustn't
- (to do) 2. doing
- (to study) 3. study
- (throw) 4. threw

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

on Unit 11 Test

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a. The shark
- 2. b. The shark
- 3. b. A new one grows
- 4. c. 20,000

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. What was it about?
- I learnt about sharks.
- 3. Are they dangerous?
- 4. At the bottom of the sea.
- 5. You're right.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

a. Choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d:

- 1. b. paper and glass
- 2. a. reuse
- 3. d. plastic

b. Answer the following questions:

- 4. Recycling plastic.
- 5. Because they are easier to recycle.
- 6. Because plastic is poisonous when animals eat it.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b. skeleton
- 2. d. Throw away
- 4. b. environment 3. d. planet
- 5. a. centre 6. c. character 7. c. nature 8. b. goes
- 9. c. mustn't 10. b. should I do

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. tidies (tidy)
- 2. must (mustn't) 3. we should (should we)
- 4. rained (rains)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

Unit (12)

lessons 1&2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b. architect
- 2. c. businessman
- 3. a. writer
- 4. c. designs
- 5.b.laboratory
- 6. c. computer programmer
- 7. d. reefs
- 8. b. volunteered
- 9. b. accountant
- 10. d. photographer
- 11. d. engine
- 12. d. scientist
- 13. b. a marine biologist
- 14. b. look

15. b. advised

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c. who
- 2. a. speaks
- 3. d. won't
- 4. a. who
- 5. d. aren't you
- 6. a. doesn't she
- 7. d. who
- 8. c. don't
- 9. c. didn't
- 10. b. can't you
- 11. d. aren't they 12. c. aren't

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. don't
- (didn't)
- 2. doesn't
- (don't)
- 3. don't
- (won't)
- 4. whose
- (who)
- 5. doesn't
- (is)

- 6. did (didn't)
- 7. is (isn't)
- 8. does (doesn't)
- 9. when (who)
- 10. this (who)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c. marine biologist
- 2. a. the ocean
- 3. b. animals
- 4. c. ocean

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. Fine, thanks.
- 2. Good idea.
- 3. What are your favourite subjects?
- 4. What do you want to be?
- 5. I want to be an engineer.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 2. b. scores 1. a. test
- 4. c. photographer 3. a. advice
- 5. b. Nurses 6. b. terrible
- 7. d. results 8. a. who
- 9. b. doesn't he
- 10. d. isn't he

4. Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. whose
- (who)
- 2. isn't she
- (aren't they)
- 3. isn't
- (wasn't)
- (don't) 4. do

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.



lessons

3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. earn	2. d. workshop
3. b. Education	4. d. university
5. c. apartment	6. b. skills
7. c. pass	8. c. get
9. b. local	10. b. Making
11. b. workshop	12. c. Culture
13. a. Basket	14. b. catch
15. b. have	

Exercises on (Language)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. see	2. a. take
3. c. have	4. d. If
5. a. stays	6. b. will punish
7. a. get	8. c. will
9. a. be	10. b. have
11. b. will you	feel

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

words:	
1. lived	(live)
2. swam	(swim)
3. buys	(buy)
4. ate	(eat)
5. speak	(will speak)
6. send	(will send)
7. gets	(get)
8. being	(be)
9. would	(will)
10. didn't	(don't)

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c. baskets	2. a. earn
3. b. Ghana	4. b. women

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b. got	2. c. drive
3. b. pass	4. a. modern
5. b. adult	6. a. repairing
7. a. jewellery	8. d. 'll study
9. a. visit	10. a. don't have

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Would	(Will)
2. do	(will)
3. 'm	('II)
4. will be	(is)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

-, -,	
1. a. technology	2. b. injury
3. b. illnesses	4. b. exciting
5. c. disappear	6. c. engineering
7. c. hopeful	8. c. introduce
9. d. description	
10. d. personal info	rmation

io. a. personal inic	ormation
11. a. countryside	
12. b. cure	13. c. a

12. b. cure 13. c. app 14. b. make 15. a. In

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b. plans
- 2. a. guitar
- 3. c. design
- 4. c. Next year

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. a. Technology 2. a. practise
- 3. c. make
- 4. a. Electric
- 5. b. hopeful
- 6. b. revise
- 7. c. countryside 8. a. does she
- 9. d. who
- 10. b. won't catch

3. Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. going
- (go)
- 2. drives
- (drove)
- 3. is
- (isn't)
- 4. got
- (gets)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

on Unit 12 Test

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. b. An engineer
- 2. c. In a factory
- 3. d. b & c
- 4. a. Yes, it is.

2. Complete the following dialogue:

- 1. I'm a marine biologist.
- 2. A marine biologist usually studies the ocean.

- 3. What do you do?
- 4. To study them.
- 5. Do you like diving?

3. Read the following, then answer the questions:

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c. secondary.
- 2. a. flat
- 3. b. science

b. Answer the following questions:

- 4. The importance of education.
- 5. I think he is still a student.
- 6. A science teacher.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. c. diving
- 2. a. apartment
- 3. c. traditional
- 4. b. earn
- 5. b. pass
- 6. a. cures
- 7. c. accountant
- 8. d. doesn't she
- 9. d. will they
- 10, c. drives



5. Read and correct the underlined words:

- 1. 'd
- (II)
- 2. got
- (gets)
- 3. isn't
- (doesn't)
- 4. which
- (who)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answer.

d. mobile

Mr. Ahmed Shev معلم لفسة النجليزية

Sample Test



A. Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

الله الله معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

- 1. In 2080, people will have cars.
- 2. Driverless cars will be c. driverless
- d. electronic b. cleaner 3. In 2080, there won't be car accidents. c. more dangerous d. faster
- 4. A drives a driverless car. c. some d. no
 - - b. computer c. laptop

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is at a hotel to book a room.

Ahmed : Excuse me, can you help me?

Assistant: Yes, (1) of Course

Ahmed : I'd (2) Like to book a room, please.

Assistant: Do you want a single or (3) ... dauble room? Ahmed : A single room , please. I am alone.

Assistant: How long will you stay?

Ahmed : I am going to stay here for a (4) Week Assistant : OK sir. You have booked the room now.

Ahmed : How (5) much does it cost?

Assistant: A week here costs you 900 pounds.

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Ann is from England. She is now in Egypt on holiday. She has spent two days in Aswan. She enjoys seeing the High Dam. She thinks the people of Aswan are so friendly. She still has five more days in her holiday. Her friend, Rahma, invited her to visit her village. Ann is going there tomorrow morning. She has decided to spend two days with her friend and her family. Rahma will show her how Egyptian villagers live and spend their day. Then, she will go to Alexandria for a day. She intends to visit the place where the Lighthouse was one day. She is going to stay the rest of her holiday in Cairo. She wants to visit the Egyptian Museum. Also, she'd like to visit the Pyramids of Giza. a. Answer the following questions: 1. What's the main idea of the passage? - faces of ficing 2. How long is Ann going to spend in Cairo? One day. 3. What do you think of Rahma? I think She is Friendly. b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4. The underlined pronoun "her" refers to a. Ann b. Rahma c. Rahma's mum d. holiday 5. The phrase "intends to visit" means a. is going to visit b. visited c. didn't visit d. is not going to visit 6. Ann wants to see the at Giza. a. High Dam b. Pyramids c. Cairo Tower d. villager D. Vocabulary & Structure Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. The car can't go into this street. It's very a. wide b. narrow c. deep d. low

	1 - moll	ntains.	1 trabbing
wont	in the mou	c. windsurfing	d. trekking
2. We Wert	b. snorkelling	c. windsurfing morning.	
a. uiviiig	hile driving in a	foggy	d. snowy
3.1 can tisee in	b. sunny	on the	to enjoy the cool
d. Hot	people usually slept	on the	
weather at	night.	c. floor	d. attics
		C. 11001	
5 I write wha	t happens to me eve	ry day in a	d. search
a. photo	b. diary	c. dairy	a. search
6. A	has three sides.	raco Lagrer vice	d. cube
a square	b. triangle	c. circle	
7. My teacher	was angry as I	a lot of mistak	es in the classroom.
a. gave	b. made	c. did	d. took
8. If you touc	h a stingray, it	you.	
a. stung	b. 'd sting	c. sting	d. stings
9. There	a lot of tradit	ional houses in the	past.
a. is	b. are	c. were	d. was
	in the mir	ror.	
a. me	b. myself	c. mine	d. I
Read and co	rrect the underlined	words:	and the same
1. Hala didn'i	t pass her exams, doe	es she?	1.1.1.1
2. You must	play with a knife	The second free free and the	(did she)
What does	Janna going to do o	n hor	(mustait
Yesterday,	I draw a nice picture	mer weekend?	(2.3)
			(drew)
Writeanava	E. Wr	iting	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
Writeapara	graph of about EIGI	HTY (80) words on :	
rela	"An adven	ture sport"	
137		sport"	
Armed Sheld	***************************************		
131	***************************************		***************************************
3			***************************************
·			

Sample Test 2

A. Listening

se the correct ar ىتماع فى نهاية الكتاب)	nswer from a, b, c o جابة الصديحة (نصوص الاس	r d : ستمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ
as last		
b. Monday	c. Saturday	d. Tuesday
y, I went to the	······································	
b. Pyramids	C. 200	d. tower
nuseum with my		
	b. sister	
ster	d. father	
, my brother tool	us to his favourite	
b. library	c. playground	d. museum
B. Languag	e Functions	
ollowing dialogu	ie:	1
iend Ahmed abo	ut what he is doing	Sheta
med.		hmen
Nour.	TMT. P	النجيل ا
are you drawing	1 2	*
awing the (1)	Mar of Egypt.	
(2)	will you use?	
	as last b. Monday y, I went to the b. Pyramids nuseum with my ster h. Languag ollowing dialoguiend Ahmed aboumed. Nour. are you drawing awing the (1)	b. Pyramids c. zoo nuseum with my b. sister d. father b. library c. playground B. Language Functions ollowing dialogue: iend Ahmed about what he is doing med. Nour. are you drawing? awing the (1) YOU Pool Egypt.

Ahmed: (5) Because he will teach us a lesson about Egypt tomorrow.

5,08 C. Reading Comprehension Read the following passage, then answer the questions: The world's widest suspension bridge (Tahya Masr Bridge) opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide and 540 m long. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finally finished it in 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset. a. Answer the following questions: 1. What is the main idea of the passage? Bridge. 2. What does the bridge cross? The Niles Alwarrag island. 3. What do you think of Tahya Masr Bridge? Itis agreet bridge. b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to a. Cairo b. Warrag Island c. Tahya Masr Bridge d. The Nile 5. The bridge has a floor. a. metal b. glass d. wool c. paper 6. The underlined word "started" means a. began b. stopped c. ended d. finished D. Vocabulary & Structure Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. Robinson Crusoe is a / an story by Daniel Defoe. b. scientific d. geographical 2. He used a to write down what happened to him. c. adventure

c. dialogue

d. diagram

b. diary

3. We couldn't co	ome on time beca	use the streets were	very
quiet	b. crowded	c. modern	d. wide
4. I am	of my country.	I like it very much.	
proud	b. Worried	c. pieased	d. frightened
5. When we go	camping in the de	sert, we sleep in a	
a tin	b. tent	c. team	d. train
6. The lamp is m	ade of		
a. stone	b. leather	c. glass	d. metal
		into a shell	
a. will go	b. went	c. go	d. goes
and the second s		ts to find new and ex	
a. teacher		c. engineer	d. guide
9. A dentist is so		looks after your te	
a. what	b. which		d. who
10. Cairo is	than Assu		d binner
a. big	b. biggest	c. the biggest	d. bigger
Read and corr	ect the underline	d words:	
		before eating food.	(Wash)
2. Adel didn't !	ought a car last v	veek.	(buy)
	old, am not ?		(grent)
	school here two		(wasnit)
4. There isn't a			
	E. W	Iriting	and the same
Write a parag	ranh of about El	GHTY (80) words on	M. Ahmed Shata
te a parag	"Your fu	ture house"	amed sales
	Pahilla		r. Allina
***************************************			N. W.
***************************************		•	,

			4.11.2.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4.4

A. Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نه إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. I am going to travel with my

b. teachers a. family

c. friends

d. uncles

2. We are going to travel from to Luxor.

a. Assuit

J, U&

b. Aswan

c. Cairo

d. Giza

3. We are going to leave Aswan in

a. November

b. December

c. September

d. April

4. We are going to in Luxor in January.

a. leave

b. live

c. arrive

d. stay

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Naglaa suggests doing some activities with her friend Mona.

Naglaa: Are you free today, Mona?

Mona: Yes, I am.

Naglaa: So what (1) going swimming?

Mona : I am sorry. I (2) don't know how to swim.

Naglaa: OK. (3) Why don't we go to the park?

Mona: To the park? What will we do there?

Naglaa: We can sit by the fountain, there.

Mona : I (4) like this. How about going to the club?

Naglaa: Great (5) Laca...

Mona : OK. Let's go then.

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

and. The author of Parks of Pa Island. The author of Robinson Crusoe, Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a roal and island because a real sailor called Alexander Selkirk spent four years

alone there. Defoe wrote Robinson Crusoe after hearing about this man. However, Crusoe's adventures were different to Mr Selkirk's. Crusoe spent much longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was much hotter than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe's Island. Life is easier now, although people still have to look after themselves. The nearest land, Chile, is 24 hours away by boat. Soon they are going to build a new school and a hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe did not have!

a. Answer the follo	owing question	s:	
1 Give a suitable	e title for the pas		
2. How do we kn	now that life on	Robinson Crusoe Is	land is hard today?
	1 11	ord "Those" refer to	7
b. Choose the co	rrect answer fro	m a, b, c or d:	
4. The nearest	land, Chile, is 24	away l	oy boat.
a. days	b. weeks	c. months	d. hours
5 They are go	na to	a school and a ho	ospital on the island.
a. hit down	b. break up	c. damage	u. pullu
6. The underli	ned word "spent	" means	
a. stayed	b. went	c. travelled	u. Carrie back
D	. Vocabular	y & Structure	
Choose the cor	rect answer from	n a, b, c or d: bout my new phon	
B: It's fantasti			1 10
a. agree	b. dislike	c. think	d. disagree
2. We need to be	uy some more w	ater. This bottle is	
a. empty	b. low	c. noisy	d. crowded
3. To		noney by working.	1.0
a. fly	b. grow	c. feed	d. earn
,			

. Ullia the coral	in the	Red Sea.	
a. fish	b. plastic	C. IIIICS	d. reefs
5. The circle has	a shap	pe.	d sound
a. square	b. triangular	c. rectangular	d. round
6 Houses and b	ouildings are made	of	
a. stone	b. leather	c. glass	d. metal
7. I'll be happy	if he m	ne.	
a. help	b. will help	c. helps	d. helped
8.1	a fantastic weeke	nd last week.	
a. has	b. have	c. am having	d. had
9. How	is the road ?	- 12 m wide.	
a. wide	b. widest	c. wider	d. width
10	can do many thin	gs for us. Some of th	em can talk.
a. Robots	b. Rabbits	c. Rules	d. Rockets
5 Read and co	rrect the underline	ed words :	
1. Don't wast	te yourself time.		(Your
2. <u>Are</u> you lik	e football ?		(D
3. It isn't a ca	r, does it ?		(i.s)
4. He is going	g to travel <u>in</u> bus.		(hu
	E. W	/riting	J
[6] Weiss			
write a para	graph of about Eld	GHTY (80) words on :	
Mr. Ahmed She	"Sea	animals"	
/803	7/	***************************************	
Millians		***************************************	
11. 7		***************************************	
\ "/	77524		
<u> </u>	To Control House		

Sample Test

4

A. Listening

1	Listen and choos	e the correct ans لاستماع في نهاية الكتاب	wer from a, b, c oı إجابة الصديحة (نصوص ال	r d : ستمع إلى معلمك واختر ال
	. When did you w	vatch the TV progr		
	a Last weekend	b. Next week	c. Yesterday	d. Tomorrow
	2 is th	ne author of Robin	rson Crusoe.	
	a. Shakespeare	b. Daniel Defoe	c. Charles Dicker	ns d. Conan Doyle
	3. Alexander Selki	rk was a		
	a. teacher	b. doctor	c. sailor	d. carpenter
	4. Alexander Selki	rk spent	years on the isl	and alone.
	a. forty	b. fourteen	c. four	d. three
	The state	B. Language	Functions	P. 31.
2	Complete the fo	llowing dialogue	: (294
	Sami is talking to	Adel about his v	isit to Sinai.	
	Sami: Where are	you going?		
	Adel : I am going	to Sinaj.		
	Sami : (1)	y de de	in Visit ?	SIBULS
	Adel : To spend	some time there.		atv/
			ing to do there?	
	Sami : (1) Wh Adel : To spend :	some time there.		Sinais

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Adel: I am going to go mountain climbing.

Adel: I know, but I'd (4) ... Like to try.

Sami: Oh, no. It's (3) angerous

Sami: So, is your bag ready for this?

We had a wonderful holiday in Egypt. These are my opinions about three of the most interesting places. The Valley of the Kings in Luxor is one of the most popular places for tourists to visit. We went early

because that is the quietest time. My brother said, "This is fantastic!" I am sure it gets busier later on during the day.

The biggest place we went to was the Karnak Temple. My favourite part was the Hypostyle Hall, a 5,000-square-metre "room" with 134 stone columns. I think it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings.

In my opinion, the best and quietest place we visited was Habu Temple. It has columns similar to those at Karnak, but because it is less crowded, you can study them for longer.

difficient circ romo ining queen	a. Answer	the fo	llowing	questio	ns:
----------------------------------	-----------	--------	---------	---------	-----

a. Answer the following que	stions:
1. Give a suitable title for the	is passage.
b. Choose the correct answer 4. The underlined word "fa a. harmful b. tradition 5. The underlined pronoun a. the Karnak Temple c. the stone 6. Many people visit the Va a. early in the morning c. during the day	ike to visit these places? I wonder ful Places r from a, b, c or d: ntastic" means al cwonderful d.expensive "it" refers to b. the holiday d. the Hypostyle Hall lley of the Kings b. late in the evening d.early at night
2. It is important to	

./An	is someone wh	o is good at number	ers.
architect		D. accountant	
a. arcmputer p	rogrammer	d. sailor	
nacem is 22. H	le is a/an		
a child	b. adult	c. baby	d. old man
a. coral reef	b. laboratory	c. ocean	d. result
6. Earth is one of	f eight	that go around the	sun.
a. plants	b. stars		d. machines
7. It never	in Egypt bu	t it often rains.	
	b. blows		d. drips
8. If we add red		orange co	lour.
a. gets	70	c. getting	d. get
9. This is the der		oks after people's te	
a. what	b. which		d. who
10. Cairo is one o	of cities	s in Africa.	
a. big	b. biggest	c. the biggest	d. bigger
Read and corre	ect the underlined	d words:	Lough
1. You must to	wash your hands b	efore eating food.	(didnet)
2. Ashraf doesr	't buy an ice crean	n yesterday.	
	upil, isn't she ?		(he)
	y friends in yesterd	ay's party?	(Weye.)
" Ale there any		17 17 18 18 18	The transfer of
		riting	Mr. Ahmed Shela
Write a paragi	raph of about EIG	HTY (80) words on	hmed Sho
	"Transpo	ort today"	TMr. Armaila is a
***************************************		4.77	Mr. Ahmed Sho

***************************************		2003	

	A. List	ening	
1	لتواع في العام Listen and choose the correct an	swer from a, b, c oi لِجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاس	• d : _{اس} تمع إلى معلمك واختر اا
	1. We are going to visit the nature	c. tomorrow	d. next week
	things live in	the nature reserve.	
	a. today 2. Many things live in	b.important	
	a. unimportant c. dangerous	d. wild	
	3. Plants, animals and birds live in t	the•	
	a.home	b. sea	
	c. nature reserve	d. house	
	4. We must be of what	we do.	
	a. careful b. careless	c.angry	d. sad
	B. Language	e Functions	
2	Complete the following dialogue	e:	
	Bassem asks Mazen about his int	erests.	
	Bassem : How is your school ?		
	Mazon ult's a good one		

Mazen : It's a good one.

Bassem: (1) Which subject is the easiest one?

Mazen : I think English is the easiest.

Bassem: 1 (2) 1599 ree with you. I think maths is the easiest.

Mazen (So what do you (3) think about sports?

Bassem: (4) \ think football is the most popular sport.

Mazen :1 (5) 99 ree with you, most people like it.

Bassem : Do you play it?

Mazen :Of course.

C. Reading Comprehension

tabe following passage, then	answer the quest	tions:
Read the following passage, then I don't know which job I want to	do when I'm older	, but I think that
important I hope that I hass my evams so that I can go		
education is very important. Those to university. I'm going to work hard	l. If I go to universi	ty, I'll study maths.
to university. I'm going to work hard	g, so I don't want t	to travel around
- I I I WAST TO MEL A CICIOLI ION	III I CIVIJI. I VVAIIII IC	teath matha.
and money I II Duy all ab	al tillellt liedi tile	ned sea. i ii get
married but, how many children wi	II I Have : I don't ki	now!
a. Answer the following questions	::	
		- 1 1
1. Give a suitable title for this pas	is very in	MYOY EUN L.
think should the V	VIIIAL	
2. What do you think about the v	duction	<u>^</u>
3. What is the writer's favourite jo	ob?	1 .
3. What is the writer's favourite jo	1 de b 15	teaching.
b. Choose the correct answer from	n a, b, c or d:	
b. Choose the correct answer no.	hool you can go to	university.
4. After finishingscl a. primary b. preparatory	C. Secondary	
5. The underlined word "apartn	nent" means a	d. beach
a flat b. park	c. garden	
6. The underlined pronoun "It" r	efers to	d. work
a maths b. subject	C. diliversity	
D. Vocabulary	& Structure	
Choose the correct answer from	a, b, c or d:	
4 Choose the correct answer from	at the funfa	ir
1. I like playing on the big	c. wheel	d. hole
a. wall b. whale		
2. Terrible means very	c. bad	d. relaxing
a. good b. relaxed		

58

A. Listening

a listen and	: choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)
Lister	ذَتِ الأَدَانِةِ الصحيحةِ (نصوصِ الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where did Dareen spend her holiday? - In

a. Sydney b. Delhi

c. Cairo

d. Tokyo

2. Did they climb the bridge?

a. Yes, they did. b. No, they didn't. c. I don't know.

d. Sure.

3. Dareen water sports.

b. doesn't love a, loves

c. dislikes

d. hates

4. Dareen went

b. trekking a. swimming

c. sailing

d. windsurfing

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Roaa and Ayman are talking about nature.

:What are you doing?

Ayman: lam (1) reading a book -

Roaa : What is the book (2) ... a bout ?

Ayman: It is about nature.

Roaa : So , do you like nature?

Ayman : Yes, I do.

: (3) Uhat must we do to protect animals in danger? Roaa

Ayman : We must put them in a nature (4)

Roaa

Ayman : It is an area of land where we can (5) Protect endangered animals and plants.

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons!



A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle or a square. Finally, a round building uses fewer materials, so it is cheaper to make. It also has more space inside. How fantastic!

	to make. It also h	as more space ir	nside. How fantastic!	s, so it is cheaper
	a. Answer the fo	llowing questio	ns:	
	1. What is the	best title for this	passage?	
	2. What's your	opinion about r		l Warn
	3. Find a word	l in the passage i	which means "not old	! ".
	***************************************	mad	ern .	
1 61911	b. Choose the co	orrect answer fro	om a, b, c or d :	
May	4. The underli	ned pronoun " It	"refers to	
-	4. The underli a. roof c. rain	- 21 - 1	refers to b. a round house	
	5. It is	inside a rou	and house.	
	a. noisy	b. quiet	c, bad	d. very cold
	6. It is import	tant for houses to	be strong when ther	e is
	a. wind	b. rain	c, an earthquake	
	D	. Vocabular	y & Structure	,
	Choose the cor	rect answer from	ma h cord:	
	we can see a !	ot of ancient obje	ects in a	
		U. HOSDITAL	- C11 (100)	d. museum
	2. People have o	lifferent	about music.	G.
		D. CIASSOC	AD-1417/05/05/05/05/05	d. mountains
	a. Bridge	is very amazi	c. rocks ng with its view from	ts top.
		b. Tower	c Tour	d Tunnel

long is th	ne Cairo-Alexandria	desert	?
L-OOT		11110	d. road
we not polite	to tell a girl that sh	ne is	
- harmful	b. arriazing	C. Idiitastic	d. ugly
Rock climbing	g is very	I am afraid to do	it.
a. scary	b. easy	c. Interesting	d. exciting
7a	re used in cooking	or heating food.	
a. Fridges		b. Washing mac	hines
c. Ovens		d. Turbines	
8. If we work ha	ard, Egypt	the richest cour	ntry in the world.
a. is	b. will be	c. was	d. were
9. What about .	the Py	ramids at Giza?	
a. visits	b. visited	c. visiting	d. to visit
10. Do you and	your brother do th	e washing	?
a. yourself	b. ourselves	c. themselves	d. yourselves
Read and corr	ect the underline	d words:	-1 00:
1. He went sho	p yesterday.		Shoffing
2. Sally is the t	aller girl in the clas	SS.	(tallest)
San Control of the Co	aking of paper.		(made)
CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY OF	op music, does she	27 - 100	doesnit
	FU E. W	riting	13
Weiss		HTY (80) words on	ad Shell
write a parag	-	H11 (00) WOLLD SI	Ahmee is also
	"Life in t	he future"	Mr. Ahmed Sheta

***************************************			<u></u>

Sample Test

	P4. L.	sconnig	
	اع في نهاية الكتاب)	answer from a, b, c بة الصحيحة (نصوص اللسته African culture? - M	بري واذتر اللحاد
1. What is the i	mportant part of	African culture? - M	aking إلى معسد و
a. shirts	b. gloves	c. baskets	d. pots
2. Making bask	ets is a way to	money.	- PO13
a. earn	b. lose	c. waste	d. spend
3. What is the	African country m	entioned in the pas	isage?
a. Somalia	b. Ghana	c. Guinea	d. Egypt
4. There are a lo		who make and sell b	baskets in Ghana.
a. Doys	b. men	c. women	d. children

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Mr. Ahmed Sheta Nour asks Adel some questions about materials.

Nour: Hi Adel. Are you good at science?

Adel : Hi Nour. Yes, I am (1) ... 9 . . .

Nour: Do you know about materials?

Adel: Yes, I do.

Nour: (2) what are cars made of?

Adel: Most parts are made of (3) metal

Nour: Good! What are coats made of?

Adel : Coats are made of (4)

Nour : (5) Where do we get wool?

Adel .: We get wool from sheep.

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions: Sunday 8th May

Yesterday, our family moved to our new house in Alexandria. It took three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.

		Jampie rests
Monday 9 th May		
a comping, mum and I went	shopping to buy a	new school
form for me. I hope students a	re friendly in my ne	w school!
Tuesday 10" Way		
Today I went to my new school	ol. I was quite nervo	ous, but I sat next
to a boy called Sami and he was f	riendly. We had lun	ch together in the
school canteen.	1	
	11	Ar. Ah
Adam	/	a: med ch
a. Answer the following question	ns:	Ar. Ahmed Sheta
1. What is the main idea in this	email?	Roles
Α.	dan's diar	4.
5 10		
2. What do you think Adam felt	at the end of fuesc	igy: why:
He Fet happy	pecanse 1	17 FLIGHT ONCIS
3. Why did Adam and his mum	n go shopping?	
To buy and	n school u	niform
b. Choose the correct answer fro	om a, b, c or d:	
4. The underlined word "nerv	ous" means very	
a. worried b. happy	c. relaxed	d. quiet
5. The canteen is the place w	here we can	
a. practise sports	b. read books	

6. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to

b. Adam's father c. Sami a. Adam

c, have meals or drinks

d. sleep

d. a student

D. Vocabulary & Structure

		A SECOND CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF THE PART			
4	Choose the correct	answer	from a,	b, c or c	1:

1. What is	about your	school?	
a. cheap	b. special	c. fast	d. expensive
2. Is your house	or mo	odern?	
a. traditional	b. colourful	c. technological	d. big
3. There is a	over the		
a. bridge	b. city	c. pyramid	d. tunnel

kind.

Sample Test



A. Listening

and ch	noose the cor	ect answe	r from a, l	b, c or d:
listell all		1 -1		

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. When did you first go to your new school? - Last

b. Monday a. Sunday

c. Tuesday

d.Thursday

2. You were quite

b. pleased a. nervous

c. happy

d. sad

3. Who did you sit by?

a, Sami_ b. Sam c. Samir

d. Seif

4. What meal did you have with Sami?

a. Breakfast

b. Dinner

c. Lunch

d. Snack

Mr. Ahmed Sheta

تعلين لفسة المجليزية

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Ramy asks Hany about his visit to the zoo.

Ramy: Good morning.

Hany: Good morning.

Ramy: Did you (1) the zoo?

Hany: Yes, I did.

Ramy: What did you see there?

Hany: A lot of (2) monkeys

Ramy: Were there any elephants?

a leter plants

Hany: (3) e, there Did you know that elephants eat (4)

Ramy: No, 1 (5)didnit.

Hany: Thanks for your time.

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. However, the

museum didn't have space for 100,000 other objects. In 2002, there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,575 designs from more than 80 different countries.

Museum (GEM) welcomed its first visitors in

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is **further** from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects. More people can see them and it is able to look after the

really well.			the object
a. Answer the fo	llowing question	s:	
1. Give a suital	ole title for this pa	assage. 949tion mu	Seum
It has m	are 579 Ce	nd Egyptian Museu	m?
	he oldest museu 87 Year		
b. Choose the co	rrect answer fro	m a, b, c, or d :	
4. The underli	hed word "furthe	er" is the opposite o	of
a. nearer		c. open	d, ancient
5. The underli a. GEM c. the old m	TA PATE	" refers tob. Giza d. the city centr	
6. The museu	m is a place to ke	ep on o	display.
	b. treasures		d. designs
D.	Vocabular	& Structure	52
4 Choose the corr			
1. I like thea. voice	b. noise	c. silence	d. sound
2. There are a lot a. carpets	ofin b, materials	the mountains of S c. islands	
3. "Ancient" is the a. expensive	opposite of " b. beautiful	c. dangerous	d. modern

A. Listening

1	Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
	Eisternanna, D, C or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

- 1. Hoda is a/an teacher.
 - a. maths
- b. French
- c. English
- d. science

- 2. She works at a school.
 - a. secondary
- b. primary
- c. preparatory
- d. kindergarten
- 3. She helps her students their lessons.
 - a. understand
 - b. work
- c. write
- d. read
- 4. A: What does Miss Hoda do when her students do well?
 - B: She them.
 - a. punishes
- b. visits
- c. rewards
- d. hits

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Rashad asks Ziad about his weekend in Alexandria.

Rashad : Good morning.

Ziad : (1) Good morning

Rashad: Where did you (2) Send your weekend?

Ziad : I spent it in Alexandria.

Rashad: How was the weather like there?

Ziad : It was (3) Sunny.

Rashad : Fantastic! What (4) Cinds of food did you eat there?

Ziad : l ate fish .

Rashad: What else did you do there?

Ziad :1(5) Swam in the sea.

C. Reading Comprehension gead the following, then answer the questions:

To: Karim				
· Maher				
Subject : Future	plans			
W-with				
Il. averit	ed that you are	going to come an	d stay with us next	
l-aking	torward to see	ing you again Wh	at time does your	
Luc 7 MA Ca	n meet at the st	anon Cornew no	THE IS DV LITE DEACH.	
train arriver we ca	ing every day T	here are lots of otl	ner things to do, too.	
We can go swiffin	windsurfing or	divina? On Thursd	ay , Grandad is going	
How about going	t him a special	arecent Why don't	we take photos of	
to visit us. Let's ge	t nim a special i	nesent. Why don't	we take photos of	
ourselves and our	cousins? we ca	n make him a phot	to album.	
See you on Sat	urday!		ad Shell	1
Maher			Ahmeu Jake	7
a. Answer the foll	lowing question	ns:	Mr. Ahmed Sheta	
1 Give a cuitah	le title for this e	mail	المريدة ا	
1. Give a suitar	T. time	- blant.		
	ta in	to the least of the matter)	
2. When is Gra	ndad going to v	isit Maher's family	and the second	
	On-	Thursday		
To talk a discount	shiple thoughton	no cwimming ever	v day /	
0	is mak	exis home	is by the beach	
Deca.	(3C)	mah cord:	= 11855	
	rrect answer fro			
4. The underli	ned word " <u>him</u> "	refers to		
a. Karim	b. Maher	c. Grandad	d. Maher's brother	
5. Maher suge	gested going			
a, only wind	Single-residence in 1950	b, only diving		
A 6000000000000000000000000000000000000	d swimming	d. none of the	m	
		nat time" means	\$	
a. Where	b. Why	c. When	d. How	
D	. Vocabula	ry & Structu	re	
Choose the cor	rect answer fro	m a, b, c or d :		
1. People can pr	actice a sport in	a sports	non-Cit	
a. aquarium	b. funfair	c, centre	d. alley	
- squarturi	D, Turnan	10.		

	2. A / An	is a piece of la	nd in a sea , a river or	an ocean
	a. island	b. field	c. station	d. uniform
	3. He dug a	under his h	ouse to leave in time	of dange
	a. bridge	b. city	c. pyramid	d. tunnel
		ter in the glass. Th	e glass is	
	a. narrow	b. wide	and the second s	d. crowded
		mid is 146 metre	S	
		b. high		d. long
		married in 2	.011.	
	a. gave		c. got	d. passed
		es are made of		
	a. cotton	b. paper	c. metal	d. leather
6/9//5	8. Abd el Rahma	ın didn't	bowling last wee	k.
201	a. goes	b. went	c. go	d. going
-	9. I like jazz,	it's exciti	ng.	a. going
	a. because	b. and	c. or	d. but
	10. Reem is	than Rana	· · · · · · · ·	u. but
-	a. older	b. old	c. oldest	d. the oldest
5	Read and corre	ct the underline		d. the oldest
	1. The street is 4	metres widest.		(wide)
	2. Menna made	the bed himself	The property of	The state of the s
	3. Let's eating s	ome apples	DHAMI - JUL	(herself)
			MOTHER BEAUTI	(eat)
	4. An architect i	s someone whic	<u>h</u> designs buildings.	(<u>who</u>)
		E. W	riting	
6	Write a paragra		GHTY (80) words on	Test .
	, and a paragra	A A A		•
		"How to	plant a tree"	- anatomic

	***************************************			***************************************

	****		***************************************	ATTENDED TO STATE OF THE PARTY

A. Listening

and ch	oose the correct answer from a, b, c or d	:
Listen alle	oose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : تن اللحاية الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)	i

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1.My was last Saturday.

b. birthday a. weekend c. holiday d. wedding

2. Last Saturday, we went to the

b. museum a. citadel c. pyramids d. park

3. I went there with my

b. sister a. mum

c. mum and sister d. father

4. We saw some old there:

b. birds d. buildings c. tourists a. statues

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Huda asks Mona about her first visit to Cairo.

Huda: Is this your first visit to Cairo?

Mona: Yes, it is. Can you (1) tell me where Qasr El-Nil Bridge is?

Huda: It's (2) in the city centre.

Mona: Is it near the River Nile?

Huda: (3) Ye.S., it is.

Mona: Is it only for cars and buses to go across it?

Huda: No, people can (4) across it, too.

Mona: (5) What do people enjoy there?

Huda: People enjoy walking on its pavements.

Mona: Thanks for your help.

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The Problem is, plastic stays in the environment for a very long time.

Mr. Ahmed Sheia

à U, U& /

Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can <u>recycle</u> some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100.000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. Dolphins and sea birds also swim into plastic fishing lines.

We must try to use other materials such as paper and glass, for example, because **these** are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag, we should try to use it more than once. We mustn't throw away these bags.

It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!

a. Answer the fo	ollowing questi	ons:
1. Give a suita	ble title for this	passage
	Mach	•
2. What do yo	u think about n	many things but it is ranimals and birds? danger
116 1150	trillik about pi	astic! II. and I
- 00 C		many things but It is
3. Why is plast	tic dangerous fo	r animals and birds? danger
Reconse	- it's Pol	Senous When animals
b. Choose the c	orrect answer fi	rom a ,b ,c or d:
		e" refers to
a. dolphins		b. paper and glass
•		
fishing lin		d. animals
5. The word "	ecycle" means.	
a. use agair	1	b. wash
5. The word " a. use again c. stay 6. It's better to	In George Co-e	d. find out
6. It's better to	use paper than	n
a. glass	b. bags	c. fishing d. plastic
D	. Vocabular	y & Structure
_		relative to the second second

Choose the c	orrect answer from	ia, b, coru.	
1. How long is	the Cairo - Alexand	Iria desert	?
a. way	b. road	c. street	d. land
2. Don't worry	, there's enough	to build	your house.
a. piece	b. space	c. peace	d. sand

Lasthar lik			Sample Tests
3. My brother like	es mountain		sumple lests
a diving	o. iining		
4. I slept in a	when I w	ent camping in the	d. sailing
a. bedroom	b. hostel	c. tent	desert.
5. He fell over as	the street was ve	rv	d. hotel
Cit Post	- c.oudy	C al	
6. My teacher w	as angry as I	a lot of mista	d. wet
		Caid	
7. That	easy to practic	se your sport in you	d. took
a. sounds	b. comes	se your sport in you	
8. He's going to	go	c. means	d. makes
a. sail	b. sailed	M. De to L	
9.There	any children	c. to sail	d. sailing
a. are	b. aren't	c. is	
10. You want to	be an engineer,		d. isn't
a. do you	b. are you	c. aren't you	1 1-4
		· The last of the	d. don't you
Read and corr	ect the underline	ed words:	risearc, 1/5
1. I'll study ma	ths if I am going t	to the university.	(90)
		when the traffic light	is red. (CY:SS)
3. Did he hurt		To Provide No.	(burt)
		ur national football to	eam. (best)
4. Jaian is the		ır national football te	
	E. \	Nriting	Mr
Write a mana	b of about El	GHTY (80) words o	n: With
write a para		The state of the s	n: Ahmed Sheta
	"A day	y at school"	i neta

***************************************		***************************************	

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب) 1. I'm going to Sinai next a. holiday b. Saturday

2. I'm going to Sinai with my

c. Monday

d. Tuesday

a. friends

b. brother

c. family

d. father

3.looks scary.

a. Diving

b. Climbing

c. Zip lining

d. Sailing

4. I'm going tozip lining.

a. help

b. try

C. Visit

d. see

Mr. hmed Shela

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Adam asks Esam about his favourite story.

Adam: What are you reading?

Esam: I'm reading a (1) 5 tor 4....

Adam: What kind of story is it?

Esam : It's an (2) adventurstory.

Adam: Oh! I know you like adventure stories. What is it (3) a bou b

Esam : "Robinson Crusoe".

Adam: Who is Robinson Crusoe?

Esam: He is a (4) Sa; lov..... His ship sank and he swam to an island.

Adam: Were there any (5) Person with him on the island?

Esam: No, he was alone on the island.

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Although Karim and Ramzy are twins, they are different in some ways. For example, Karim's favourite hobby is playing football. He plays it with

his friends at school and in a club near their school. He also watches his friends also watches his friends matches on TV at home after finishing his homework. On the other side, Ramzy is very interested in music. He plays it in a **band** at other side, he likes listening to music on the radio or plays the guitar. Their parents help them study hard for school and also let them their hobbies.

enjoy trief.	
Answer the following questions:	
1. Where does Karim play football?	
In a club near nis	School,
2. Do you think Ramzy is interested in music? He yes, Be cause he glass in	ou. 2
with the main idea of this passage?	
3. What is the main idea of this passage? Different hobbi	es,
b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	
4 How are Karim and Ramzy different?	
a. In their hobbies. b. They have	different classes.
c. In their schools. d. With their	
5 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to	
a. schools b. their parents c. hobbies	d. the twins
6. A "band" is	A
a. some people who play music together	Ma
b. some people who play a sport together	3. Ap.
c. some people who have the same sport	Men Men
d. some people who cook together	Sher
D. Vocabulary & Structu	Mr. Ahmed Shela
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	~
1. We went to the to enjoy seeing pla	nets and stars.
a. planetarium b. sports centre c. funfair	d. aquarium
2 lweite	
a. photo b. diary c. dairy	d. search
3. There will be a over the river.	
a. line b road c. tunnel	d. bridge

b. road

4. We must protect	ct our		
a. environment	h smoke		
5. Tourists usually	have a	c. fire to show them w c. traveller	d. dust
a. passenger	b. manager	c. traveller	here to go
6. I bought a/an	tos	C. traveller	d. guide
a, top	n spoon		
7are	machinas	. c. oven	d. kitchen
a. Solar panels	b Turbings Which	ch can do many thing	s for us
			d. Rabbits
8. What must you a. do	be	efore exams?	STIGODITS
	b. to do	c. doing	d to de
9. She made a ver	y nice cake,	she ?	d. to doing
u. ala	b. didn't	- 1-	1 1. 12 1/2
10. I like playing fo	otball,	c. does I don't like playin	d. don't
a. and	b. but	c. because	
Read and come at		c. because	d. so
5 Read and correct	the underline	ed words :	
1. What is the bet	ter time to wal	k across the bridge?	. 6 . 1
2. Are you going	rving rock clin	obing?	(bet)
3. My uncle Samy	hurt thomas l	ibilig f	(toty)
4 This wallet is	nuit themselv	<u>res</u> .	(himsek)
4. This wallet is m	ade by leather.		(o.E)
The state of the s	F. M	Iriting	,
Contract of the contract of th	\	riting	
Write a paragrap	oh of about Ele	GHTY (80) words on	•
State State Comment	"What ich w		5
Mr. Ahmed She	ta (mar Job y	ou want to do"	
ahmed Si	••		***************************************
Mr. Ahmed	······	./	***************************************
المحليزية			***************************************
		***************************************	***************************************
***************************************		***************************************	*********************************
***************************************		***************************************	***************************************

		141 5 25 5	

A. Listening

and ch	oose the correct answer from a, b, c or d	:
rictella	/	

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Basel was born in

b. 2012 a. 2007

c. 2000

d. 2016

2. Basel is talking about the important in his life.

a. accidents

b. months

c. events

d. times

3. Basel was born in

a. Luxor

b. Cairo

c. Alexandria

d. Aswan

4. Basel school in 2012.

a. started

b. finished

c. ended

d. built

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Asem asks his friend Nabil about his last weekend.

Asem: Did you enjoy your last weekend?

Nabil : Yes, I (1)d. ...

Asem: Where did you spend it?

Nabil: In a (2) S. P. centre.

Asem: (3) did you go with?

Nabil: With my friends.

Asem: What did you enjoy doing there?

Nabil: I enjoyed (4) Swimming and diving.

Asem: Is there a swimming (5) ?

Nabil: Yes, there is.

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a big adventure! I'm going to go treaking delegation and adventure! I'm going to travel nearly 500 kilometres through mountains

Mr. Ahmed Sheta

from Ras Shetan to Serabit el Khadem. I'm going to sleep in a tent and stay with Bedouin families. I'm going to have a guide to help me find the

way and a camel to carry food and water. The journey is going to take Here's my plan: 3rd March leaves Ras Shetan 14th March arrives at Ein Kidd 30th March arrives at St. Catherine 1st April climbs Mount Catherine 15th April arrives at Serabit el Khadem a. Answer the following questions: Give a suitable title for this passage. A big adventure. 2. Do you like trekking? Why? Hes, It's exciting. 3. What do you think about this journey? Ites a nice gourney. b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d: 4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to a. Sinai b. trekking c. next year 5. The underlined word "journey" means a a. long trip b. short trip c. stay 6. The writer is going to sleep in a in Sinai. b. skyscraper a. tent d. room c. flat D. Vocabulary & Structure Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. I like mountain very much although it's difficult. d. riding a. driving b.,climbing c. diving 2. Buses, cars and trains are means of d. machines a. railways b. stations c. transport 3. I gave a special to my father on his birthday party.

d. scene

c. value

b. prize

a. present

78

de view from	the top of the tow	ver is very	. I like it
Janderous	D. Tarreasere	c. temple	d. tiring
The television	is made of		•
- alass		b. plastic	
c, glass and p	lastic	d. wood and pl	
6 The	is at the top of a	a house or a buildir	ng.
a. ground	b. wall	c. roof	d. floor
7	ars won't need driv	vers.	
a. Electric	b. Driverless	c. Traditional	d. Modern
8. If you touch	a jellyfish, it	you.	
a. sting	b. stings	c. stung	d. would sting
9. It isn't hot to	day,?		
a. is it	b. isn't it	c. it isn't	d. it is
10. When did th	ey bui	lding it?	
a. start	b. started	c. to start	d. starting
Read and cor	rect the underline	d words :	and the second
1. The children	n made these toys i	tself.	(thurnseleye
2. Trains are fa	st than buses.		(Faster)
3. I'm going vi	isit Sinai.	100	(to visit
	lay with the knives.		(mustant
 '			
	E. W	Iriting	
🧕 Write a para	graph of about El		
	"Your fav	ourite sport"	Ahmed Shela
***************************************			ed Silve
***************************************		the state of the s	Ahmerica
**********		/N	المجلين المجلين
*****			· india
***************************************		in the second second	
***************************************			1.1

A. Listening

1	Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
	district from a, b, c or d

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Our planet is the

a. Earth

b. Mars

c. Jupiter

d. Uranus

2. trees keeps our air healthy.

a. Buying

b. Climbing

c. Selling

d. Planting

3. Throwing rubbish is

a. safe

b. healthy

c. dangerous

d. good

4. We should help to our planet.

a. save

b. throw

c. plant

d. draw

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer asks his friend Tarek about his favourite hobby.

Tamer: What's your favourite hobby?

Tamer: When did you start playing it?

Tarek: (2) ... What I was 7 years old.

Tamer: (3) what do you like playing?

Tarek : I like playing the trumpet.

Tamer: Why do you like it?

Tarek: Because it is (4) Nice.

Tamer: Who (5) Taw 9ht you to play the trumpet?

Tarek: My uncle. He is a famous musician.

C. Reading

Read the following, then answer the questions:

The British Museum in London is the oldest public museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects.

~		- 4	100		200
Sai	m	nΙ	e l	PS	t٤
-				100,100	

About six million visitors go **there** every year. The museum has the largest collection of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its most important objects is the Rosetta Stone. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian **hieroglyphics** for the first time.

_{allowed} people to u _{first time} .	nderstand ancie	nt Egyptian <u>hiero</u>	anguages. This glyphics for the
Answer the follow	wing questions :	a selection	
what is the ma	in idea of this pas	ssage? museum ·	·
2. Do you think m	nuseums are won	derful? Why?	1
Nes b	e cause;	t hasman	y important object
3. When did the	Rosetta Stone arr	ive at the British N	luseum ?
b. Choose the corr	rect answer from	a,b,cord:	
4. "Hieroglyph	ics" is a		
a. statue	b. language	c. temple	d. museum
5. The underline	ed word "there" r	efers to	
a. visitors		b. Italy	
c. Egypt	L DAI IO JA	d. the British Mu	seum
6. London is a f	amous	in Europe.	
a. museum	b. city	c. country	d. statue
D.	Vocabulary	& Structure	
Total And	ect answer from		CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF THE
1. There are trees		house, but in Al-A	zhar Park, the trees
a. tall	b. taller	c. the tallest	d. taller than
2.1 made this cal	ке	72	1000
a. ourselves	b. myself	c. himself	d. herself
3. The pupils wo	n't be late again,	?	4 46
a. won't they	b. don't they	c. will they	d. they will

 I wrote the m calendar 		c. timeline	d. research
		nimself from the su	
a. please	b. protect		d. hurt
6. A: What's you	ırabo	ut the new hotel?	
B: Wonderful			
a. hobby	b. sight	c. opinion	d. view
7 aı	re dangerous bird	S.	
a. Pigeons	b. Eagles	c. Flies	d. Snakes
8. When was the	Stone	?	
a. Statue	b. Time	c. Mountain	d. Age
9. We use a	to stir sug	ar and tea.	0.00
a. teaspoon	b. wallet	c. knife	d. bag
They wanted them in bright		more beautiful, so	they
a. built	b. moved	c. painted	d. stayed
 You should <u>tal</u> She was here y 	new car because t	hey <u>have</u> anyone be Iking in the street. e ?	efore. (haven (kake (wasn (a) de
	E. Wr	iting	
6 Write a paragra	ph of about EIGH	ITY (80) words on	. Solvento
	"The Farmetic		
Mr			
i Ahm	*		
1000			
	••••		
i her			
Mr. Ahmed Shel	>		

A. Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Marvin is a famou	S	AND THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY O	0.0
a. musician	b. player	C. writer	d. teacher
2. Marvin	songs.		
a. listens to	b. sings	C. writes	d. records
3 He learned to play	y music when he w	/as	
a. ten	b. twelve	c. eleven	d. seven
4. He plays the	in a jazz ba	nd.	
a. piano	b. guitar	c. trumpet	d. drums

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Hana and Sama are talking about houses in China.

Hana: Did you travel to any place?

Sama : Yes, I travelled to (1) Chiving

Sama: They are (3)

Hana: Strange! You mean they are looking like a circle.

Sama: Yes, because there is a strong wind.

Hana: What are they (4) Made of?

Sama: Wood, but strong and cheap.

Hana: I hope I can (5) built one.

Sama: So, get an architect to do it for you.

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

In <u>ancient</u> Egypt, there was a village called Deir el-Medina. The people from that village worked in the Valley of the Kings. <u>There</u> were 68 houses. The walls of the houses were made of bricks and the doors were

made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors. The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there were not any bedrooms. People usually slept on the roof because it was very hot at night. There was usually an oven for bread in the kitchen, but there were not any taps. People got their water from the Nile Valley, about two kilometres away.

a. Answer the following questions: 1. Give a suitable title for this passage. An Gent Egypt. 2. What do you think about life in that village?
2. What do you think about life in that village?
2. What do you think about life in that village?
1 tis beautiful.
3. What does the underlined word "There" refer to? Houses in Deir - elmeding.
b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:
4. Taps are used to
a. get water b. bake bread c. sleep on d. buy brea
5. People in Deir el-Medina used to sleep
a. in tents b. on the roofs
c. in the bedrooms d. in the kitchens
6. The underlined word "ancient" is the opposite of
a. colourful b. dangerous c. modern d. further
D. Vocabulary & Structure
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1. Many people use bags to put their things in.
a. wood b. metal c. glass d. plastic
2. To build a house, you think of the design and theyou will use
a. rooms b. roofs c. materials d. parts
3. They stood under the building to themselves from the rai
a. help b. protect c. jump d. walk

then they finish t	heir work, they	back ho	me before
sunset.			9
	b. turn	c. wave	d. learn
us bought a new	modern camera	to take the best pho	otos. He is a
a000			
agrammer	D. photograp	her_c. designer	d. architect
Last summer, I we	entin	the Red Sea.	
Jiving	D. Hullig	C. Chilibing	d. flying
loved the fis	h, but I didn't see	any whales at the	
- planetarium	b. park	c. aquarium	d. garden
A teacher is a per	son t	teaches students.	
a when	b. where	c. wno	d. whose
9. How	your day? - It wa	s nice.	2 ,
a were	b. was	c. be	d. being
0. WB What	the cities be	like in the future?	
a. have	b. had	c. are	_d.will_
Read and correct t	the underlined w	vords:	" (Authory)
1. There weren't soi	me women in the	party.	(any)
	st than my father		(older)
	on the wall of the		(mutal [
4 Harande English	books a lot, did	he?	(deesnit
4. ne leads Eligiisi		The section 1971	14
	E. Wri	ting	1.0
Write a naragran	h of about EIGH	TY (80) words on :	Mr. Ahmed Shel
mite a paragrap			18000
	"Your futu	Ite lon	le no
***************************************	***************************************		18.6

	Jan Marine	50A1=0-5	

A. Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب) 1. Lina talks about her

- a. birthday
- b. holiday
- c. weekend
- d. vocation

- 2. Lina's team the match. a. Won
 - b. lost
- c. got
- d. arrived

- 3. Lina watched a match.
 - a. football
- b. basketball
- c. volleyball
- d. tennis

- 4. Lina watched the match.....
 - a. on TV
 - c. at the stadium

- b. at school
- d. at the park

M. Anned Shela

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Manar asks Samya about her visit to Dalia last Friday.

Manar: Where were you last Friday?

Samya: At Dalia's house.

Manar: Why did you visit Dalia?

Samya: It was her (1) birthday

Manar: (2) were there?

Samya: All our (3) Freend!

Manar : How (4) is she?

Samya She's 12.

Manar : Did you give her a present ?

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Grandma,

We're really enjoying ourselves on holiday in South Africa! It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do.

Yesterday was an adventure day. We went trekking in the mountains.

twas sunny when we started, but when we got to the top of the
mountain, we saw dark clouds. On the way down, the rain started! Then
here was a storm. The rocks were wet and Tamer fell over and hurt
himself. But it's OK - his leg is better today.

Tomorrow, the weather is going to be better, so we're going to try zip lining! I'm a bit <u>frightened</u>, but I'm excited, too.

a.

Answer the following questions:	
1. What's the main idea of this passage?	h Africa.
2. Why do you think that they are enjoying	g their holiday in South Africa?
3. What happened to Tamer?	10 61
He Fell over	and hurt himself.
o. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,	, c or d :
4. The underlined word "frightened" m	neans
a afraid b. strong	c. brave d. weak
5. The underlined pronoun "We" refers	to
a. Tamer	b. the writer
	d. grandparents
6. There was a storm	b. after it rained
a. before it rained	d. after Tamer fell over
c. when it was sunny	d. after famer len over
	teneture

D. Vocabulary & Structure

Choose the co	rrect answer from a	,b,cord:		
1. A/An	1. A/An shows places to tourists.			
a. trainer	b. guide	c. driver	d. adventure	

a. angry b. hot

4. WB What will tha. love 5. My best	b. want	in the future ?	d. give
a. activity	b. study is everything aro	c. <u>hobby</u> und us. We must ke	
7. Our neighbours a. worried 8 did a. When	b. sad you feel at the en	c M/h	d. plant d. nervous d. Who
9. SB People won a. used 10. WB When it is voo a. turns Read and correct	ery cold, water b. turning	c. using into ice. c. turned	d. use
1. My uncle helped tomorrow. 2. Aswan is hottes 3. Tomorrow, they 4. You must listen	d his daughter wi st than Cairo. will build the hou ed to others' idea	th her homework use <u>ourselves</u> .	Yesterday, (hotter) themselves) (Listen)
6 Write a paragrap	E. Wri	TY (80) words on :	
"A	day you spent w	ith your friends"	